

THE ARDEN SHAKESPEARE

The First Part of
KING
HENRY IV

**PERMANENTLY
SENSITISED**

Edited by
A. R. HUMPHREYS

This edition is based on a thorough examination of textual problems, and on a conclusion that the earliest quartos are the sole authoritative source. It contains a fresh investigation of the play's composition, suggesting a somewhat earlier date than is often given, and discussing the problem of revision. It is particularly comprehensive in examining the use of source-material. Appendices contain the main source-material.

The editor, who is a graduate of Cambridge and has a postgraduate degree from Harvard, is at present Professor of English in the University of Leicester.

21s net

Cat. No. 2/4742/10

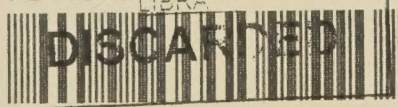
RS

CITY OF LEEDS
TRAINING COLLEGE LIBRARY

SHAV 77 0

LEEDS BECKETT UNIVERSITY
71 0115382 X

TELEPEN





Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2023 with funding from
Kahle/Austin Foundation

THE ARDEN SHAKESPEARE
GENERAL EDITORS: HAROLD F. BROOKS
AND HAROLD JENKINS

THE FIRST PART OF
KING HENRY IV

THE ARDEN EDITION OF THE
WORKS OF WILLIAM SHAKESPEARE

THE FIRST PART OF
KING HENRY IV

Edited by
A. R. HUMPHREYS



METHUEN AND CO. LTD, LONDON
36 Essex Street, Strand, W.C.2

The general editors of the Arden Shakespeare have been W. J. Craig (1899-1906), succeeded by R. H. Case (1909-1944) and Una Ellis-Fermor (1946-1958).

Present general editors: Harold F. Brooks and Harold Jenkins.

R. P. Cowl and A. E. Morgan's edition of Henry IV, Part I, first published 1914.

It was reprinted four times.

Sixth edition (A. R. Humphreys), revised and reset, 1960.

710115392-X

CITY OF LEEDS TRAINING COLLEGE LIBRARY.	
-6 OCT 1960	
Acc.	
1522 16 SHA ZN	
Class	

822.33 SHA

B6015409 ✓

For Thomas Rice Henn,
in gratitude

“The judgment of Shakespeare in the selection of his materials, and in the manner in which he has made them, heterogeneous as they often are, constitute a unity of their own, and contribute all to one great end, is not less admirable than his imagination, his invention, and his intuitive knowledge of human nature.”

Wordsworth, *Essay Supplementary
to the Preface*, 1815.

CONTENTS

	PAGE
PREFACE	ix
INTRODUCTION	xi
1. Date	xi
2. The Question of Revision	xv
1. Changes of Name	xv
2. Further Revision?	xviii
3. Sources	xxi
1. Holinshed: <i>Chronicles of England</i>	xxiii
2. Daniel	xxviii
3. The "Wild Prince Hal" Stories	xxix
4. Stow	xxxii
5. <i>The Famous Victories of Henry the Fifth</i>	xxxii
6. Other Prince Hal Plays?	xxxiv
7. <i>Woodstock</i>	xxxvi
8. <i>A Myrroure for Magistrates</i>	xxxvii
9. Ballads of Percy and Douglas	xxxviii
10. <i>Soliman and Persida</i>	xxxviii
11. Other Possible Sources	xxxix
4. Falstaff	xxxix
5. The Unity of the Play	xlv
6. The Historical Outlook	I
7. The Spirit of the Play	lii
8. The Imaginative Impact	lvii
9. Establishment of the Copy-Text	lxvi
10. Editorial Methods	lxxv
11. Abbreviations	lxxviii
THE FIRST PART OF KING HENRY THE FOURTH	1
APPENDICES	
1. The Title in Q42-5, F1	165

II. The Date of <i>The Merry Wives of Windsor</i>	166
III. Source Material	
1. Holinshed	167
2. Daniel	179
3. <i>The Famous Victories of Henry the Fifth</i>	186
IV. Doubtful Sources	
1. Hall	195
2. Holinshed: <i>The Historie of Scotland</i>	197
3. Hayward	197
4. Another Hotspur Play?	198
V. II. iv. 382—"King Cambyeses' vein"	199
VI. III. ii. 39 ff.—"Had I so lavish of my presence been . . ."	200
VII. IV. i. 98-9—"All plum'd like estridges . . ."	201

PREFACE

THIS edition has drawn freely on the illustrative material so abundantly provided by R. P. Cowl and A. E. Morgan in their previous Arden edition but is not otherwise based on their work, being an independent exploration of the introductory material and of textual problems. It owes much to the editions of John Dover Wilson (Cambridge, 1946), G. L. Kittredge (in *Sixteen Plays of Shakespeare*, Boston, 1946), and in particular S. B. Hemingway (the great New Variorum, Philadelphia, 1936), with the *Supplement* to this latter by G. Blakemore Evans in *The Shakespeare Quarterly*, vol. vii (New York, 1956). Its numerous debts to these and many other scholars are, I hope, adequately recognized in the introduction and commentary; they are boundless. The passages on pages lvi-lviii, from Cleanth Brooks's and Robert B. Heilman's book *Understanding Drama*, are quoted with the kind permission of the authors and of Henry Holt and Co., Inc., the publishers.

The work was finished under the dark shadow cast by the death of Una Ellis-Fermor, General Editor of the series, than whom no counsellor could have been more helpful, tolerant, and sympathetic; to have her encouragement eased many an hour of a long journey. Help was willingly afforded me by Dr T. W. Craik, Dr G. E. Dawson of the Folger Shakespeare Library, Dr Mary Isabel Fry of the Henry E. Huntington Library, Dr Charles Hinman, Professor Harold Jenkins, Mr C. A. Luttrell, Dr G. H. Martin, Mr J. C. Maxwell (who furnished many items of value, including Appendix V), Miss Joyce Moody, Mr M. R. Ridley, and Miss Jean Robertson. I gladly acknowledge also the fresh insights and enthusiasm given by an adult-class research group of Vaughan College, an extra-mural department of the University of Leicester, which worked with me for some months on the play's problems. Above all, Dr Harold Brooks has given generously of his scanty time and abundant scholarship. What I owe to him cannot be sufficiently expressed, but my gratitude goes deep.

A. R. HUMPHREYS.

The University, Leicester.
December, 1959.

INTRODUCTION

This text is based on the earliest Quartos (Q₀ and Q₁), modernized and punctuated as explained in "Editorial Methods" (pp. lxxv ff.). The introduction deals with the main questions which the play provokes, and the footnotes preserve much of the original Arden material for its relevance to Elizabethan language and life, though taking account too of the later harvest of scholarship.

I. DATE

The play is somewhat later than *King John* and *Richard II*, which are usually assigned to 1595-6.¹ Richer, riper, and far better built though it is than *King John*, John's troubled mind, Faulconbridge's irreverent vitality (so like Hotspur's), and the earlier play's poetic force find counterparts in it. Greatly though it differs from *Richard II*'s lyrical tragedy, the events of that play directly forecast it, as Carlisle prophesies "woefullest division" (*R2*, iv. i. 146), Richard foresees Northumberland's defection (*R2*, v. i. 55), and Bolingbroke laments his "unthrifty son" (*R2*, v. iii. 1). The two plays cannot be long separated, marvellously deeper and broader though Shakespeare's vision now is. In *Henry VI* he had struggled to present the whole national life; in *Richard III*, *King John*, and *Richard II* his scope had narrowed to baronial faction. Now he suddenly sees how to combine in a complex drama everyone from monarch to tapster, and all humours that have showed themselves humours since the old days of goodman Adam.

About 1598 the first part of *Henry IV* was much in the news.

(i) It was entered in the *Stationers' Register* to Andrew Wyse, on 25 February, though not called Part 1; this may or may not mean that Part 2 was unwritten or incomplete.

1597 [1598, new style] xxv^{to} die ffebruarij. Andrew Wyse. Entred for his Copie vnder th[e] handes of Master Dix: and master Warden Man a booke intituled The historie of HENRY the IIIJth with his battaile of Shrewsburye against HENRY

1. As E. A. J. Honigmann observes, scholars have located *King John* in every year from 1591 to 1598. He himself argues for 1590 (*King John*, Arden edn, 1954, xliii-lviii).

HOTTSPURRE of the Northe with the conceived mirthe of Sir JOHN FFALSTOFF.

(ii) There were two 1598 quarto editions. The earlier (Q0) survives only in a fragment (cf. "Establishment of the Copy-Text", p. lxvi). The later (Q1) was set up from it in the same printing-house, Peter Short's, and its title-page reads

THE / HISTORY OF / HENRIE THE / FOVRTH; / With the battell at Shrewsburie, / *betweene the King and Lord* / Henry Percy, sur-named / Henrie Hotspur of / the North. / *With the humorous conceits of Sir* / Iohn Falstalffe. / [Ornament] / AT LONDON, / Printed by P. S. for *Andrew Wise*, dwelling / in Paules Churchyard, at the signe of / the Angell. 1598.

Subsequent editions are recorded in Appendix I.

(iii) Francis Meres's *Palladis Tamia* (1598: entered SR, 7 September) cites "*Henry the 4*" (no part specified) as proving Shakespeare "most excellent . . . for Tragedy", and makes one of the three earliest-known Falstaff jokes (*Palladis Tamia*, xiv) by commending Michael Drayton's "vertuous disposition" in times "when there is nothing but rogerie in villanous man".¹

(iv) Between 25 and 28 February 1598, Essex wrote to Sir Robert Cecil asking him to tell their friend Sir Alex Ratcliff that "his sister is maryed to S^r Jo. Falstaff".² Gossip was linking Ratcliff's sister Margaret with Sir Henry Brooke, Lord Cobham. It is well known that Falstaff's original name was Oldcastle and that this was changed because Sir Henry, or his father Sir William Brooke, or both, being descendants of the historical Oldcastle, objected to their ancestor's mishandling. Shakespeare promptly rechristened his creation, and Sir Henry's enemies, it seems, promptly rechristened him likewise.

The Cobhams probably made their protest early in 1597. *The Merry Wives of Windsor* (written, according to John Dennis, in fourteen days at the Queen's command³) seems to have been hurriedly thrown together for the conferment of knighthoods of the Garter in April-May 1597 (cf. Appendix II). The name Falstaff had already memorably occurred in connection with Shakespeare's only previous prominent reference to the Order of the Garter, in which the heroic Talbot denounces an unworthy knight:

When first this order was ordain'd, my lords,
Knights of the Garter were of noble birth,

1. Cf. II. iv. 121-2: for other jokes see (iv), above, and V. i. 129-30, note.

2. L. Hotson, *Sh.'s Sonnets Dated*, 1949, 148.

3. Dedication to *The Comical Gallant*, 1702.

Valiant and virtuous, full of haughty courage,
 Such as were grown to credit by the wars,
 Not fearing death, nor shrinking for distress,
 But always resolute in most extremes.
 He then that is not furnish'd in this sort
 Doth but usurp the sacred name of knight,
 Profaning this most honourable order,
 And should—if I were worthy to be judge—
 Be quite degraded. (1 *Henry VI*, iv. i. 33-43)

The dastardly cause of this outburst was "Sir John Falstaffe" who deserted Talbot at the battle of Patay.¹ Busy with Garter preparations, and needing to rename his new antithesis of military honour, Shakespeare's mind leapt to his previous Garter-coward and with considerable violence to history pressed him, transformed, into immortal service.

Not only the first but both parts of *Henry IV* may have been performed before *The Merry Wives*; this latter play assumes that the spectators already know Justice Shallow, and they could do so only through 2 *Henry IV*. Similarly, Pistol is elaborately introduced into 2 *Henry IV* whereas in *The Merry Wives* Slender mentions him, with Nym and Bardolph, as a matter of course (i. i. 130). Both parts, moreover, seem to have reached the stage before the Brookes objected. The conclusion of Part 2's epilogue in the Folio text² comes in the Quarto at the end of the first paragraph; this presumably was where the epilogue originally concluded. The latter portion in both Q and F texts of the epilogue contains an apology dissociating Oldcastle from Falstaff. This looks like an afterthought, an apology added after the performance of the play had provoked the Brookes' protest. Traces of the original names indeed survive uncorrected in the Part 2 Q (1600): *Old.* appears as a speech-prefix at i. ii. 138, and "Sir Iohn Russel" in the ii. ii entry-direction. Why the Brooke family did not ensure a change of name until both parts were finished is uncertain; perhaps it swallowed Part 1 as it had done the previous Oldcastle appearance in *The Famous Victories of Henry the Fifth* but could not stomach the still further, and grosser, travesty in Part 2.

The precise dating of Part 1 is speculative, but the timetable may be as follows: *Richard II* being finished late in 1595, Shakespeare

1. The historical Fastolf (1378-1459) was one of Henry V's leaders and fought well at Agincourt and elsewhere. But at Patay (1429) his manœuvres went wrong, his men fled, and Talbot was captured. 16th-c. chroniclers followed Monstrelet's story that he was deprived of the Garter for cowardice, though in fact he was exonerated after an investigation into the defeat.

2. "and so [I] kneele downe before you: But (indeed) to pray for the Queene".

works on *1 Henry IV* in 1596 and it is played in the winter season of 1596-7. He carries on with Part 2, which reaches the stage also.¹ Sir William Brooke, Lord Cobham, who is the Lord Chamberlain (following Sir Henry Carey, first Lord Hunsdon and the players' patron, who died on 22 July 1596), observes that these plays increasingly misrepresent his ancestor, a Wycliffite hero for whom he himself, being Puritanically inclined, probably feels particular respect. Through his authority the plays are withdrawn. But on 5 March 1597 he himself dies; Sir George Carey, the second Lord Hunsdon, succeeds him as Lord Chamberlain on 17 March, is (like his father) the players' patron (they have been "Lord Hunsdon's Men" and are now "The Lord Chamberlain's Men"), and furthermore is to be elected Knight of the Garter on 23 April and installed at Windsor in May. Moreover, the Queen wants to see another play on the fat knight, tactfully renamed. Shakespeare rushes *The Merry Wives* through in March/April (and presumably as an actor is busy with the May production at Windsor too). Relying on the combination of Hunsdon's protection, the Queen's favour, and the privilege of the occasion, he risks some anti-Brooke jokes. Falstaff being sought after, the Host rather oddly says "There's his Chamber, his House, his Castle" (*Merry Wives*, F text, iv. v. 6; Q reads "Sir John, there's his Castle, his standing bed" [l. 1305]), which may be an Oldcastle echo, and the jealous Ford assumes the *nom de guerre* of "Brook" (II. i. 223).² Shakespeare might during the summer of 1597 revise the offending names in both parts of *Henry IV*, with some oversights.³ From late July to early October the Privy Council bans all stage performances, in retaliation for the production of Jonson and Nashe's "seditious" play *The Isle of Dogs*. When the theatres re-open, the revised *Henry IV* returns to the repertoire, and Part 1 is printed early in 1598 to publicize the change of names. Sir Henry Brooke, the new Lord Cobham, still feels aggrieved, however: *The Merry Wives* has mocked him, and his enemies have nicknamed him Falstaff (cf. p. xii, above). To pacify him, Part 2's epilogue is amplified to rehabilitate his ancestor, *The Merry Wives*' "Brook" becomes "Broome", and

1. The question of the structural relationship between Parts 1 and 2 will be discussed in the introduction to Part 2.

2. F changes this to "Broome", ruining Falstaff's joke about "such Brooks [F *Broomes*] . . . that o'erflow such liquor" (*Wiv.*, II. ii. 159). The time-table suggested above owes much to J. Dover Wilson, 'The Origins and Development of Sh.'s *H4*' (*The Library*, 4th ser., xxvi, June 1945), and W. Bracy, *The Merry Wives of Windsor: The History and Transmission of Sh.'s Text* (Univ. of Missouri Stud., xxv. 1, 1952).

3. As Dr Harold Brooks points out to me, Massinger overlooked some details in recopying *Believe as you list* with altered names and setting.

after three years' perturbation of the Cobhams and diversion of everyone else the Drayton-Munday-Wilson-Hathaway play of *The true and honorable historie, of the life of Sir John Old-castle* (acted 1599, printed 1600) sets the long-suffering Wycliffite in the right light.

The dates suggested above for both parts are rather earlier than those often given, especially for Part 2, and raise the question why, if Part 2 already existed, the *SR* entry and the *Q* title-page of Part 1 have no reference to separate parts. Possibly Shakespeare wrote on his first page merely "The historye of Henry the IIIJth", and no-one amended it; Elizabethan registration- and publication-procedure is haphazard about details. Indeed, even after Part 2 was published, none of the *Qq* of Part 1 bore any indication that the play was divided. If both parts were written by the spring of 1597, the interval before their successor *Henry V* (1599) is long, but Shakespeare had other plays on hand. Some scholars have held that, as 2 *Henry IV*'s epilogue promises, *Henry V* originally appeared "with Sir Iohn in it".¹ Such drastic revision as would be needed to excise Sir John from it needs, one may suggest, stronger arguments than have been adduced, and his absence may be due rather to the lapse of two years and the fact that Shakespeare, having already put him into three plays (besides the incidental appearance in 1 *Henry VI*), may not have felt able to resuscitate him for a fourth.

2. THE QUESTION OF REVISION

That Shakespeare altered the *Henry IV* plays has always been recognized, but estimates of the degree of alteration range from the minimum assumption that he changed three names (Oldcastle, Harvey, and Russell giving place to Falstaff, Bardolph, and Peto) to the maximum that he pruned the history, rewrote and expanded the comedy, and reduced the status of Falstaff's cronies. Few scholars believe in radical changes but those few include Professors A. E. Morgan and Dover Wilson.

1. *Changes of Name*

Falstaff was certainly once Oldcastle. That is his name in *The Famous Victories*, and Shakespeare's text reflects it. "My old lad of the castle" (1*H4*, 1. ii. 41), though also a cant term for a roisterer, is surely a pun. "Away, good Ned, Falstaff sweats to death" (ibid., 11. ii. 103) would be decasyllabic like its context were the name

1. For a statement of this view, cf. *Henry V*, Arden edn, 1954, xlii-xlv.

"Oldcastle".¹ The surviving prefix *Old*. in the Q of Part 2 has been mentioned, and the epilogue makes its apology. *The Merry Wives*, as has been seen, may have its echo, though "Oldcastle" was not necessarily the original name there too, as is sometimes suggested. And finally, the *Sir John Oldcastle* play admits that its hero had been travestied.

When, as Fuller puts it, Oldcastle was "relieved", other names were changed too, doubtless because bearers of them at Court might be offended. The Qq and F texts of Part 1 refer to "Falstalffe, Haruey, Rossil, and Gadshill" (I. ii. 158), where editors beginning with Theobald change the two middle names to Bardolph and Peto. At II. iv. 172, 174, 178, the Qq have the prefix *Ross*., which F and editors change to *Gads*.² In Part 2, F substitutes "*Bardolfe*" in the Q's entry-direction "*Sir Iohn Russel*" (II. ii). Russell was the name of the Earls of Bedford, and Harvey that of Lord Southampton's mother's third husband. Shakespeare would be wise to avoid offence.

Yet "Oldcastle" survived long in theatrical memory. On 6 March 1600 Rowland Whyte wrote to Sir Robert Sidney about a feast at which "Sir John Old Castell" was performed by the Lord Chamberlain's Men, and since the play actually called *Sir John Oldcastle* belonged not to the Lord Chamberlain's Men but the Lord Admiral's, this is probably (though not certainly) a part of *Henry IV*, which was sometimes called *Sir John Falstaff* (Hemingway, New Var., 477) and might informally retain the old name. As late as 1639 the King's Men did "ould Castel" at court on 29 May, "the princes berthnyght" (Chambers, *W. Sh.*, ii. 353), and this would hardly, one supposes, be the uninteresting Drayton-Munday-Wilson-Hathaway play. In the anonymous *Meeting of Gallants at an Ordinarie* (1604), the "fatte and pursie" Host is "a madde round knaue, and a merrie one too: and if you chaunce to talke of fatte *Sir Iohn Old-castle*, he wil tell you, he was his great Grand-father, and not much vnlike him in Paunch" (sig. B4). About 1610-11 Nathan Field's *Amends for Ladies*³ asks:

Did you neuer see
The Play, where the fat Knight hight *Old-castle*,
Did tell you truly what this honor was?

And the glutton in the anonymous *Wandering-Jew, Telling Fortunes*

1. The "Falstaff" at II. iv. 521 would also fit its decasyllabic context better as "Oldcastle".

2. Save for Collier, who preferred *Bard*. Of course, *Gads*. for *Ross*. is not a renaming of the latter but a redistribution of his speeches.

3. Nathan Field, *Plays*, ed. W. Peery, 1950; *Amends for Ladies*, IV. iii. 23-5.

to *Englishmen* (c. 1628, printed 1640) claims that "Sir Iohn Old-castle was my greatgrandfathers fathers Uncle" (*SAB*, i. 446).

Seventeenth-century historians discussed the matter further. Dr Richard James, Sir Robert Cotton's librarian, wrote about 1625 to Sir Henry Bourchier relating that "a young Gentle Lady" inquired how Falstaff, banished for cowardice under Henry VI, could have died under Henry V. "I made answer", he says (*SAB*, i. 330):

That Sr John Falstaffe was in those times a noble valiant souldier. . . . That in Shakespeares first shew of Harrie the fift [sic], the person with which he undertook to playe a buffone was not Falstaffe, but Sir Jhon Oldcastle, and that offence beinge worthily taken by Personages descended from his title . . . the poet was putt to make an ignorant shifte of abusing Sir Jhon Falstophe.

In *Trinarchodia, The Raigne of Henrie the Fifth* (1647), George Daniel the poet recognizes that Falstaff's name was used "lest scandall might / Creep backward, & blott Martyr" (i.e. libel Oldcastle). Best-known are Thomas Fuller's allusions. In his *Church History* (1655) he says:

Stage-Poets have themselves been very bold with, and others very merry at, the Memory of Sr John Oldcastle, whom they have fancied a boon Companion, a jovial Royster, and yet a Coward to boot, contrary to the credit of all Chronicles, owning him a Martial man of merit. The best is, Sr John Falstaffe, hath relieved the Memory of Sr John Oldcastle, and of late is substituted Buffoone in his place, but it matters as little what *petulant Poets*, as what *malicious Papists* have written against him. (Book IV, xv cent., 168)

The phrase "of late is substituted Buffoone" is odd, fifty-seven years after *1 Henry IV* was published, but the Falstaff story is festooned with loose ends. In *The Worthies of England* (1662) Fuller is concerned to 'relieve' Fastolf's memory as well as Oldcastle's (ii. 253):

JOHN FASTOLFE Knight, was a native of this County [Norfolk] . . . To avouch him by many arguments valiant, is to maintain that the sun is bright, though since the *Stage* hath been over bold with his memory, making him a *Thrasonical Puff*, and emblem of *Mock-valour*. True it is, Sir John Oldcastle did first bear the brunt of the one, being made the *make-sport* in all plays for a coward. It is easily known out of what *purse* this black *peny* came. The *Papists* railing on him for a *Heretick*, and therefore he must also be a coward, though indeed he was a man of arms, every inch of him, and as valiant as any in his age.

Now as I am glad that Sir John Oldcastle is put out, so I am sorry that Sir John Fastolfe is put in, to relieve his memory in this base

service, to be the *anvil* for every *dull wit* to strike upon. Nor is our Comedian excusable, by some alteration of his name, writing him Sir *John Falstafe* . . . seeing the *vicinity* of sounds intrench on the memory of *that worthy Knight*, and few do heed the *inconsiderable difference* in spelling of their name.

The thrasonical puff, however named, was never one to be ignored.

2. *Further Revision?*

In *Some Problems of Shakespeare's "Henry the Fourth"* (1924) Professor A. E. Morgan suggested more drastic revision, and Professor Dover Wilson supported him, with amendments, in *The Library*, xxvi (1945). The "Oldcastle" comedy, it is argued, was mainly in verse, and when the Cobhams' protests compelled revision Shakespeare both recast the vestigial "knights" Harvey and Russell as the lower-comedy Bardolph and Peto, and also rewrote the comic scenes in prose. Wilson says:

I myself would date 1 *Henry IV* in the autumn or winter of 1597, but I think that twelve months or more earlier Lord Hunsdon's Men were playing another *Henry IV* in which Oldcastle spoke comic blank verse like Juliet's Nurse and Robert Faulconbridge.

Morgan suggests that Shakespeare's first version (c. 1596) was in two parts, with more history and less comedy than at present, and that in revision the history was cut and the comedy expanded; Wilson holds that the first version was a single play which in revision grew into two parts. But these alternatives are less important than the common claim of a prior Shakespearean version with the comic scenes in verse. And this claim, brilliantly though it is argued, seems untenable.

Firstly, as Milton Crane points out in *Shakespeare's Prose* (1951), while poets have sometimes made prose drafts as a basis for versification, the contrary process is rare and occurs only for special reasons, as one would expect of a *modus operandi* which starts from the harder method of composition. Secondly, Shakespeare's company were busy actors who would hardly wish to forget a verse-version they knew in favour of learning a new prose one. Thirdly, Wilson has suggested similar prosifying in several other plays (e.g. *As You Like It*, *Two Gentlemen of Verona*, *Measure for Measure*, *The Tempest*)—but the more plays that are proffered the less likely does it become that a hard-working actor-dramatist would thus rewrite them. Fourthly, the "evidence" for the theory dissolves on close inspection.

(a) The historical verse scenes, it is argued, have been cut, have

incomplete lines, and are retouched. Morgan sees curtailment in the jerky metre or curt action of I. i. 55-6, I. i. 62 ff., III. ii. 92-3, IV. i. 75, V. i. 22-9, V. i. 101-3. Dover Wilson finds reworking at III. ii. 173-6 (cf. note). Yet the historical scenes are quite as coherent and complete as one can properly expect in Elizabethan drama. Broken or rough lines and some confusion in the action are the ordinary accidents of the dramatist's workshop. They are not enough to prove curtailment.

(b) The comic prose scenes are said to contain "fossil" verses, relics of an earlier metrical version, surviving as decasyllabic rhythms in the prose "rewriting". These "fossils" are allegedly numerous in two areas—in the Gad's Hill preparations and robbery (the original "wild Prince" material), and in scene-endings where Shakespeare might preserve his original linkages with following scenes. The pure wit-comedy, however, not belonging to the Gad's Hill escapade, is held to be later and maturer addition.

There are fallacies in this, however. For instance, I. ii. 1-119 is wit-comedy without any "fossil" verses, and on Morgan's theory is later addition. Yet it contains three of the most evident echoes of the old *Famous Victories* story, in the "old lad of the castle" pun (I. ii. 41), the "most sweet wench" (cf. I. ii. 39-40, note), and Hal's promise to promote Falstaff hangman (cf. I. ii. 61-5, note). Scenes lacking fossil verses are evidently not necessarily later additions Shakespeare made while prosifying an "original" version.

The whole "fossils" argument is unreliable. It was not as clear to Shakespeare as to Monsieur Jourdain that everything that is not prose is verse, and everything that is not verse is prose. As McKerrow observes in the *Prolegomena for the Oxford Shakespeare* (1939):

There are many passages in which it is difficult to be certain whether prose or verse was intended. . . The truth is, no doubt, that at least in dramatic writing there was no clear and consistent distinction between prose and verse, and that in many cases a more or less rhythmical prose took the place of formal verse.

Shakespeare often hovered betwixt and between, being a prolific verse-dramatist with decasyllables in his blood-stream.

But what if the "fossils" come not accidentally, at random, but clustered at scene-ends, as though surviving as links with the next verse-scene? "We should," says Morgan, "look for a preponderance of verse-fragments at the end of such scenes. That again is precisely what we find." We sometimes do find it, but not for Morgan's reason. Serious and comic are often thematically linked (cf. pp. xlvii-1), yet the linkage is not so specific that, were Shakespeare re-

vising, comic scene-ends would resist change more than other parts. The verse or near-verse at comic scene-ends occurs rather for another reason, the reason that made Shakespeare write all of I. ii in prose save for Hal's final soliloquy. In other words, the scapegrace fun is in prose, but when Hal faces the outer world his different status calls for verse. In II. iv. 499-518 Hal and the sheriff speak in verse-rhythms (and Q mostly sets them up so) and these rhythms, whether intended as prose or verse, continue for a few lines after the sheriff leaves (519-22). Finally, Hal and Peto revert to prose (523-43). Similarly with III. iii: the fooling is in prose, but lines 194-203 are verse (albeit rough) because Hal (like his father at the end of III. ii) is giving orders for the campaign. These verses are not "fossils" but signs of Hal's function and status.

One scene-end (II. ii. 99-105), however, is so metrical that though QqF give it as prose nearly all editors follow Pope and arrange it as verse. Shakespeare may have intended verse but failed to make the lines clear. Of this there are other instances—for example, Q prints as prose (and that in a verse-scene) the clearly metrical speeches at II. iii. 71-3, 78-89, and III. i. 103-7, and the probably metrical speeches at III. i. 3-10. He may not have cared much how it appeared—"a lack of system, often even of decision, on Shakespeare's part", Wilson has called it—like the slipping in-and-out of metre at III. i. 227-30, 241-56, or V. iii. 40-55. But in this particular scene-end he has narrative to transmit. Here, as in the Gad's Hill onset, and the buckram-men episode too (II. iv), decasyllables abound. Is not the real reason that some spirited narrations are in prose because they are comedy, yet sound like verse (not that Shakespeare argued thus to himself) because they are comic heroics? The buckram-men scene, Morgan argues, shows "three strata of dramatic evolution": these are (a) a pre-Shakespearean verse-version with "a rudimentary deferential Oldcastle" (because once and once only, at II. iv. 173, Falstaff calls Hal "my lord"); (b) a Shakespearean verse-version revealed by "fossils" in the surviving text; (c) a Shakespearean prosified version "in which Falstaff rises to the topmost pitch of comedy". This might have weight were the "fossil" verse and mature prose uneasily yoked together. But when the very substance and phrase of the supposed "fossils" are the rich expression of mature comedy the argument must be dismissed. Verse-rhythm, coming to Shakespeare's pen in the full flow of the mature comedy, is there because the comic narrative stimulates him to metre while the wit-play stays in prose. Somebody else's verse-version may possibly have been intermediate between the original *Famous Victories* play(s) and the extant

Shakespearean text (cf. pp. xxxiv ff.), but there is no real evidence that Shakespeare himself first wrote these plays in a form different from their present one.

Wilson has raised one related point; some of Hotspur's speeches, he thinks, have been "deliberately prosified" to "break or roughen the smooth contours of the verse in which they were first written" and "to add bluntness and rudeness" to his character.¹ But if so, why did Shakespeare start prosifying only at III. i? Do these characteristics of Hotspur not emerge quite as well from the verse of, say, I. iii. 28 ff., as they could from any prose? To inquire thus is not to belittle Wilson's acuteness about the hesitancy the play often shows between prose- and verse-form; it is merely to assert that Hotspur's roughnesses, like Falstaff's rhythms, show the absence rather than the presence of revision. Other Elizabethan plays likewise hesitate as to medium; *Woodstock*, for instance, mixes verse- and prose-rhythms.² The practice will not support the theory propounded for the *Henry IV* plays.

3. SOURCES

Literary sources are, rightly speaking, the whole relevant contents of the writer's mind as he composes, and no account of them can be complete. To specify the *Henry IV* plays' "sources" is to run the risk of seeming too narrow, of circumscribing works that so generously embrace Elizabethan life and thought as to be an individual's expression of a whole nationhood. Definable origins there certainly are, some direct, on which Shakespeare demonstrably drew, and others indirect, which lie behind the direct sources or create the accepted popular traditions. There are plays—*Richard II*, *The Famous Victories* (or its presumed original—cf. pp. xxxiv ff.), *Woodstock*, *Soliman and Perseda*—directly drawn upon, as also are histories like Holinshed's *Chronicles*, Daniel's *Civile Wars*, the *Myrroure for Magistrates*, and probably Stow's *Annales*. Behind these, contributing to the historical tradition, though not directly to Shakespeare, are ranged other histories—Hall's and Fabyan's chronicles and their fifteenth-century antecedents, with the important MS translation (1513) of Tito Livio's *Vita Henrici Quinti*. There are numerous echoes of the Bible, and probably of the church *Homilies*, familiar from pulpit repetition. There are ballads, songs, and snatches of proverb-lore. Yet these are only identifiable portions of a rich complex which includes much else—

1. E.g. III. i. 3-5, 9-10, 15-17; these are prose in Qq.

2. E.g. Rossiter's edn, I. ii. 72-91, III. ii. 132-51, 174-239.

familiar legends, morality plays about the contests of Virtue and Vice, Renaissance conceptions of history as inculcating national unity and proper rule, and a popular spirit compounded of self-confidence and self-searching. Add a thousand strands of town and country life; of tavern cries and catches, revelry and play-acting; of army life with its practice of arms and malpractice of recruitment; of country life with its gentry and labourers, sowing and harvesting, buying and selling; of all the working, sporting, eating, drinking, travelling, praying, and preying, which always make a nation's life but which in Elizabethan idiom achieve an unrivalled vivacity. Fertilize all this with the fermenting linguistic, poetic, and dramatic experiment which attains its highest pitch in the mind of Shakespeare. Then some dim notion of what went into the plays becomes possible. The true "sources" are a whole national life, thought, and language as felt by a great poet; they far outrange any mere interleaving (as some critics have thought) of perfunctory history with vivid comedy or (as others have thought) of purposeful history with irrelevant (though welcome) comedy. Both history and comedy combine in surpassingly rich interrelationship, whose "source" is Shakespeare's myriad-mindedness. To Shakespeare's mind, as these plays reveal it, Coleridge's aphorism is splendidly apt:

No man was ever yet a great poet without being at the same time a profound philosopher. For poetry is the blossom and the fragrantcy of all human knowledge, human thoughts, human passions, emotions, language. (*Biographia Literaria*, xv)

To list a few documents is therefore to give no adequate account of the materials. Yet Shakespeare's indebtednesses are in fact great, and the more his identifiable sources are studied the more evident does it become that his structural power in uniting diverse material is as extraordinary as his psychological, moral, or poetic power. He modelled the interesting but inchoate substance of Holinshed by means of the spirit and shaping of Daniel; he enriched it with the graceless comedy of *The Famous Victories* (or its original) suitably modified by the humaner interpretations of Holinshed and Daniel and by the moral responsibility of the morality-play tradition. He maintained the popular heroism of the Percy story (which had already gone into the border ballads), the popular comedy of the current Oldcastle mythology, and the romanticism of Welsh history as his Welsh acquaintance breathed it. Like sherris-sack in Falstaff, this rich amalgam produced in his mind a stimulus "apprehensive, quick, forgetive, full of nimble, fiery, and delectable shapes".

1. *Raphael Holinshed: "Chronicles of England" (2nd edition, 1587)*

The history comes mainly from Holinshed,¹ though with most important adjustments from Daniel (cf. p. xxviii). Churton Collins thought that Holinshed contributed merely "the meagre outline of the purely historical portions" (*Studies in Sh.*, 1904, 259). Meagre it is not; it includes most of the major historical events and very many of the details. Holinshed tells his story well, though not so well as Shakespeare. Since Collins could not find in him "the pathetic character of the king" or "his position under Nemesis for the crime", and since others have credited to Hall rather than Holinshed a sense of the drama of history, it is proper to point out that pathos, Nemesis, and drama are movingly present. The "pathetic character" is evident when Henry's life is threatened (Hall omits the incident)²; and Henry's last hours are equally moving when, "sore troubled" with disease, he weeps to be reconciled with the Prince and regrets "with a great sigh" his criminal attaining of the crown. The marginal gloss reads: "A guiltie conscience in extremitie of sicknesse pincheth sore" (iii. 57). The Nemesis-theme is no less evident: it occurs immediately upon Richard II's murder when Bolingbroke is condemned for lack of "moderation and loialtie . . . for the whiche both he himselfe and his lineall race were scourged afterwards, as a due punishment vnto rebellious subiects" (ii. 869); it recurs when the Percys' revolt gathers way (iii. 24): and after Henry's death the theme of divine retribution sounds again, in significantly religious terms, over the severe rule Henry's subjects suffered under him:

And yet doubtlesse, woorthie were his subiects to tast of that bitter cup, sithens they were so readie to ioine and clappe hands with him, for the deposing of their rightfull and naturall prince king Richard.
(iii. 58)

Stressing the repeated troubles of Henry's reign, Holinshed sums it up as one of "great perplexitie and little pleasure" (iii. 57). Shakespeare may, as Dr Tillyard argues, have found a natural drama in Hall's chapter-headings (from "The Vnquiete Tyme of Kyng Henry the Fourthe" to "The Triumphant Reigne of Kyng Henry the VIII"). But Holinshed and Daniel could unaided inspire the retributive theme in the *Henry IV*s.

Shakespeare's discipleship is that of a playwright, not a research scholar: he follows errors as well as facts. Like Holinshed (and

1. The edition of 1587 has the word "pickthanks" (1587 edn, iii. 539) which Shakespeare picks up (iii. ii. 25); the edition of 1577 does not. Except where otherwise stated, references are to the 6 vol. reprint of 1807-8.

2. See App. III, pp. 167-8.

Daniel too, *C.W.*, iii. 90) he confuses the Edmund Mortimer captured by Glendower with his nephew Edmund who was heir to the crown (cf. i. iii. 144, note). He makes the Archbishop of York "brother" instead of cousin to the Scrope executed at Bristol (cf. i. iii. 264-5, note). Excusably he misreads Holinshed in making Mordake the son of Douglas (cf. i. i. 71-2, note: this could not have happened had his source been Hall), in applying to Glendower's birth the occurrence (though not the kind) of portents really belonging to Mortimer's (cf. iii. i. 11, note), and more carelessly in taking the Scottish Earl of March to be one of the Mortimers, as were the English Earls of March (cf. iii. ii. 164, note). Hal's unhistorical killing of Hotspur is doubtless also a misreading of Holinshed (cf. v. iv. 38-40, note) made either direct or via Daniel, who implies (*C.W.*, iii. 97) that the two met in single combat (cf. Appendix III).

Appendix III indicates how Shakespeare resembles Holinshed. But it is rather his alterations that suggest his shaping spirit of imagination. These alterations consist of omissions, expansions, and readjustments.

(a) *Omissions*. To specify all of these would be tedious. It must suffice to say that the historical contents of both parts of *Henry IV* use about one-fifth of Holinshed's material. From a shapeless compilation of annual odds and ends, local anecdotes, religious matters, and haphazard forays against the Scots, Welsh, and French, Shakespeare takes those items which coherently relate the Percys' defection and its consequences. In this, Daniel is his guide; both poets achieve what is barely seen in Holinshed, a shape and theme. One particular omission is noteworthy. While Shakespeare, guided by the original *Famous Victories*, makes much more than Holinshed of Hal's revelry, and indeed includes the highway escapades which Holinshed does not mention, he omits Holinshed's curious story (quite grotesque in the *Famous Victories* version) of how Hal submitted himself to his father dressed up in

a gowne of blew satten, full of small oilet holes, at euerie hole the needle hanging by a silke thred with which it was sewed. About his arme he ware an hounds collar set full of SS of gold, and the tirets likewise being of the same metall. (iii. 53)

Well known though this episode was, through the English translation of Tito Livio's *Vita* (cf. p. xxi), through Stow, Holinshed, and the *Famous Victories*, its oddity (never convincingly elucidated) would not accord with the maturity Shakespeare bestows upon Hal. He omits it, as he tones down other moments of extravagance.

(b) *Expansions*. An exhaustive account of Shakespeare's germi-

nating power would be lengthy. But the growth of "meagre outlines" (the phrase is not unjustified here) into living personages is worth observing, however inadequately. In some cases Shakespeare mainly realizes, magnificently, characterizations already clear. In Holinshed, for instance, the bases of the King's character are well laid in the demonstration of his acumen and "policy" over Mortimer and the Percys, his vigorous initiatives against opposition, his military energy which surprises his enemies, his leadership in battle, and his care-shadowed reign.¹ The gist of Worcester, too, is well given; he is "the procurer and setter forth of all this mischief", he demands that Mortimer be ransomed, he confronts Henry before Shrewsbury, and he conceals from Hotspur the King's offered terms. Westmoreland, Northumberland, and Douglas, too, Shakespeare brings vividly alive without originating much. In Holinshed Westmoreland is a leading King's man (though appearing only after Shrewsbury), Northumberland is jealous of the King and absent from Shrewsbury, and Douglas is "a right stout and hardie capteine". But something more original happens with Mortimer; from Holinshed's brief reference to his capture and his marriage to Glendower's daughter Shakespeare makes the sensible negotiator, the devoted son-in-law and husband (III. i). Blunt and Vernon, too, are brought forward. Holinshed mentions Blunt merely as the King's standard-bearer at Shrewsbury; Shakespeare makes him the King's adviser and emissary throughout (I. i, I. iii, III. ii, IV. iii, V. iii). Vernon, whom Holinshed barely names, is given the splendid speeches about the redeemed Hal in IV. i and V. ii, and a brief but vigorous part in IV. iii. As for Lady Mortimer and Lady Percy, something delightful is made here from almost nothing. To the former, Holinshed's mere "daughter of the said Owen", Shakespeare gives her Welsh songs—a poignant interlude in the theme of war, contrasting effectively with the teasing passages between Lady Percy and Hotspur; to the latter, whom Holinshed mentions simply as "Elleanor [actually, Elizabeth], whom the lord Henrie Persie had married", Shakespeare gives a truly human role.

The most striking developments, however, are those of Glendower, Hotspur, and Hal. In Holinshed, as in *A Myrroure for Magistrates*, Glendower is a predatory savage. He is, it is true, described as trained in law, an esquire to either Richard II or Bolingbroke (cf. III. i. 117), and famed for "art magike" (III. 20). But otherwise he is the outlaw issuing from inaccessible "lurking places" to commit outrages of which the Welshwomen's barbarities are examples

1. These points are stressed again in Daniel: cf. p. xxviii.

(cf. I. i. 40-6). Shakespeare's visionary poet-scholar, framing many an English ditty to the harp, the "worthy gentleman . . . wondrous affable, and as bounteous / As mines of India" (III. i. 159-63), is so undiscoverable in the chronicles that the dramatist, it has been suggested, must have received this version of him from Welsh acquaintances in London between writing I. i and III. i.¹

For Hotspur, Holinshed provides the basic elements but little more. As the impetuous leader his name suggests, "a capteine of high courage", Hotspur defies Henry and exhorts his soldiers to "aduancement & honor" or a liberating death. Daniel's *Ciuile Wars* merely lays a little more stress on his "peruers", "rash", and "furious" nature. Both authorities, though recognizing Hotspur's valour, tend to write of "the Persies" collectively rather than individually. These scanty traits Shakespeare develops into the dominating rebel, capable of such vehement brilliance as the popinjay-lord speech, the account of Mortimer's fight with Glendower, the quarrel over Glendower's magical and poetic gifts and the River Trent's meanders, and the heroics about honour and battle. For the fantastic comedy of the popinjay lord and his mission, Holinshed's only lead is a terse statement, of quite different tone, that the King "did diuers and sundrie times require deliuerance of the prisoners, and that with great threatenings". At Bangor, a colourless sentence in Holinshed (Daniel too) giving the terms of the tripartite indenture burgeons into the conflict, so prophetic of the rebels' incohesion at Shrewsbury, between Hotspur and Glendower, with all the former's self-assertion and the latter's credulousness, soon to detain him from the battlefield "o'er-rul'd by prophecies". Hotspur's impatient humour is new: so is his rough comedy with Lady Percy. His unhistorical youthfulness is not new, however; it derives from Daniel.

As for Hal, all that Holinshed relates is that at Shrewsbury he "holpe his father like a lustie yoong gentleman", not retiring though wounded, and (nine years later) that he was reconciled to his father after misunderstandings provoked by "pickthanks". Both Holinshed and Daniel, however, as has been seen, may be misread as saying that Hal killed Hotspur, and both stress his valour. It is from Daniel that Shakespeare takes the King to be middle-aged, and Hotspur to be Hal's age (cf. pp. 182-5). The most striking amplification of Holinshed, and of Daniel too, is of course in the interleaving of the history with the Eastcheap life; it is obvious how much Shakespeare adds by incorporating the "wild Prince" stories, seeing them as a punishment for the King

1. Arthur E. Hughes, *Sh. and his Welsh Characters*, 1918, 23.

and an education in government for Hal, and making the theme of Hal's redemption a leading dramatic interest. What does arouse perpetual astonishment is the free creativity of Shakespeare's invention while he still remains faithful to the gist, and often the detail, of his sources.

(c) *Readjustments*. The best-known readjustments of serious history are in the ages of Henry, Hal, and Hotspur, derived from Daniel's account. Among others may be noted (i) the transference of the intended Crusade from the last to the first years of the reign; (ii) the arrival of the Percys at Windsor on the King's summons rather than their own initiative; (iii) the postdating of Northumberland's sickness; (iv) the bringing forward by several years of Prince John's soldiery and Hal's reconciliation with his father.

(i) This change makes the intended Crusade an expiation; it is so in Daniel too, but only as Henry lies dying. What in Holinshed is a late design for uniting Europe against the infidel (iii. 57) becomes in Shakespeare the immediate prompting of remorse for Richard's death (cf. *R2*, v. vi. 49), though the outbreak of domestic strife prevents Henry from thus salving his conscience.

(ii) This change asserts Henry's dominance at the first stirrings of rebellion; whatever his guilt, his supremacy is valid provided his rule is effective.

(iii) This change makes more evident the rebels' rashness in committing their cause to unsafe ground. In Holinshed, Northumberland's sickness is known early (iii. 23) and there is no surprise about it, whereas in Shakespeare it is announced on the eve of Shrewsbury as an unforeseen aggravation of the hazard.

(iv) John's valour at Shrewsbury is an innovation; he was only thirteen at the time, and Holinshed first mentions him two years later when, with Westmoreland, he opposes the Archbishop's revolt. Shakespeare probably wished to show the utmost consolidation of the Lancastrian house in peril, and perhaps, too, to provide a staid foil for Hal (Cowl & Morgan, xiv). But also, since some readers doubt whether Shakespeare intended a Part 2, it is interesting to find him looking at post-Shrewsbury material; John's valour at Shrewsbury (which is not in any source) is presumably prompted by his later military leadership and might well not be introduced (like the Archbishop's scene with Sir Michael, iv. iv) were not Part 2 already in mind. As for the predating of Henry's and Hal's reconciliation, that is fundamental to the dramatic conduct of Part 1. To some extent Shakespeare queered his pitch with it, for why in Part 2 should Henry seemingly have forgotten all about it and still be dismayed at Hal's folly? The answer is that

while the historical events are in chronological sequence, the moral events (Hal's redemption in chivalry and justice) are in parallel, so that the reformation of Part 2 can proceed unaffected by that of Part 1. Certainly the effect in Part 1 is a great enrichment of Holinshed and Daniel. Daniel says nothing at all about discord between Henry and Hal; Holinshed says nothing until Henry's penultimate year about his suspicion of the Prince (iii. 53), and nothing until Hal's first year as King about "misrulie mates of dissolute order and life" (iii. 61). Shakespeare develops from Stow, via the original *Famous Victories*, the moral disorder which reinforces the political, and the private vindication of Hal which foreshadows the public.

2. *Samuel Daniel*: "*The First Fowre Bookes of the Ciuile Wars Between the Two Houses of Lancaster and Yorke*" (1595)

Daniel's poem helped Shakespeare markedly; in less than thirty stanzas (86-114) of the third Book it provided a lucid narrative stripped of Holinshed's irrelevances, clear stressing of the Nemesis theme through the repeated rebellions (98), plain statements of the Percys' turbulence and Mortimer's rights (87-90: he confuses the two Mortimers, cf. i. iii. 144, note), the tripartite division (91), the charges against Henry (92-3), Henry's celerity in advance (96, 99), and, in flat contradiction of Holinshed, the absence of the Welsh from Shrewsbury (99). Holinshed says that the Welsh "came to the aid of the Persies, and refreshed the wearied people with new succours" (iii. 25); Shakespeare keeps them away, though not for Daniel's reason (the King's rapid manoeuvre) but through Glendower's superstition (iv. iv. 16-18). Above all, Daniel readjusts the relative positions of Henry, Hotspur, and Hal. Hotspur (b. 1364?) was in fact Henry's senior (b. 1367), a generation older than Hal (b. 1387). At Shrewsbury Henry was only thirty-six, and Hal all but sixteen. But Daniel without giving Henry's age distinguishes him from "young *Hotespur*" (97), who is coeval with Hal. So in Shakespeare the King is elderly (v. i. 13); Hotspur, whom Northumberland had introduced to Bolingbroke as "my son, young Harry Percy" (*R2*, ii. iii. 21), is, as in Daniel, of an age with Hal (*1H4*, iii. ii. 103), so that Henry wishes "some night-tripping fairy" had interchanged them (i. i. 86). Daniel accentuates from shadowy hints in Holinshed the heroic opposition of Hotspur and Hal at Shrewsbury; the former is not middle-aged but "young", "vndaunted", "With forward speed his forces marshalling", "wrong counsaile" and "peruers", yet a "great spirit" and "courage bold" fallen in a wrongful cause; the latter is "forward", "fierce", "Wonder of Armes, the terror of the field". He

presents Hal in the role (which a loose reading of Holinshed could suggest) of the King's rescuer from Douglas and, by implication at least, of Hotspur's vanquisher.

Holinshed, then, provides adequate facts, a sketch of characterization, and the theme of evil engendered by evil. Daniel unifies the material, reinterprets the leading relationships, accentuates the drama of personalities, and gives a high momentum.

3. The "Wild Prince Hal" Stories

Stories of Henry V's madcap youth date from his own times. In 1418 Thomas Walsingham records that on his accession he suddenly reformed.¹ The virtually "official" *Vita Henrici Quinti* (c. 1437) by Tito Livio admits that his youthful pursuits were war, love, "and other things which licence allows to soldiers" ("et alia quae militaribus licentia praeberet solet"). The Lambeth MS 84 (c. 1479) of the popular *Brut* chronicle tells how, as Prince of Wales, "he fylle & yntendyd gretly to ryot, and drew to wylde company; & dyuers Ientylmen and Ientylwommen folwyd his wylle", and how only three honest counsellors opposed his inclinations, whom "he louyd afterward best, for pere good counsayle".² Fabyan's *Chronicle* (1516; written before 1513) attributes to him "all vyce and insolency" with "ryottours and wylde disposed perones" (577), until on accession "suddenly he became a newe man" and banished the scapegraces ten miles from his person upon pain of death (the first recorded mention of this threat: cf. 2H4, v. v. 68). In 1513 an English MS translation of Tito Livio's *Vita* made additions of first-rate interest. It added extra material from Enguerrand de Monstrelet's *Chroniques* (including the crown-on-the-pillow incident; 2H4, iv. v)³ and, more importantly, from the recollections of the fourth Earl of Ormonde (1392-1452), whom Henry V knighted at Agincourt and whose information the translator derived probably from an amanuensis's report. Thence—that is, directly from one who knew Henry well—comes the story that the Prince would lie in ambush with his mates to rob his own receivers, that the King disliked "the acts of youth which he exercised more than meanly" and "the great recourse of people to him", that to make amends the Prince approached his father in the fantastic garb already cited from Holinshed (cf. p. xxiv), that when dying the King made

1. "Mox ut initiatus est regni insulis repente mutatus est in virum alterum" (*Historia Anglicana*, ed. H. T. Riley, 1863, ii. 290).

2. Ed. F. W. D. Brie, EETS, Orig. ser., 136, ii. 594-5.

3. *Chronicles of Enguerrand de Monstrelet*, trans. Thomas Johnes, 1809, i. 317, ch. ci.

him a speech of good counsel repenting of the usurpation, to which the Prince proudly replied that he would maintain the succession, and that while loose in morals before his accession he thereupon became strictly continent.¹

Though this translation was not printed until 1911, its MS form was influential since its stories appeared in Stow's *Chronicles* (1580) and *Annales* (1592), and some of them (though not the receiver-robbing) in Holinshed. Together with the famous anecdote that the Prince struck the Lord Chief Justice and was sent to prison² they comprise the legend of the wild Prince, the origins of which thus date from the fifteenth century and seem reasonably authentic.

Professor Dover Wilson distinguishes a sevenfold tradition of these stories: (i) the general riot—repentance theme; (ii–iii–iv) three legends of wild exploits—highway robbery, Eastcheap unruliness, and the striking of the Lord Chief Justice; and (v–vi–vii) three legends of relations with the King—the submissive interview, the crown-taking, and the King's dying counsel. Of those that relate to *1 Henry IV*, the general wildness theme has been sketched already. That of highway ambush originates (as has been seen) with the Earl of Ormonde and is transmitted to Stow and *The Famous Victories* (though not Holinshed) by Tito Livio's English translator. That of Eastcheap unruliness is, it seems, derived from stories of princely riot extant in London histories.³ Stow's *Chronicles* (1580) probably prompted *The Famous Victories* to make Hal the ringleader, for they say (573) that the riots occurred between "the kings sonne", "his men", and "men of the court". Stow's *Annales* (1592), however, like Gregory's *Chronicle* (cf. fn. 3, below) blame the trouble on "Thomas and Iohn, the kings sonnes being in Eastcheap at London, at supper, after midnight" (540).

While preserving the midnight revelry in Eastcheap, so prominent in *The Famous Victories*, Shakespeare ignores the "hurlyng" save for a possible oblique reference in *Richard II* (*R2*, v. iii. 5–9). The Lord Chief Justice story and Hal's dismissal from the Privy Council are mentioned briefly in *1 Henry IV* (*1H4*, iii. ii. 32–3) and in *2 Henry IV* (*2H4*, i. ii. 61–3, 221–3, v. ii. 6–8, 63–101). After Elyot's *Governour* they appear in Redmayne's *Vita Henrici Quinti* (c. 1540), Hall (1548–50), Stow, Holinshed, and *The Famous Victories*. The Tudor historians attribute the dismissal to Hal's wild-

1. C. L. Kingsford, *The First Engl. Life of Henry V*, 1911, xxv–xxx.

2. This cannot be traced beyond Elyot's *Boke named the Governour*, 1531, but may descend from a non-extant London civic chronicle.

3. E.g. William Gregory's *Chronicle*, ed. James Gairdner, Camden Soc., 1876, 106—"the hurlyng in Estechepe by the lorde Thomas and the lorde John, the kyngys sone [*sic*]".

ness, yet they hint at the true reason, that he was suspected of intending treachery.¹ This suspicion is reflected in *1 Henry IV* at v. iv. 50-1 and perhaps at iii. ii. 122-8, and Shakespeare appropriately presents it as a retribution the usurping King feels to be impending. Finally, the submissive interview (iii. ii)—the only one of Wilson's last three items relevant to this play—is Shakespeare's radical improvement on and predating of the Ormonde—"Translator"—Stow-Holinshed-*Famous Victories* visit in strange apparel.

The "wild Prince" materials, then, converge from many directions, mostly assembled in Stow and transmitted (though not the highway robberies) to Holinshed. The original of *The Famous Victories* used Stow and was used by Shakespeare; Hal's companions in *1 Henry IV* are not Stow's "yoong lords and gentlemen" but *The Famous Victories'* rapscallions, and they rob not Hal's "owne receivers" (as in Stow) but the King's (as in *The Famous Victories*). At points in *1 Henry IV*, however, Shakespeare may have drawn directly on Stow (cf. section 4, below). Lest the variety of chronicles mentioned above suggests that Shakespeare ranged widely for his comic material it should be emphasized that he seems virtually to have been content with Stow, Holinshed, and the original *Famous Victories*. As with his serious history he showed his genius in transforming the handiest sources.

4. John Stow: "*The Chronicles of England*" (1580); "*The Annales of England*" (1592)

Though Shakespeare could find almost all the "wild Prince" material in Holinshed or the original *Famous Victories* or both, at one point (where Holinshed says nothing) he differs from *The Famous Victories* and coincides with Stow. Stow relates (*Chron.*, 583; *Annales*, 547) that Hal practised highway robbery and that

when his receiuers made to him their complaints how they were robbed in their comming unto him, he would giue them discharge of so much mony as they had lost, and besides that, they shold not depart from him without great rewards for their trouble and vexation.

This restitution, which derives from the "Translator"² and is, needless to say, quite foreign to the spirit of *The Famous Victories*, may well have suggested the phrase "The money shall be paid back again with advantage" (*1H4*, ii. iv. 540-1). If Shakespeare looked at Stow, his mind may have caught thence the word "starting-

1. In fact he was dismissed because of a scheme, urged in 1411-12 by the Beauforts, to have the ailing King abdicate in his favour: cf. iii. ii. 126, note.

2. Cf. C. L. Kingsford, *The First Engl. Life of Henry V*, 17.

hole" (cf. *1H4*, II. iv. 259, note). More significantly, he could have found in Stow's account of "Halydowne" (i.e. Holmedon), though not in Holinshed's English chronicle, that "Mordake" was the eldest son of the Duke of Albany (cf. I. i. 71-2, note). In *2 Henry IV*, he may have been impressed by Stow's very earnest account of the king's death-bed advice; in urgency and gravity Stow far outgoes Holinshed and Daniel. These details make indebtedness to Stow decidedly probable.

5. "*The Famous Victories of Henry the Fifth*" (1594?-1598)

Reading that chaotic anonymous production *The Famous Victories* is like going through the *Henry IV-Henry V* sequence in a bad dream, so close to Shakespeare is it in fragments, so worlds removed in skill. Entered on *SR* by Thomas Creede on 14 May 1594, it is not known in any edition before 1598, when the stimulus of *Henry IV* no doubt led to its publication or republication.

It consists of 1,563 lines, mostly ostensible verse but save for a possible 250 quite unmetrical. Although not printed in two parts it divides into a first half given almost entirely to the pranks of the Prince (called "Henry V" even in his father's lifetime) up to his accession and his comrades' banishment, and a second half corresponding closely to the course of *Henry V* from the Archbishop's recommendation of war to the winning of victory and "Katheren"'s hand. This half contains also, as the French wars are beginning, Henry's praise of the Lord Chief Justice, which Shakespeare more effectively places immediately after the accession. Some low-comedy characters from the first half (though not, curiously, the first half's Oldcastle, Ned, or Tom) provide the comedy of the French campaign.

The text is virtually unplayable, though the second half is less bad than the first. It seems to be a memorially-reconstructed abridgement of a longer *Henry V* play—perhaps two plays—probably done on a provincial tour when plague closed the London theatres in 1592-4. It is not a play of Henry IV's reign save inasmuch as Henry V is shown as the madcap Prince; there is nothing of Henry IV's "unquiet time", of the Percys and Glendower, and Shrewsbury and Hal's heroism. Shakespeare found in it (or its original) an outline of the youthful escapades but nothing on the penalties of usurpation or on education for kingship.

The play's resemblances to *1 Henry IV* are as follows: the Prince has three fellow-madcaps called (though not behaving as) "knights"—a status perhaps reflected in the Q entry-direction for "Sir Iohn Russel" at *2 Henry IV*, II. ii. They are Sir John Oldcastle,

Tom, and Ned, this last apparently the Prince's favourite (as is Ned Pains). They enter having taken £1,000 from the King's receivers (cf. *1H4*, II. iv. 157); Shakespeare's "money of the King's coming down the hill" (II. ii. 52) is nearer to this than to Stow, where the Prince robs "his owne receivers". They employ a "vilaine that was wont to spie out our booties" (cf. *1H4*, II. ii. 49—"our setter"), known variously as "the Theefe", "Cutbert Cutter", and "Gads Hill". He steals "a great rase of Ginger" from "a poore Carrier vpon Gads hill" (cf. *1H4*, II. i—the carriers suspicious of Gadshill, one of whom has "two razes of ginger" to deliver), and is pursued by a "hue and cry" from Deptford (cf. *1H4*, II. iv. 500). The Prince's crew visit "the olde Tauerne in East chepe" (cf. *1H4*, I. ii. 126) where "there is good wine: besides, there is a pretie wench / That can talke well" (cf. *1H4*, I. ii. 40). They expect the King's death as a time for joyful anarchy, and Ned is promised the office of Lord Chief Justice (the change by which the chief reprobate Falstaff, instead of the relatively uncorrupt Pains, is promised the office not of Lord Chief Justice but of hangman suggests Shakespeare's more responsible attitude). The Prince's riots, it is prophesied, imperil his succession (cf. *1H4*, III. ii. 36 ff.). He strikes the Lord Chief Justice and is gaoled (once referred to at *1H4*, III. ii. 32, but thrice in Part 2, at I. ii. 61-3, 221-2, V. ii. 70). There is a burlesque play (cf. *1H4*, II. iv. 371 ff.). The King laments the curse of a son who will destroy him with grief (cf. *1H4*, III. ii. 4-11).

Yet the differences reveal a totally different conception of similar material. Shakespeare's Prince is immeasurably more self-possessed and presentable than the hooligan who gets "belamd about the shoulders" by the receivers (as in Stow), wishes his father dead so that "we would all be kings", gets drunk and flings his drinking-pot against the wall, fights "a bloodie fray" in Eastcheap, is gaoled and escapes more than once, smites the Lord Chief Justice on the ear, promises to institute a reign of misrule, makes for Court at the first news of the King's illness "to clap the Crowne on my head", dresses fantastically, batters at the palace door with "a verie disordered companie", and after approaching the King with a drawn dagger suddenly and fulsomely repents. Oldcastle himself is neither old, thirsty, witty, jovial, untruthful, fat, nor voluble—he speaks in all about 250 words. It is hard to imagine an embryo less likely to grow, even with the fostering of genius, into Falstaff. As for the other rascalions, there is no characterization, nothing of Pains's, Peto's, and Bardolph's admirable gradations of low comedy, nothing but names and knockabout. And the Hostess never appears at all.

Shakespeare's discretion shows high artistic tact. Some discreditable episodes he glances at but either without showing them or without making them more than venial ebullitions. In *Richard II* the Prince is said, but never seen, to beat the watch (*R2*, v. iii; cf. "the hurlyng in Estechepe"), to rob pedestrians, and to frequent the stews. In *1 Henry IV*, though apparently familiar with purse-taking (i. ii. 30 ff.), he bridles when the Gad's Hill affair is mooted, joins it only to jest at Falstaff (this seems entirely Shakespeare's innovation), and repays the money "with advantage" (ii. iv. 540-1). In ii. iv he may be merry with drink but he is not gross, and the place in Council, "rudely lost" through the Lord-Chief-Justice assault, is mentioned only quite obliquely (iii. ii. 32). In material Shakespeare owes his comic original much; in spirit he is nearer the sober Holinshed (cf. Appendix III, pp. 186 ff.). A primary purpose of Hal's much-discussed soliloquy (i. ii. 190 ff.) is to establish clearly that this is not the Prince of any such play as *The Famous Victories*, no reckless ribald but a good king in the making, taking a shrewd course and living by his own discipline.

6. Other Prince Hal Plays?

If the history of *The Famous Victories* could be established, a flood of light might be thrown on Shakespeare's use of this material. To investigate the relationship between the older play and Shakespeare's sequence one is almost bound to assume certain non-extant plays, though Sir Edmund Chambers conjectured that he may have used a vanished 1594 edition of *The Famous Victories* itself. That he used some form of *The Famous Victories* the resemblances show: that it was not the existing patchwork is suggested by, first, *The Famous Victories'* almost imbecile nature (in which not even Shakespeare, surely, could find inspiration), and, second, the fact that Oldcastle must have been more familiar to Elizabethan audiences when Shakespeare took him up than he could possibly be from *The Famous Victories*. Contrary to his general practice with newly-introduced characters, Shakespeare does not divulge Oldcastle-Falstaff's name in i. ii until Poins is broaching the jest to Hal (l. 158, after Falstaff's exit). Earlier he is nicknamed (Monsieur Remorse, Sir John Sack-and-Sugar), and this nick-naming before ever his true name is mentioned is striking. The audience is apparently assumed to recognize him at once as the debauched, sanctimonious misleader of youth. Admittedly Shakespeare does not always name his characters immediately; Richard III, Portia in *The Merchant of Venice*, and Mercutio are examples. Yet Richard makes clear that he is the crookback Yorkist; Portia

has been discussed before her first entry; Mercutio, named only after the Queen Mab speech (*Rom.*, 1. iv. 96), is plainly one of Romeo's friends. The same might be said of Falstaff; his naming may be unnecessary or its omission an accident. Yet surely, as one begins 1 *Henry IV*, 1. ii, one feels that Shakespeare was putting before his audience a reborn but still a familiar "old acquaintance".¹

There were certainly pre-Shakespearean Henry V plays; 1 *Henry VI* is already a sequel to some account of Henry V's victories. *Tarlton's Jests* contains the following passage:

At the [Red] Bull at Bishops-gate, was a play of Henry the fift, where in the judge was to take a box on the eare; and because he was absent that should take the blow, Tarlton himselfe, ever forward to please, tooke upon him to play the same judge, besides his owne part of the clowne.²

If this were the original *Famous Victories* it is not clear how Tarlton could do the clown's part and step into the Lord Chief Justice's also, but Elizabethan clowns, as we know from Hamlet's warning, were capable of anything. Tarlton died in 1588; there was, therefore, apparently a Henry V play before then. Dr Tillyard³ and E. B. Everitt⁴ have suggested that this was a very early Shakespeare play later corrupted into *The Famous Victories*, but this is quite unproved speculation.

A reference in Nashe's *Pierce Penilesse* (1592) calls up a scene like the end of *The Famous Victories* though not identical with it.

What a glorious thing it is to have Henrie the fifth represented on the stage leading the French king prisoner and forcing both him and the Dolphin to swear fealty. (McKerrow, i. 213)

Then, on 14 May 1594, SR enters to Thomas Creede "a booke intituled *The famous victories of Henrye the Ffift*". And finally, *Henslowe's Diary* (ed. W. W. Greg, i. 27) records as "ne[w]" *harey the v*, acted by the Lord Admiral's men at the Rose on 28 November 1595 and twelve times more by 15 July 1596.⁵ If this last were derived from the original *Famous Victories* it must have been so

1. In the pre-Falstaff version, the "old lad of the castle" joke (1. ii. 41) would help to identify him; but even this requires the audience to recognize who he is.

2. *Sh. Jest-Books*, 1864, ed. W. C. Hazlitt, ii. 218.

3. *Sh.'s History Plays*, 1944, 149.

4. *The Young Sh.*, 1954, 171-2.

5. *Henslowe's Diary* (i. 17 ff.) seems to show the Lord Admiral's men at this time as appearing jointly with the Lord Chamberlain's at Newington; but for their separate tenure of the Rose see *ibid.*, ii. 84, and E. K. Chambers, *El. St.*, ii. 141.

far redone as to appear a new play; and whatever its origin, Shakespeare was not likely to have based himself upon it (as has been suggested) since it belonged to a rival company and was still holding the stage as he was beginning on *1 Henry IV*.

The title-page of *The Famous Victories* proclaims that it was "plaide by the Queenes Maiesties Players" (the leading company of the 1580s, though declining in the 1590s). But if it was, there must have been a more coherent original form of it. In this, Oldcastle may have been prominent. If so, why is his part so exiguous in *The Famous Victories*? This is not an area in which one can see clearly at all. But as pure hypothesis one may put forward the following scheme, which owes much to previous scholars: that the original *Famous Victories* was in two parts, boiled down into one for provincial performance by needy players and memorially corrupted in the process; that its first part was a fuller version than survives in *The Famous Victories* of Hal's pranks (referred to in *Tarleton's Jests*), including more on the robbery, and its second part dealt with Henry V's French wars (referred to by Nashe); that the second was perhaps redone as *harey the v* and later drawn upon by Shakespeare (since *The Famous Victories* and *Henry V* are evidently related); and that the first was perhaps redone in a non-extant version which so familiarized the Elizabethan audiences with Oldcastle that Shakespeare took their familiarity for granted. Had the original *Famous Victories* contained an Oldcastle sufficiently prominent to be theatrically popular the extant text, however corrupt, would surely make more of so valuable an asset. So a redone version may have existed which made more of him. Professors Morgan and Dover Wilson have of course suggested that the redoing was by Shakespeare himself, and followed the presumed form of the earlier text by being in verse; but this is unproven and indeed unlikely.

7. "*Woodstock*" or "*1 Richard II*" (c. 1591-4)

The anonymous play *Woodstock* almost certainly influenced *Richard II*,¹ and seems to have affected *1 Henry IV*.² Its villain is "the old turkey-cocke Trissillian" (Mal. Soc. edn, l. 1877), a corrupt law-clerk appointed Lord Chief Justice during Richard II's anarchy, who boasts "me thinkes already / I am sweld more plump, then erst I was" (ibid., ll. 281-2).³ He has a band of pillaging rascals under one Nimble, seeks out prosperous victims who bribe

1. Cf. *Woodstock*, ed. A. P. Rossiter, 1946, 47 ff.

2. Cf. J. J. Elson, 'The non-Shn R2 and Sh.'s 1H4', in *SP*, 32, 1935, 177-88.

3. 'The fall of Robert Tresilian chiefe Iustice of England' was familiar to the Elizabethans as the first story in *A Myrroure for Magistrates*.

him to avert spoliation, ambushes rich men coming from market, is contemptuous to his victims, flinches from danger, and is reputed for adroitness and for his "tricks" (ll. 1265, 1790, 1830; cf. *1H4*, II. iv. 259, 262). There are verbal similarities; as the farmers are fleeced there occur the phrases "ritch chuffes" (l. 1527), "ritch horesones" (l. 1542), "bacon fead pudding eaters" (l. 1615), and "catterpillers" (l. 1637), with "*Jesu* receaue my soule" (l. 1609) and "we can be but undone" (l. 1622) from the victims. The cluster of apparent echoes in *1 Henry IV* (II. ii. 79–85) is striking.¹ Finally, *Woodstock* integrates its Court drama and its mordant low comedy in presenting the tragic pillage of England; as in the *Henry IV*s, the two planes are organically interrelated.

8. "*A Myrroure For Magistrates*" (1559)

The first five stories of this sombre but long-popular collection—those of Tresilian, the Roger Mortimers, Thomas Duke of Gloucester, Lord Mowbray, and Richard the Second—are in the background of *Richard II*: the sixth, by Thomas Phaer, "Howe Owen Glendour seduced by false prophetes tooke vpon him to be prince of Wales", seems to have contributed to *1 Henry IV*. Phaer takes his material from Fabyan and Hall; he makes Owen relate how, "Entiste therto by many of Merlines tales", he aspired to be prince of Wales and how his alliance with Percy and Mortimer grew:

And for to set vs hereon more agog
A prophet came (a vengeance take them all)
Affirming Henry to be Gogmagog
Whom Merlyn doth a Mouldwarp euer call,
Accurst of god, that must be brought in thrall
By a wulf, a Dragon, and a Lyon strong,
Which should deuide his kingdome them among.

This crafty dreamer made vs thre such beastes
To thinke we were these foresayd beastes in deede . . .

In the corresponding passages Hall and Shakespeare both name Merlin (cf. III. i. 144—"the dreamer Merlin") but Holinshed does not, and it has been argued that this shows Shakespeare to be following Hall (Wilson, N.C.S., 160–1). But without opening Hall he could get Merlin from Phaer, and "dreamer" is like Phaer's "crafty dreamer" and Holinshed's "dreames of the Welsh prophetes" but unlike Hall, who does not use the word. Shakespeare differs from the *Myrroure*, however, in a much more sympathetic presentation of Glendower (cf. p. xxvi).

1. Another possible echo in *1H4* is recorded in the note to II. ii. 43–4.

9. *Ballads of Percy and Douglas*

In confessing that "I never heard the olde song of Percy and Douglas that I found not my heart mooved more then with a trumpet" Sir Philip Sidney was surely not speaking for himself alone. The Percy story must have taken on a particular colour for Shakespeare, as for so many others, from the great ballads of Northumbrian battle like *The Hunting of the Cheviot* and *The Battle of Otterburn*. The Douglas-Percy theme of heroic combat, with Hotspur as the English hero, cannot be tied down to any single source, but the spirit of Shakespeare's treatment may owe something to the spirit of the ballads, and possible direct ballad influences may occur in the forms "the Percy" and "the Douglas" (cf. p. 197) and the detail by which Sir Harry Percy's Scottish enemies in *The Battle of Otterburn* number "forty thowsande . . . and fowre" (cf. iv. i. 130, note).

10. "*Soliman and Perseda*" (c. 1592)

E. E. Stoll¹ pointed out that Falstaff's soliloquy on honour (1H4, v. i. 127 ff.) is like Basilisco's after Erastus' murder (*Soliman and Perseda*, v. iii. 63 ff.). Shakespeare had already made fun of Basilisco in *King John*, i. i. 244. The parallel does not amount to an equation between *Soliman's* braggart and Shakespeare's philosopher but it must have provided Elizabethan audiences with an entertaining overtone of the unheroic.

Basilisco: I will ruminate: Death, which the poets
 Faine to be pale and meager,
 Hath depriued *Erastus* trunke from breathing vitalitie,
 A braue Caelere, but my aprooued foeman.
 Let me see: where is that *Alcides*, surnamed *Hercules*,
 The onely Club man of his time? dead.
 Where is the eldest sonne of *Pryam*,
 That abraham-coloured Troian? dead.
 Where is the leader of the Mirmidons,
 That well knit Accill[es]? dead.
 Where is that furious *Ai*ax, the sonne of *Telamon*,
 Or that fraudfull squire of *Ithaca*, iclipt *Vlisses*? dead.
 Where is tipsie *Alexander*, that great cup conquerour,
 Or *Pompey* that braue warriour? dead.
 I am my selfe strong, but I confesse death to be stronger:
 I am valiant, but mortall;
 I am adorned with natures gifts,
 A giddie goddesse that now giueth and anon taketh:
 I am wise, but quiddits will not answer death:
 To conclude in a word: to be captious, vertuous, ingenious,
 Are nothing when it pleaseth death to be enuious.

1. *Shm Studies*, 1927, 459.

11. Other Possible Sources

Hall's *Chronicle*, Holinshed's *Historie of Scotland*, Sir John Hayward's *Life and Raigne of King Henry IV*, and a possible lost Hotspur play have also been proposed as sources. Their claims, which are not here accepted, are considered in Appendix IV.

4. FALSTAFF

Falstaff's transcendent prestige is reflected in a vast literature, and in such abundant reference as to occasion, in the *Shakspeare Allusion-Book* index, the telling entry "For the purpose of this Index Falstaff is treated as a work". This eminence is not predictable from the life-story of his remote original Sir John Oldcastle (c. 1378-1417), High Sheriff of Herefordshire, who became Lord Cobham by marriage in 1409. Sir John steps into Holinshed in a role as remote as can be imagined from the reverend vice and vanity in years; he does not appear, moreover, until after the new-crowned Henry has banished his youthful mates. "A valiant capteine and a hardie gentleman" in the French wars, he has been "highly in the king's favour" (Hol., iii. 62), but is charged with Wycliffite heresy and condemned. Escaping from the Tower he hides in Wales, while his supporters are cruelly suppressed, but eventually he is captured and on Christmas Day 1417 is hanged and burnt.

The valiant Lollard could hardly have expected reincarnation as Oldcastle-Falstaff. Falstaff's Biblical quotations might just possibly reflect such antecedents; moreover, Oldcastle was cast off by the King after early favour (some traditions date the rejection before, some after, the accession); and during his trial he confessed

that in my frayle youthe I offended thee (Lorde) moste greuously, in Pride, Wrathe, and Glottony, in Couetousnes and in Lechery.¹

But the resemblance is not strong. Oldcastle's posthumous story ran in two contrasting channels.² One, hostile to him, is that of anti-Wycliffite orthodoxy, and is found in the poet Hoccleve,³ in popular political verses, and in chroniclers from Walsingham to Polydore Vergil. Fuller, it will be recalled, blamed "the *Papists* railing on him for a *Heretick*" as the fabricators of his disrepute as a

1. John Foxe, *Actes and Monuments*, 1563, 266.

2. Thoroughly plotted by Wilhelm Baeske, *Oldcastle-Falstaff in der engl. Literatur bis zu Sh.*, 1905.

3. Hoccleve, *Works. I. The Minor Poems* (EETS, Extra ser., lxi, 1892, 8-24, 'Address to Sir John Oldcastle').

coward. His flight to Wales and consequent absence from Henry's later wars were misconstrued as pusillanimity; his Lollardism was taken for presumption, blasphemy, and even diabolical instigation; his friendship with the King was restricted to Henry's unregenerate youth; and from his name he was wrongly assumed to be old. The contrasting, favourable, tradition emerged with Tudor Protestantism and is traceable to John Bale's *Brefe Chronycke Concernynge . . . Syr Iohn Oldecastell* (1544). This influenced Hall and was reprinted almost verbatim in Foxe's *Actes and Monuments*, later editions of which contained a long "Defence of the Lord Cobham" and furnished the historical materials for the Munday-Drayton-Wilson-Hathaway play. By this tradition "this most constaunt seruant of the lorde and worthy knight Sir John Oldecastell, the Lorde Cobham",¹ was a Protestant hero and martyr, "a principall fauourer, receiuer, and maintainer of . . . Lollards",² a scholar of philosophy and theology, a popular and virtuous leader, wild when young but a religious convert—"his youth was full of wanton wildness before he knew the scriptures", says Bale—and not rejected by Henry until some time after the coronation. Bale, however, mistakenly endorsed the error about his age. These, then, are the conflicting stories, germs of Oldcastle the vicious reprobate and Oldcastle the virtuous martyr, the former incorporated in *The Famous Victories* and Shakespeare, the latter in *Sir John Oldcastle's* hero—

It is no pamperd glutton we present,
Nor aged Councillor to youthfull sinne,
But one, whose vertue shone aboue the rest,
A valiant Martyr and a vertuous peere.

How Oldcastle came to be involved in stories of youthful riot is a matter of speculation. The syllogism may have been that the companions of the young Henry were scapegraces; that Oldcastle was a companion of the young Henry; and that therefore Oldcastle was a scapegrace. Professor Dover Wilson suggests that his rejection by Henry welded itself in the popular mind with that of the scapegraces, the more readily since according to the hostile tradition both occurred approximately at Henry's accession ("Before the Kings coronacion [Oldcastle] was forsaken of the Kinge," says Tito Livio's translator³) and the "confession" reported by Foxe might be an effective link.

Since the historical Oldcastle was certainly neither old nor un-military and (being a warrior) probably not fat, these attributes of

1. John Foxe, *Actes and Monuments*, 1563, 263.

2. *Ibid.*, 1596 edn, i. 513.

3. Cf. C. L. Kingsford, *The First English Life of Henry V*, 1911, 22.

Falstaff must arise otherwise than from history. In fact, several elements from the hostile tradition coalesced with features of the popular morality Vice. Oldcastle's age (thirty-nine at death) was exaggerated by the interpretation of his name on which Shakespeare puns in the "old lad of the castle"; but the Vice, too, was often the aged counsellor to youthful sin. The shortage of valour is derived from the hostile tradition, but it too was easily corroborated by the pusillanimity of Vices, parasites, and boasters. The "goodly portly" figure is in neither history nor *The Famous Victories*, and attempts have been made to explain it. It may be Shakespeare's dramatic contrast, Dover Wilson suggests, to that of the "starveling" Prince (II. iv. 240), whose lithe agility the chroniclers celebrate. Or something may come from *Woodstock's* plump "old turkey-cocke". But here again the Vice has something to contribute, as will be seen.

Falstaff is indeed a rich amalgam, a world of comic ingredients. Source-seekers have proffered his components in great profusion. Of these the most important is the morality Vice, the ensnarer of youth. Since Quiller-Couch proposed this in *Shakespeare's Workmanship* (1918) the idea has been amply elaborated, and John W. Shirley has excellently explored the relevant characteristics of Gluttony, the Gula of the Seven Deadly Sins and a favourite morality-play tempter.¹ Vices often bragged, like Sensual Appetyte, or Ambidexter in *Cambises* (1569), or Lust, Sturdiness, and Inclination in *The Trial of Treasure*. They might sanctimoniously champion virtue; "Uertue is mocked of euery man", laments Incontinence in *The Longer Thou Livest*. Collectively they share their features with the farce-clowns like Huanebango the braggart of Peele's *Old Wives' Tale*, or the greedy cowardly Dericke of *The Famous Victories*, whom Falstaff copies in making his nose bleed with spear-grass (1H4, II. iv. 305). An Elizabethan audience would

1. 'Fal. an Elizabethan Glutton' (PQ, xvii, 1938). In *The Castell of Perseverance* (c. 1425), the World, Devil, and Flesh lead Mankind "with synnys al a-bowt"; Flesh is corpulent and accompanied by Gluttony, Lechery, and Sloth. In Medwall's *Nature* (c. 1486), aged Sensuality has Gluttony as an accomplice. In *The Nature of the Foure Elements* (1519), Sensual Appetyte under the guise of Friendship tempts Humanyte to the tavern, and in *Lusty Juuentus* (c. 1540) the age-old Hypocrisy incites Juuentus to lechery and self-indulgence. In William Wager's *The Longer Thou Livest the More Fool Thou Art* (c. 1586), Incontinence is as old as Idleness, "parent of all vice", and tempts Man with food, wine, and girls: in Lupton's *All for Money* (1578), Pleasure is glutton and lecher, and Gluttony prompts to "fine fare and gluttonie". Ryot, in *Youth* (c. 1550), is thief and tempter to wine and women; *The Trial of Treasure* (1567) has one Gredy-Gutte—"the cowe-bellied knaue", "the great-bellied loute". In *The Faerie Queene* (I. iv. 21-3) Spenser's Gluttony is, like Falstaff, "Not meet to be of counsell to a king", "Full of diseases", his belly "up-blowne with luxury".

recognize in Falstaff the familiar Vice-qualities of gluttony, idleness, and lechery, and in Hal the youth in danger. Throughout Falstaff is referred to in morality-idiom—iniquity, ruffian, vanity in years, beating Hal out of his kingdom with a dagger of lath, the abominable misleader of youth, the old white-bearded Satan; and in Part 2 he is rejected finally (as prospectively in Part 1, by Hal's soliloquy and many a hint) as the tutor and feeder of Hal's "riots" (a recognized morality-term), the old profane surfeit-swelled gormandizer. Hal's soliloquy (*1H4*, 1. ii. 190 ff.) tells the audience both that Hal is not the hooligan of *The Famous Victories* (which, incidentally, is not at all morality-influenced) and that he participates undeceived in the unyoked humours of idleness.

"Morality tradition" is a broad category. The various kinds of Vice-face, with such conceits as clownage keeps in pay, furnish a wide panorama of aged, obese, gluttonous, wenching braggarts, comically outrageous in huffing, puffing, lying, thieving, and gormandizing. Somewhere in the picture are the *miles gloriosus*, with his bogus valour, and the witty parasite (both frequent in Plautine comedy), the fool, and the Elizabethan army officer often castigated for recruiting and other swindles. Enthusiasts have even sought Falstaff in historical persons—Tarlton the clown, Chettle the dramatist, and Captain Nicholas Dawtrey. Neglecting these agreeable whimsies we may admit something, though with reserve, in the other identifications. The *miles gloriosus* boasted of courage but avoided combat, like Bobadill in *Every Man in his Humour* or Parolles in *All's Well*, and scholars have worked out his contribution to Falstaff. Yet since he was fatuous, humourless, and finally unmasked to derision we may agree with Maurice Morgann that elements of the *miles gloriosus* in Falstaff are so modified by wit and self-possession as to become something different, a mere trace of flavour in a succulent gallimaufry, like the *soupeçon* of Basilisco in the soliloquy on honour (cf. p. xxxviii).

As for the parasite tradition, this contributed something; Iago has been called the culmination of the fatal parasite, Falstaff of the comic.¹ Butt, wit, sponger, trickster, and mocker, this classical type was familiar to the Elizabethan stage in such figures as Mathew Merygreke in *Ralph Roister Doister* or Cariosophus in *Damon and Pithias*. But again the relationship to Falstaff is only tangential; Falstaff is a parasite but a benefactor too, and much else besides.

His quality as Fool, however, is more noteworthy, for he shares not only some of the Fool's superficial features—comic braggadocio, inventiveness of idea, dexterity with words, mock moraliz-

1. E. P. Vandiver, 'The Elizabethan Dramatic Parasite', *SP*, 1935, xxxii. 411.

ing, deliberate mistakings, absurd actions—but also the Fool's deeper significance, as liberator from convention. In Miss Enid Welsford's words:

under the dissolvent influence of [the Fool's] personality the iron network of physical, social, and moral law, which enmeshes us from the cradle to the grave, seems—for the moment—negligible as a web of gossamer. The Fool does not lead a revolt against the law; he lures us into a region of the spirit where, as Lamb would put it, the writ does not run. (*The Fool*, 1935, 317)

We cannot always live in that region, as the play makes clear, nor is its freedom, as some Falstaff sentimentalists suggest, more precious than the network of law. But Miss Welsford does in fact admirably describe the effect Falstaff has upon our spirits.¹

Falstaff as a whole is far greater than the sum of his parts; this Vice-Parasite-Fool-*Miles-Gloriosus*-Corrupt-Soldier is inspired by such humorous virtuosity as immeasurably to transcend such components. His whole nature is unified of paradoxical opposites, so that a man no more knows where to have him than he himself knew where to have the Hostess (III. iii. 126-7). Parasitical, he yet gives to life as much as he takes, and indeed provides amidst all his vices a vast salutary criticism of the world of war and policy. He is vicious, yet his vices are a tonic for human nature; he exploits his dependants, yet they remain indissolubly attached to him; he lies, yet would be dismayed if his lies were to be believed. He laments his age, corpulence, and lost agility, yet he behaves with the gaiety of youth, has intellectual legerity to offset his bulk, and is agile whenever it suits him. A reprobate, he yet quotes scripture for his purpose. Finally, is he or is he not a coward? No, say Morgann and Bradley: he is sought for in war, leads his men into danger, and philosophizes coolly on the battlefield. Yes, say Stoll and others: as Poins foretells, he runs at Gad's Hill and boasts afterwards; he hacks his sword, slubbers his garments, and is touchy when taunted; his Shrewsbury nonchalance is clown-foolery only; his ignominious stabbing of Hotspur is "one of the accepted *lazzi* of the coward on the stage"; and his capture of Coleville in Part 2 is buffoonery, like Pistol's of Monsieur le Fer in *Henry V*.

This tiresome question need not have arisen had not Morgann rightly desired to vindicate Falstaff from the ignominious clowning he received on the eighteenth-century stage. It would have been

1. Cf. C. L. Barber, 'From Ritual to Comedy', 24, in *English Stage Comedy*, ed. W. K. Wimsatt, 1955: "In the theatrical institution of clowning, the clown or vice, when Shakespeare started to write, was a recognized anarchist who made aberration obvious by carrying release to absurd extremes".

complex, and organized from a wonderful interrelationship of material, so that one agrees with Elizabeth Montagu—"I cannot help thinking that there is more of contrivance and care in the execution of this play than in almost any he has written" (*Essay on the Writings and Genius of Shakespear*, 1769, 100). The co-existence of comic and serious plots is not confined to their efficient alternation, though their alternations are superbly efficient. The more they are scrutinized, the more connected they appear, the connection being sometimes of parallelism and reinforcement, sometimes of antithesis and contrast, sometimes a reversal by which serious or comic is judged by the other's values. There are, too, stylistic relationships by which, for instance, major types of imagery are common to both parts, or by which the texture and pace of prose scenes offset those of verse.

At first sight, one takes the two plots to be antithetical—court against tavern, nobility against commonalty, energy against sloth, time-saving against time-wasting, gravity against wit, verse against prose, and so on. To a hasty view the play seems to split into separate strata. These two different kinds of thing do indeed furnish different parts of the mind, stretch it, and make it feel extended over a wide dichotomy. Yet closer study shows a different state of things—branches belonging to a single trunk. The first speech expresses a hope for national unity; this hope is equally denied by both plots, by the Percys' rising and Hal's insubordination. Both these troubles reflect on Henry's own conduct—they have a causal, not casual, link with it, for the Percys, instruments of his usurpation, turn against him the very pretexts of national welfare on which his rise was based, and his own exclusion of the rightful heir (Mortimer) threatens to be repaid by a failure of the succession in Hal. Hal seems to Henry a replica of Richard II, for each man mingles his royalty with capering fools and enfeoffs himself to popularity, and the benefits Richard flung recklessly upon Henry, Hal is recklessly flinging away again. Both serious and comic plots show the usurping Henry dogged by retribution: over both plots hangs the hand of constituted authority—defeat and death for rebels, the gallows or banishment for wastrels. Both plots sound the theme of ambition and rapacity—Hotspur will "cavil on the ninth part of a hair" and is as eager to monopolize honour as Falstaff to discard it. There is as little principle among barons as among thieves; Hotspur can no more depend on his fellow-conspirators, from the "lack-brain" (II. iii. 16) to Northumberland and Glendower, than Falstaff on Hal and Poins or they on him. There are all sorts of ways in which the two plots operate similarly; as the rebels'

self-seeking is masked by Hotspur's rhapsodies about honour, so the rascals' exploits are romanticized (in their own eyes) by reference to a world of legend, literature, and heroic service; Falstaff idealizes highwaymen as vividly as sherris-sack—they are Diana's foresters, minions of the moon, governed like the sea by celestial power (I. ii). When Hotspur rants about the Mortimer–Glendower fight (I. iii), and Falstaff about the buckram men (II. iv), we think the former heroic and the latter outrageous, yet to fail to see a relationship is to miss part of the fabric of linkage. Another parody-relationship is that between the Falstaff–Hal burlesque (II. iv) and the King's genuine reproof (III. ii). Similar motifs appear seriously and comically; the Gad's Hill bustle is the comic counterpart of Hotspur's insurrection; Falstaff's sanctimoniousness has its serious echo in Henry's yearnings for a Crusade; the predatory campaigning is both heroic and preposterous at once; and motifs of bodily states and actions, and particularly of disease, run thematically through both plots.

The interrelationships form an intricate web among the main characters. The connections between King, Prince, Hotspur, and Falstaff compel us to assess them this way and that, from which arises the play's moral value. The King and Hotspur, for instance, are similar (rivals in the same game), but also antithetical (authority versus rebellion): the King and Falstaff, again, are alike (fellows in subversion: elderly examples for Hal), but also opposite (rule against misrule). Hotspur and Falstaff are both examples for Hal of rebellious anarchy, contrasting however by their differing codes of conduct and honour. Falstaff and Hal are simultaneously allies (boon companions, fellow-scoffers), and opponents (Vicious Age, Virtuous Youth). Hotspur and Hal, apparently at opposite extremes of promise, meet on the ground of youth and valour. Finally, the King and Hal, apparently opposed, are of the same family, and have in common their "policy". As Professor Empson has said, much of the play's value lies in this dramatic "ambiguity" which leaves one deliberating this way and that, for and against all the main characters.¹

The moral structure of the play is, as Quiller-Couch affirmed, a morality-structure, the "Contention Between Vice and Virtue for the Soul of a Prince", though it is much more also. It is worth noting how the possibilities are organized around Hal. In a simple sense, Hotspur and Falstaff represent virtue and vice—the former the hero, blunt, honest, too active to be sensual, enchanted by honour; the latter his diametrical opposite. Yet merely opposite

1. 'Fal. and Mr Dover Wilson', *Kenyon Review*, 1953, xv. 221.

quickly settled had not Falstaff's vitality confused critics as to the difference between dramatic and real persons. This multifarious material is not to be reduced to a single realistic formula. That Falstaff's panic at Gad's Hill is not put on there is no doubt. It is a foretold outcome of the trick played on him; the point of "By the Lord, I knew ye as well as he that made ye" (II. iv. 263) is to show his resourcefulness in improbable excuse; and the surprised relief in "But by the Lord, lads, I am glad you have the money" (II. iv. 271-2) is proof that he had thought the booty to be lost. The multiplication of buckram men does not mean either on the one hand that he expects to be believed or on the other that he has recognized his assailants and is pulling their legs: he is putting on the expected enjoyable show. And who, in fact, is "he"? "He", really, is the comic personality given a chance by the dramatist to revel in a comic role. The exaggerations are not to be explained realistically by the argument that so acute a wit cannot expect so absurd a yarn to be believed and is merely countermining the Prince and Poins for the trick he has detected: he has not detected it, but, like the brilliant stage-comic he is, he has an invention full of nimble and delectable shapes which he exercises on all possible occasions with the effect (eagerly expected by Prince, Poins, and audience alike) of landing himself in foreseeable quandaries and then unforeseeably extricating himself from them.¹ To schematize Falstaff's shotsilk variety into stable colour is absurd: his dramatic sphere of popular comedy allows a rapid shifting of attitudes. A real man who ran at Gad's Hill would not receive a charge of foot from his stamper, nor would a dozen captains seek him out, nor even with Hal's connivance would anyone believe he had killed Hotspur. But the stage comic frees us from the restricting congruities of real life. Professor Empson has put it (it is Dover Wilson's plea too) that "the whole of the great joke is that you *can't* see through him, any more than the Prince could"—"the dramatic effect simply *is* the doubt, and very satisfying too".² Is Falstaff then inconsistent? Yes, if judged realistically. No, when taken, rightly, for what Empson calls his "Dramatic Ambiguity", for the figure of dramatic comedy that he is, butt and wit together, equally amusing by his elephantine panic, exuberant fabrications, and comic aplomb in the midst of war. His philosophy of courage is, no doubt, to show as much or as little of it as circumstances require; he might observe, like the practical but not cowardly Bluntschli in Shaw's *Arms and the Man*, "It is our duty to live as long as we can", and like Bluntschli he keeps in his holster

1. A. J. A. Waldock comments well to this effect in 'The Men in Buckram'; *RES*, 1947, xxiii. 16-23.

2. W. Empson, 'Fal. and Mr Dover Wilson', *Kenyon Review*, 1953, xv. 223.

something better than pistols. Yet Bluntschli would hardly "roar" in flight, as Falstaff does (ii. ii. 106), and the attempt to fit Falstaff into a formula of psychological realism must finally fail. Brilliant at timely evasions, he escapes this straitjacket as he escapes any other.

In other words, Falstaff, though immensely "living", is not like any single real man. But he is symbolically like life itself; the large comedy of humanity is embodied in him. He expresses the indispensable spirit of fun. When he runs away, the fun is at him; when he does not run away, the fun is through him. The consistency lies not in the congruence of one action with another, but in the whole function of providing mirth and a liberating irreverence. Falstaff differs in amplitude but not in kind from the stage funny man who, without incongruity, is both knocked about and knocker-about. In the words Whitman wrote on himself, he is large, he contains multitudes.

5. THE UNITY OF THE PLAY

Since Sir Edmund Chambers published *Shakespeare, A Survey* (1925), several critics have taken issue with his treatment of the *Henry IV*s. To query this treatment once again is not to undervalue his immense contribution to Shakespeare scholarship but it is to try to set in the right light plays on which a good many readers (fewer playgoers, perhaps, probably share Sir Edmund's views, expounded thus:

In *Henry IV*, chronicle-history becomes little more than a tapestried hanging, dimly wrought with horsemen and footmen, in their alarms and excursions, which serves as a background to groups of living personages conceived in quite another spirit and belonging to a very different order of reality. . . All this . . . becomes the setting of a single great comic figure, and thereby the plays attain the unity which their intermediate position in the cycle . . . makes it difficult for them to accomplish in any other way. Instead of the dynamic unity of an emotional issue set and resolved in the course of the action, they have the static unity of a pervading humorous personality.

This, however, is precisely the opposite of what one should say. Far from the history's being merely a "dimly wrought" background to "groups of living personages" of superior reality, the historical themes are urged upon us with Shakespeare's utmost vigour. As Hazlitt observed, "the heroic and serious part of these two plays . . . is not inferior to the comic and farcical". And far from the unity's being "static", confined to the dominance of Falstaff, it is dynamic,

they are not; Hal cannot rule well by rejecting one model and following the other. Most importantly, he must inhabit the real world while they both live their fantasies. Both men are dangerously attractive, and their value to Hal is in showing what to seek (Hotspur's valour, Falstaff's ripeness), but equally what to avoid (Hotspur's recklessness, Falstaff's indulgence). Both subvert the decent conventions—Falstaff has no aim other than sensuality, Hotspur none other than battle. Both, Brooks and Heilman put it in *Understanding Drama*, "are *below* the serious concerns that fill the play"—they "do not stand quite on the level of the adult world where there are jobs to be done". To say that neither is serious enough sounds pedantic: who wants a serious Hotspur, a serious Falstaff? Why not love their brilliant displays of life? Yet it is fundamental in both men that neither can see things in proportion: Hotspur's imagination starts away from good judgement as fast as Falstaff's. His greed for honour is for monopoly; he aims only at war; he is as much a liability as an asset to his allies.¹

As for Hal, mid-point between, he reflects on these plots and codes of life. Non-committally poised, he provokes the maximum dramatic expectation. It is to protract this expectation that though the King and he are reconciled in Part 1 the process has to be repeated in Part 2 as though Part 1 had not occurred—the Prince still a companion to the common streets, the King mindless of his virtues. Part 2 provides the matching half of a diptych, Hal's committal to gravity (the Lord Chief Justice) after frivolity. His prior "loose behaviour" is a nodus of both serious and comic plots; Hotspur and the King, on their level, and Falstaff, on his, are all punished for misreading him.

As Hotspur and Falstaff stand opposed to Hal as excess and defect of Honour, so the King and Falstaff stand as opposed versions of Age and Authority, responsible and irresponsible, but both blemished by Anarchy. Brooks and Heilman observe that in taking the King off in the tavern play Falstaff parodies not only Euphuism but "the kind of seriousness with which authority has to express, and take, itself; the carefully balanced antitheses, the allusions to natural history, the appeal to learned authorities, the laboured truism"; and it is this mocked authority which Hal (his father's representative as well as his mocker) ominously retorts upon Falstaff.

Yet these versions of authority, however opposed, are not simple antitheses. Hal reaches kingly success by combining and transcending them. To his father's masterfulness he adds Falstaff's broad humanity, so that when king he commands not only "culled

1. See v. iv. 119, note, for a comment on rash valour.

and choice-drawn cavaliers" but "all the good lads in Eastcheap". The King and Falstaff are complementary.

Moreover, both have a double function for Hal. On the face of it, the King stands for rule, Falstaff for misrule, and Falstaff, like the rebel lords, is to be suppressed. Yet Henry stands for rule only because he has himself rebelled—the laws of England have been at his command as Falstaff expects them to be at his, and woe to the due succession. So Hal sees in Henry both regal firmness and regal weariness: kingship is a glory but a burden.

Falstaff's function is more subtly dual. Anarchic though he is, he gives Hal much of value, not only negatively (showing how not to act) but positively. Professor Empson has made this point well:

The idea is not simply that Falstaff is debauched and tricky, though that in itself made him give Hal experience . . . but that he had the breadth of mind and social understanding which the Magnanimous Man needed to acquire. . . Indeed, if you compare Hal to his brother and father, whom the plays describe so unflinchingly, it is surely obvious that to love Falstaff was a liberal education.¹

Falstaff indeed makes the point himself in relating how "excellent endeavour of drinking good and good store of fertile sherris" has in Hal warmed the cold Bolingbrokian blood. However much Falstaff owes to the morality Vice, his function in respect of kingship is much more than that of mere tempter.

Serious and comic themes are entwined by many other echoes and links. They unite in a vision of national life both broad and deep, and are expressed in a style of extraordinary energy, whether in serious verse or comic prose. This vision of national life has its comprehensive geographical range and its long perspectives of time; it looks into the future and it reaches into the past, for retrospection is as integral to reminiscences of a comic past² as to those of tragic history. The great idea of England is woven from all these themes.

The structural coherence is equally organic. The Qq's lack of scene-division makes evident the play's perpetual counterpointing. There are such interactions as that between what are now I. i and I. ii: the former, in pressing strenuous verse, treats of mental and bodily strain, the country's dangers, the swift succession of military events; its emotions are grave, troubled, angry, its pace increasingly swift. I. ii in lavish comic prose is the entire antithesis; time, speed, and the making of appointments are rejected for time-

1. 'Fal. and Mr Dover Wilson', *Kenyon Review*, 1953, xv. 246-56.

2. Cf. *1H4*, II. iv. 310-12, 325-8; *2H4*, III. ii, *passim*.

less leisure; strung nerves give place to unbuttoned slumber; combat and worry yield to capons and wenches. Yet both express disorder and a prince's misconduct; in both a campaign is prepared—defiance to the Percys, robbery at Gad's Hill; and Hal's soliloquy at the end of i. ii knots both together. ii. ii and ii. iii are also related: the comic violence of Gad's Hill leads on to Hotspur's military exuberance—indeed, each scene sets forth its hero soliloquizing in exasperation at perfidious associates. In iv. i and iv. ii, we first have Vernon's great speech about the Prince's panoply and then meet Falstaff equally bound for war but scandalously cynical about his tattered men. The counterpointing is obvious, and rich; it would not need mentioning were the unity of the play more generally recognized. And finally, in this structural aspect, one notices that serious and comic plots, at first in quite different spheres, are progressively brought together. As the rebellion moves to its climax, Hal emerges from comic folly into serious leadership, and the comic scenes show every cognizance of the serious. Both are borne along on the tide running to Shrewsbury, and on the battlefield both attitudes to life are put to the test. The battle, however awkward on the stage, is the thematic resolution: Hal dispels the fears about him, Hotspur is proved to have been overweening, kingship is confirmed, and Falstaff is suddenly shown in a shocking light as he stabs the dead Hotspur. Shrewsbury is the touchstone which tries men and causes by Part 1's criterion of prowess.

6. THE HISTORICAL OUTLOOK

In a discussion of Shakespeare's increasingly secular historical outlook, by which the "absolute moral values" of the *Henry VI–Richard III* series change into the Erastian criteria of *Henry IV–Henry V*, Professor John Danby offers a brilliant interpretation of the *Henry IV*s.¹ Instead of a kingdom, however evil, under God—which he takes to be the "vision" of the earlier sequence—he finds here one governed by purely secular motives of expediency and "Commodity", a morally sordid state however vigorous its physical life. Earlier, the issues had been "Is the King right or wrong? Is the state just or unjust?" Now, he avers, "the questions are reduced and vulgarized: Is the King strong or weak? Is the state secure or insecure?"

The difference between the sequences can easily be exaggerated; nevertheless it exists. Shakespeare's political instincts seem to have swung like a pendulum. In the first sequence, however selfish

1. *Sh.'s Doctrine of Nature*, 1949, pp. 81–101.

the actions of most of the characters (and supremely of Richard III), the presiding assumption is of divine superintendence, punishing sin. In the second, though this assumption is conventionally recognized, and Henry V puts himself religiously in the right, it lacks force. In *Macbeth* and *King Lear*, however, it more than regains its strength; both plays are myths expressing the religious conflict of moral law and moral anarchy.

The *Henry IV*s inhabit the Tudor Erastian world. Religious references are mostly perfunctory. Henry's wish for a crusade, true though it seems in Part 1, appears questionable in Part 2 (2*H*4, iv. v. 208-11). The rebels make much of Bolingbroke's gospel-sworn and broken oath, yet they themselves are parties to the guilt. In Part 2 Westmoreland urges the traditional sanctities against the Archbishop's rising (2*H*4, iv. i), but is answered with political necessity. Prince John's "God, and not we, hath safely fought to-day" (2*H*4, iv. ii. 122) frankly assimilates God to the wiles of state. The most striking sign of secularism is the King's rebound from remorseful reminiscence—for which one expects a moralizing conclusion—to a purely practical resolution (2*H*4, iii. i. 92-3):

Are these things then necessities?
Then let us meet them like necessities.

Despite themes of sin and expiation the plays develop in terms not of a supernatural metaphysic of history but of the practical ends of worldly action; they reflect a necessitarian view of political action, a sense of compelling reality. Some qualifications, admittedly, should be made to this. Religious sanctions are not entirely superseded; Carlisle's prophesied disasters come to pass (*R*2, iv. i. 114 ff.); Henry IV suffers remorse; Henry V makes expiation (*H*5, iv. i. 312-25). But the effect is casual, and Dover Wilson rightly warns us not to overlay the *Richard II-Henry V* sequence with too much moralizing.¹ In this respect the chronicles point the way; they mostly perform a straddle by which they show Richard II as a bad king though they also lament his misfortunes and downfall, so that they condemn his follies yet extract emotion from his sufferings.² Shakespeare follows Holinshed who, while moralizing on sin and remorse (e.g. "A guiltie conscience in extremitie of sicknesse pincheth sore"), commits himself no more to Richard II than to Henry and, whatever emotion he derives from Henry's unquiet time, keeps the story secular. Henry's conscience troubles him, but

1. *Sh.'s Histories at Stratford*, 1951, 18-19.

2. The fifth story in *A Myrroure for Magistrates* is headed 'Howe kyng Richarde the seconde was for his euyl gouernaunce deposed from his seat, and miserably mured in prison'.

mainly with a worried sense that his course was inevitable ("That I and greatness were compell'd to kiss": *2H4*, III. i. 74). To the question of *why* Henry's was an unquiet time the answer is that his abettors were unruly rather than that God was outraged; and to the question *why* they were unruly the answer is that they were ambitious rather than that the moral order was flouted (though flouted it certainly was).

Dr Irving Ribner has questioned whether Shakespeare deeply meant to show divine punishment for Richard's deposition.¹ If such punishment were the lesson of *Richard II*, why did Essex's followers launch their rebellion by having the play performed? Why publicize sacrilege? It is true that in the long run, interpreted by the "Tudor myth", Bolingbroke's crime resulted in divinely-prompted wars until exorcised in the blessed union of Lancastrian Henry VII and his Yorkist queen. But the second tetralogy looks less towards the remote *terminus ad quem* of the Tudor accession, however sanctified, than to the climax of Henry V's victories, and though *Henry V* is not without religious feeling that feeling is hardly distinguished from patriotic rant. Even in the *Henry IV*s the shadow of retribution does not prevent Henry's being the centre of authority and the rightful suppressor of rebellion.

Henry IV's career, then, proclaims less that God punishes deposition than that the king must rule. This was a sixteenth-century theme. Much as the Elizabethans execrated Machiavelli, he fascinated them by his cool recommendations of "policy". But even without Machiavelli the importance of rule was evident in the collapse of feudalism. Ribner quotes Tyndale's *Obedience of a Christian Man* (1528; ed. Locett, 1885, 93-4):

Yea, and it is better to have a tyrant unto thy king than a shadow: a passive king that doth nought himself but suffreth other to do with him what they will and to lead him whither they list. For a tyrant, though he do wrong unto the good, yet he punisheth the evil, and maketh all men obey, neither suffreth any man to poll but himself only. A king that is soft as silk and effeminate, that is to say turned unto the nature of a woman—what with his own lusts, which are the longing of a woman with child, so that he cannot resist them, and what with the wily tyranny of them that ever rule him—shall be much more grievous unto the realm than a right tyrant. Read the chronicles and thou shalt find it ever so.

That describes the difference between Richard II and Henry IV, and Shakespeare shows Henry's efficiency. In the Bagot-Aumerle

1. 'The Political Problem in Sh.'s Lancastrian Tetralogy', *SP*, 1952, 171-84.

quarrel (*R2*, iv. i. 1-106) Henry dominates a situation such as Richard had bungled with Mowbray and Bolingbroke; over Aumerle and his conspiracy (which, be it noted, favours the "legitimate" king; *R2*, v. ii-iii) he combines strength and mercy. In *2 Henry IV* the rebels fail even though led by an Archbishop who displays "the blood / Of fair King Richard, scrap'd from Pomfret stones" (*2H4*, I. i. 204-5). Richard falls through his own folly and injustice, climaxed in the murder of the patriotic Gloucester (cf. *R2*, I. ii. 1-3), which is the subject of the *Myrroure for Magistrates'* third story¹ and the crux of *Woodstock*. Bolingbroke rises rather on the Wheel of Fortune than by wicked purpose. In *Richard II* the "formal and ceremonial" quality of which Dr Tillyard writes,² the ritualistic character which Pater distinguishes,³ mask the secular situation behind poetry and symbolism; but peeping from behind the ritual and ceremony there is, even here, the problem of efficient rule. And in the *Henry IVs* this secular interest reduces the religious sentiment to subordination, just as it heightens the realistic interest of lifelike men competing in the world of action.

7. THE SPIRIT OF THE PLAY

Professor Danby's analysis, however, goes beyond a mere assertion of secularism to a striking characterization of the *Henry IVs* which holds that they present a nation "disintegrated into mutually exclusive spheres"—Court, tavern, dissidents, country fusspots—motivated by "frigid opportunism, riotous irresponsibility, fatuous inconsequence, quarrelsome 'honour'—with no common term except the disease of each". "'England'," the argument continues,

is sometimes said to be the heroic composite thing that is portrayed. If this is so, it is an England seen in her most unflattering aspects—an England pervaded throughout court, tavern, and country retreat by pitiless fraud.

Falstaff's unscrupulousness is the code by which all live—"if anything unifies this congeries of monads it is 'Commodity' ". "Order" represents not Right, not God's Will, but effective Power: "Disorder" is not Unrighteousness, but secular Greed. So, Professor Danby concludes,

Analysis leaves us, then, with symbols of Power and Appetite as the keys to the play's meaning: Power and Appetite the two

1. 'Howe syr Thomas Duke of Wudstocke Duke of Glocester, vnkle to king Richarde the seconde, was vnlawfully muredred.'

2. E. M. W. Tillyard, *Sh.'s History Plays*, 1944, 245.

3. 'Sh.'s English Kings', in *Appreciations*.

sides of Commodity. . . The England depicted in *Henry IV* . . . is neither ideally ordered nor happy. It is an England, on the one side, of bawdy house and thieves' kitchen, of waylaid merchants, badgered and bewildered Justices, and a peasantry wretched, betrayed, and recruited for the wars: an England, on the other side, of the chivalrous wolf-pack . . . and of state-sponsored treachery, in the person of Prince John—the whole presided over by a sick King, hag-ridden by conscience, dreaming of a Crusade to the Holy Land as Monsieur Remorse thinks of slimming and repentance. Those who see the world of *Henry IV* as some vital, joyous, Renaissance England must go behind the facts that Shakespeare presents. It is a world where to be normal is to be anti-social, and to be social is to be anti-human. Humanity is split in two. One half is banished to an underworld where dignity and decency must inevitably submerge in brutality and riot. The other half is restricted to an over-world where the same dignity and decency succumb to heartlessness and frigidity.

If this were so, the play's unity would be a unity of moral chaos, an Elizabethan *Waste Land*. Professor Danby offers this not as a total view of the play, whose inventive vitality he fully admits, but merely of its themes, and even then only insofar as they reflect Shakespeare's increasing secularism. Yet, if this is offered as the play's tenor, even with these qualifications, one must reply that Shakespeare was not Ben Jonson, that the *Henry IV*s (particularly Part 1) are not *Volpone*, and that, related to the moralities though they are, this is not their true theme. Interpretations of this kind, it has been observed, "make a shambles of the heroic moments in the play, make them impossible to act".¹ Secular and realistic the plays have been admitted to be, and most of the characters are self-seeking, but their whole tenor forbids any summing-up in terms of mere greed. In a *Scrutiny* essay in 1934 Professor L. C. Knights (preceded by Ulrici in 1839, and followed by Professor Kenneth Muir in 1951) observed that in 1 *Henry IV* "the Falstaff attitude is in solution, as it were, throughout the play", but pointed out also that "a set of complementary impulses is also brought into play". In other words, though Falstaff is, to quote Professor Muir, "a living criticism of the world of 'policy'", satirizing the gulf between precept and practice in the world of rank, he has anything but the last word on the values of life.

But how does this happen? Surely not, as it were, antiseptically, by our being so faced with the spectacle of corruption that our codes of virtue are reinforced. Falstaff may be what Ulrici called

1. C. L. Barber, 'From Ritual to Comedy', 30 (in *English Stage Comedy*, ed. W. K. Wimsatt, 1955).

him, "the personified parody on the corrupt state of the chivalry and vassalry of the day", just as the chivalry's and vassalry's self-seeking throws into relief his hedonism. But should we feel the plays in this puritan-critical way? Surely not. Serious and comic do not reduce each other to shams; serious history enlarges itself to compass broad comedy, and comedy contributes more than mockery to our sense of history. "The heroic drama", Mr Mark Van Doren has said of these plays,

is modified by gigantic mockery, by the roared voice of truth; but the result is more rather than less reality, just as a cathedral, instead of being demolished by merriment among its aisles, stands more august.
(*Shakespeare*, 1939, 116)

The greatness of the *Henry IVs* lies in their not taking a disapproving view. To quote Mr C. L. Barber again, "the dynamic relation of comedy and serious action is saturnalian rather than satiric". By the complex of cross-relationships that link together (as well as set off) the worlds of comedy and history one is left fully aware of human failings and yet impressed with great positives. The responsibilities of kingship, the honour of courage, the validity of justice, the energies of life, the zest of wit—these the plays fully assert, even though Henry is a usurper, Hotspur a firebrand, Hal a calculator, Falstaff a rogue. Fallible the persons may be, but their weaknesses are not what Shakespeare leaves uppermost in our minds. The Eastcheap comedy cannot be written down as "bawdy-house and thieves' kitchen", that of Gad's Hill as "waylaid merchants", that of Gloucestershire as "badgered and bewildered Justices", even that of Falstaff's recruitment as "a peasantry wretched, betrayed, and recruited for the wars". Nor can the history be only the sum of chivalrous wolf-pack, state-sponsored treachery, and hag-ridden King, though it includes those elements. Shakespeare, one feels sure, would have been startled at the idea. Usurper, yes; but Henry is an effective King. Firebrand, yes; but Hotspur is a true hero. Hal calculates, but becomes a good King; Falstaff is a rogue, yet he warms the heart. The fundamental Shakespearean fact is that at Eastcheap there is communal happiness as well as trickery; at Gad's Hill, mirth as well as robbery (and is anyone a ha'p'orth the worse?); in Gloucestershire, rustic comedy as well as bewilderment; in the recruitment, Feeble's courage as well as Falstaff's corruption. Hotspur deserves the great tribute his wife pays (2*H4*, II. iii. 18 ff.): state policy saves the nation: the King exerts a proper authority. The old view which sliced the play into independent alternating spectacles of politics and comedy was too casual, but the later one which interprets it through "the most

serious ethical scrutiny" is too narrow. The play stands ethical scrutiny—that is its moral greatness—but it promotes a response of which moral sums are only a small part and moral didacticism abstracted from the rich dramatic context no part at all.¹ Shakespeare is not Jonson: cakes and ale exist alongside virtue. Instead of a morally-corrective partial vision there is a wise inclusive vision, derived from a true understanding of what men are like; in this, a judgement of what they should be like takes only a secondary place. "*Henry IV* is Shakespeare's vision of the 'happy breed of men' that was his England." Dover Wilson's view, expressed thus in his edition of *1 Henry IV*, is too roseate (it is, however, adjusted in *The Fortunes of Falstaff*), but it shows a proper sympathy with what is going on. Shakespeare loves his creatures (most of them, anyway) before he judges them; his story demands rebels and buffoons, but he thinks only on men.

The best analysis of this unified vision—the vision of many, various, interrelated modes and codes of life—is Cleanth Brooks's and Robert B. Heilman's.

For the reader for whom the play does achieve a significant unity it may well seem that here Shakespeare has given us one of the wisest and fullest commentaries on human action possible to the comic mode—a view which scants nothing, which covers up nothing, and which takes into account in making its affirmations the most searching criticism of that which is affirmed. For such a reader, Shakespeare has no easy moral to draw, no simple generalization to make. . . The world which Shakespeare portrays here is a world of contradictions—of mixtures of good and evil. His vision of that world is ultimately a comic vision. . . For the comic writer does not attempt to transcend the world of compromises, even though the more thoughtful writers of comedy, as here, may be fully aware of the seriousness of the issues. Comedy, after all, does not treat the lives of saints or heroes: it does not attempt to portray the absolute commitment to ultimate issues—the total commitment which transcends, tragically and heroically, the everyday world that we know. Shakespeare does not represent Prince Hal (as he might conceivably do in a tragic treatment) as a callous man, the scion of the "vile politician Bolingbroke". Hal will make a good ruler, and Falstaff would undoubtedly make a very bad ruler. Nor, on the other hand, is Falstaff portrayed as a villain: Falstaff too has his case. Falstaff's wit—most of it at least—is not merely amusing trifling. It constitutes a criticism of the world of serious affairs, a criticism

1. This is not meant to imply for a moment that Professor Danby would, if giving a full critical account, wish to abstract "moral didacticism" from the "rich dramatic context".

which, on certain levels, is thoroughly valid. The rulers of the world had better not leave it totally out of account.¹

Shakespeare has it both ways, all ways—for and against Henry, Hal, Hotspur, Falstaff, court-life, tavern-life, the thirst for battle, the thirst for sack. So does life.

Yet this needs some qualification. Shakespeare is not here writing a problem play, leaving it doubtful which modes of action are to be preferred. Were it otherwise, the argument that the *Henry IVs* are related to the morality tradition would fall to the ground. There is history here, as well as comedy—history which requires responsible action. There are heroes here too, not superhuman heroes but men who, having chosen their courses, must stand boldly by them. Nature can be amoral. Comedy can, if it wishes, be infinitely tolerant. But Shakespeare here is neither, wide though his humanity shows itself. By understanding all points of view he enables choices to be made in the light of full knowledge. He sets virtues and vices in valid relationship; “the web of our life is of a mingled yarn, good and ill together”, *All’s Well* was to proclaim. The maturity of choice comes not from seeing life in black and white but from knowing its manifold shades and then choosing well. Shakespeare, undoctinaire though he may be, is not Laodicean; he upholds good government, in the macrocosm of the state, and the microcosm of man. His vision is of men living, however conflictingly, in a nation, a political-moral family, in a world of moral choices (a testing-ground of conduct), in mutual relationships which make their existence interesting and valuable. Life moves by mixed impulses but not, on the whole, corrupt ones; it animates, it challenges spirit and body to activity. To Chaucer, even the Pardoner’s rascality was delightful in its wholeheartedness; to Keats, even a street-quarrel was beautiful, such energy did it release. To Shakespeare, the usurper, the rebel, the intriguer, the credulous wizard, the toper, and the rest are not parts of a disintegrated vulpine world. They combine in a totality which affirms the worth, the wealth, of living.

8. THE IMAGINATIVE IMPACT

The play is about adventure—the adventure of conflict, the adventure of Bohemianism. It is consequently also about danger—the danger of defeat, the danger of retribution. And it is consequently also about courage—the courage of self-assertion, the courage of disreputability (Falstaff may be a physical coward but

1. *Understanding Drama*, 1946, 386–7.

he is not a moral one, else he could not swim so buoyantly in his chosen element). It is therefore a very active play, and its style conveys its activity.

When Bernard Shaw observes that it shows "neither subtlety nor (for Shakespeare) much poetry in the presentation of the characters"¹ one must ask what he thinks poetry is. There is admittedly little of the lyrical-romantic (though cf. III. i. 194-220), or of the tragic-profound (though cf. V. iv. 76-82); nor does the action stop for set-pieces.² But almost every line works freshly and vivaciously in a spirited idiom which, like Hotspur's resolution,

lends a lustre and more great opinion,
A larger dare to our great enterprise.

And this is its poetry, the poetry of men in action.

The play insists on physical expressions and actions as these reflect emotions and tempers. From the outset the serious scenes sound a running theme of physical stress and strenuousness; the King and nation are shaken and wan with care, and frightened peace pants out short-winded accents of new broils. Foes confront each other with hostile paces and opposed eyes, with danger and disobedience showing in the moody frontiers of their brows. The defiance between Henry and the Percys, particularly Hotspur's speech on the popinjay lord, is packed with these physical portrayals (I. iii); so is Henry's comparison of Richard and himself (III. ii). As for the comic scenes, it is almost sufficient to remark that the centre of them is Falstaff; no dramatic figure makes more of physical bulk, condition, and behaviour, as these express the nature of the man, eating, drinking, sleeping, reporting the "wards, blows, extremities" of mock-heroism, flattering himself on "a cheerful look, a pleasing eye, and a most noble carriage".

The point needs no labouring; the play abundantly annotates emotions and behaviour as expressed physically. As is habitual with Shakespeare, states of mind are presented concretely; peace is frightened and pants, the edge of war cuts his master, haste is hot in question, news is uneven or smooth, riot and dishonour stain the brow, the humour of idleness is unyoked, reformation glitters o'er a fault, and so on. Again as is habitual with Shakespeare, animal imagery gives an active and vivid precision; Hotspur prunes himself, bristles up the crest of youth, is wasp-stung, stung with pismires, more splenetic than a weasel; the lord is a popinjay, Henry

1. *Dramatic Opinions*, 1906, 426.

2. Such "pieces" as the "popinjay" speech (I. iii) or Henry's retrospect (III. ii) are off-stage portions of the action; and Hotspur's passage on Honour is a recognized extravagance, in character.

a fawning greyhound; Falstaff's recruits fear gunshot worse than a struck fowl or a hurt wild-duck. And, supremely, Hal and his fellow-knights are plumed like estridges, bate like newly-bathed eagles, are wanton as youthful goats and wild as young bulls. This is the normal Shakespearean vitality, but never does it more vividly create a real, physical, life.

This reality is enriched by a wealth of off-stage incident, and of imaginatively-evoked social detail. Images of daily life abound; the inn-yard is full of them (II. i); so are the tavern-scenes with their banter and "unsavoury similes"; Hotspur uses them to scoff at Glendower's poetry (III. i. 122-58) or to chaff Lady Percy (III. i. 241-54). Falstaff indeed is presented in a context of meat and drink; he is chops, fat-kidneyed, brawn, ribs, tallow, sweet beef, fat as butter, a roasted Manningtree ox with a pudding in his belly, and he lards the lean earth. The comic scenes have an ample off-stage context, of habitual hedonism in the company of under-skinkers, drawers, and all the good lads in Eastcheap, subject to the reproof of the virtuous. We never in Part I see Falstaff's recruited ragamuffins, discarded unjust servingmen and the like, but they are as vivid to our minds as if they trooped before us. We glimpse the comic past, too—the two-and-thirty years Falstaff has maintained Bardolph's nose, the eighteen years' history of Bardolph's blushing, the time when, at Hal's age, Falstaff could have crept into any alderman's thumb-ring, the time when he had not forgotten what the inside of a church looked like. This rich embedding in social life is helped by the abundance of current and proverbial tags (cf. the notes, *passim*), of traditional similes and ejaculations—fragments of highwaymen's shouts, of ballads, of popular mythology, of romance-reading, of morality plays and religious devotion. The serious action, too, is compassed about with a great cloud of witnesses and of supporting actions; there are military disasters and successes reported from Wales and Scotland, Hotspur's popinjay-lord quarrel, and his restless sleep as Lady Percy describes it, long and repeated historical retrospects (III. ii; IV. iii; V. i), and the setting of a seething nation (I. i; I. iii; II. iii; II. iv. 329-67; III. ii; IV. ii; V. i). Armies clash, or march united; messengers arrive and depart. The impression of public importance is overwhelming; after all, the main serious concerns are the fate of kingdoms and the quest for honour (the latter here equated with public admiration). Personal actions encounter public comment; Richard's deponents "a world of curses undergo" and they must return "Into the good thoughts of the world again". They themselves remind Henry of the whole history of his exile; he retorts that by complaints "Pro-

claim'd at market crosses, read in churches" they have aroused the "fickle changelings and poor discontents" of the whole land.

This swarming social and national life is set in place and time. Pilgrims going to Canterbury, traders riding to London, men of Herefordshire fighting in Wales, the Scots discomfited at Holmedon, combattants by sandy-bottomed and sedgy-banked Severn, armies converging on Shrewsbury from the North or through Gloucestershire and the Midlands—all these insist on topographical reality. Indeed, the central scene on the rebels' side, that which most reveals them, is the Bangor meeting, with the map for the tripartite division and the quarrel over the "monstrous cantle" and the course of the Trent. Time presses as hard as does place on the attention; history-plays, after all, much more than comedies or tragedies fix the mind on the sequence of past, present, and future, and on the hour which strikes for action. The time here is sometimes the past, of Henry's accession and reign, sometimes the future, of expected misrule, sometimes the present, of planned council-meetings or purse-takings or campaign-details. But it always keeps us in the world of urgent events.

All this is history coming to life. Part of it is the theme of horsemanship, so incident to rapid messages and highway robbery and war and chivalry. Messengers "come with speed", "Stain'd with the variation of each soil", spurring "with winged haste". Blunt enters "newlighted" from his mission; Falstaff calls for his horse at Gad's Hill as Hotspur for his at Warkworth; Hal and Peto, with thirty miles to ride ere dinner-time, take "To horse, to horse". This equestrian vitality culminates, like the animal imagery, in the "fiery Pegasus" lines (iv. i. 109-10), and Hotspur's reply (iv. i. 119-23). Horsemanship is a symbol of chivalric prowess, which is a main subject of the play. When Hal appears most splendid he is vaulting on his horse; it is "hot horse to horse" that Hotspur yearns to encounter him. Falstaff's "charge of foot" marks his significantly unchivalric status, as well as being Hal's joke at his expense.

The style, not yet as profound as it was to become in the tragedies, has yet a full, active charge of meaning. It is vigorous and flexible in syntax, and given to rapid evolution of metaphor. It is mimetic—it expresses and enacts its meanings; it is powerful and resonant in sound. These points need discussion.

The charge of meaning is evident in the many quibbles which juggle consciously with semantic ambiguities, but it is present too where the ambiguities are subconscious. In these cases, instead of the meanings making fun of each other (which is the point of the

conscious quibble) they combine in a solid body of significance. "Trenching" (I. i. 7) is an instance; it means "cutting deep and wide"¹ but also "encroaching, invading".² "Current" (I. iii. 67) means "running in, intruding" but also "valid, accepted as authentic". "To fill the mouth of deep defiance up" (III. ii. 116) means "To swell defiance's voice" but also, presumably, "To feast in defiant alliance". "A wild trick of his ancestors" (V. ii. 11) combines the senses of "trait" and "trickiness". "Make a head / To push against a kingdom" (IV. i. 80-1) means "raise a force" and "make a hostile advance", but also any related ideas of raising heads undaunted, and of pushing with head and shoulders against an obstacle.³

A greater complexity of sense arises in:

The very *bottom* and the *soul* of hope,
The very *list*, the very utmost *bound*
Of all our fortunes. (IV. i. 50-2)

The words italicized may be interpreted in two series, one meaning "farthest reach" and the other "restricting limitation", as follows: (i) last resource—irreducible essence—final account—ultimate reach; (ii) dregs—lowest footing (the "soul/sole" quibble?)—outside edge (IV. i. 51, note)—restricting border. The two series do not fight with each other; they "march all one way" to express "our utmost resources". One hardly distinguishes them, indeed, so thoroughly do they interact. Then there are cases like the following:

To set the exact wealth of all our states
All at one cast; to set so rich a main
On the nice hazard of one doubtful hour. (IV. i. 46-8)

If one misses the metaphor (as modern readers may well do) this means "To risk all the military resources our possessions afford at one attempt, to venture so precious an army on the even chances of an unpredictable encounter". If one perceives the metaphor it means "To wager all our riches on a throw of the dice, to lay so high

1. Cf. *Ven.* 1052—"The wide wound, that the boare had trencht / In his soft flanke".

2. Cf. *OED*, "Trench. v. 7d." and Jonson, *Staple of News*, v. vi. 46-7 (H. & S., vi. 381)—"Who did? I? / I trench the liberty of the subject?"

3. In 'Imagery in R_2 and in H_4 ' (*MLR*, xxxvii, 1942, 113) Miss Madeleine Doran discusses some words in $1H_4$ which "together with a figurative retain their literal meaning, and greatly enrich the context by this ambiguity": cf. notes on "balk'd" (I. i. 69), "malevolent" (I. i. 96), "countenance" (I. ii. 29), "frontier" (I. iii. 18), "nettled" (I. iii. 237), "bombast" (II. iv. 323), "common-hackney'd" (III. ii. 40), and "stain'd" (V. iv. 12).

a stake on the chancy outcome of a gamble". This, of course, is not an "ambiguity"; it is a normally-operating metaphor. The point is that to anyone not recognizing the metaphor the meaning is quite adequate, while to anyone recognizing it the literal and figurative meanings combine to make a broad front, a strong impact of well-controlled significance.

It is a style which, like a river, bears along a whole volume of effect. Hotspur's popinjay-lord speech conveys his own impatience, the lord's folly (the latter's idiom parodied within the idiom of the former), the attitudes of both men to war and to each other, and Hotspur's ambivalent attitude to the King—self-excusing, but with a dauntless autonomy. There are, moreover, swirling currents of metaphorical evolution. Sir Ifor Evans has noted in the play's first speech "a mounting and complicated imagery, where one notion is abandoned before it is fully developed as another comes crowding into the poet's mind".¹ The progression of effect in this speech may be traced thus:

weariness ("shaken", "wan")—*gasping* ("pant", "breathe")—*thirst* ("thirsty")—*liquid* ("daub", "lips")—*blood-staining* ("daub", "blood")—*wounding* ("trenching", "channel")—*blows* ("bruise")—*trampling* ("armed hoofs")—*conflict* ("hostile paces")—*glinting hostility* ("opposed eyes")—*fiery celestial disorder* ("meteors", "troubled heaven")—*earthly disorder* ("intestine shock", "civil butchery")—*restored order* ("mutual . . . ranks")—*refreshed energy* ("march all one way").

An equal evolutionary inventiveness is evident in I. iii. 162–7:

subjection ("you a world of curses undergo")—*subordinate instruments* ("agents", "base second means")—*methods of ascent* ("cords"², "ladder")—*brutal executioner of elevated victims* ("hangman"³)—*degraded status* ("descend so low")—*sphere of life* ("line"⁴)—*category* ("predicament" in the sense of "rank, station" [OED])—*danger* ("predicament" in the sense of "hazardous situation")—*roam in dangerous subjection* ("range", in the double sense of "move about" and "be ranked").

A chain of association unites these agile shifts of idea, each stage drawing some potency from the way it springs from its precursor and contributing some vitality to its successor, and the whole sug-

1. B. I. Evans, *The Language of Sh.'s Plays*, 1952, 62.

2. Perhaps a subconscious connection of "base-second-means-cord," as being all musical terms.

3. "Cords-ladder-hangman" form an obvious sequence.

4. "Line" may be prompted by "cords": its sense of "sphere of life" is illustrated at III. ii. 85.

gesting a spontaneously active imagination which does not excogitate a set-piece as it had done, for instance, in Richard II's studied conceits (*R2*, v. v. 1-60). Shakespeare's command of metaphor is now such that he need not stop to elicit its relevance, or use it as applied decoration; the style is vitally metaphorical and carries its sense not by explicit analogies but by half-conscious suggestion.

The words suggest physical activity. "Uneven" news comes "all athwart"; prisoners are "surpris'd"; Hotspur will "prune himself and bristle up / The crest of youth"; rebels "tread upon" Henry's patience; a quarrel is the striking-up of heat; honour is to be leapt for, dived for, plucked from the moon; danger, sent from east to west, and honour crossing it from north to south, are to "grapple"; Hotspur in anger is "whipp'd and scourg'd with rods", and his blood "stirs / To rouse a lion"; Henry, when ousting Richard, "stole" courtesy from heaven and "dress'd" himself in humility (as Hal will "throw off" loose behaviour), "to pluck allegiance from men's hearts". This activity animates the whole play; of this, too, as of other qualities Vernon's eulogy (*iv. i. 97-110*) is the crowning example.

It is a style intensely dramatic. On a simple level this is evident in the functional differentiation of verse and prose, each medium suiting its own dramatic purposes. As expression for speech it is unsurpassable; the words both in prose and verse all but sound themselves aloud. From Lyly, either directly or as part of a prevailing fashion, Shakespeare derived a prose of wit and rhetorical point,¹ but Lyly never rivalled him in using the wit and point to express vital dramatic ideas. Even the briefest glance at the prose of, for instance, *i. ii* will reveal how fine and lively, even how elegant, a pattern it has for speaking. Characters as subordinate as Gadshill and the chamberlain speak wittily (*ii. i. 52-93*), and every stress is audibly expressive. As for Falstaff, could anyone ever go wrong over the tone, manner, phrasing, and pointing of his speeches? The Hostess is no whit behind him in this; her words render her voice infallibly. Everywhere the cueing is excellent; each phrase prompts the next, yet without giving it away in advance.²

The serious scenes have an equal sense of the living voice. The expressive impact of "To ransom home revolted Mortimer", or "To be so pester'd with a popinjay", or "To shed my dear blood drop by drop in the dust", or "Nettled, and stung with pismires", could not be bettered, but this power is not confined to single lines.

1. Cf. Lyly, *Works*, ed. R. W. Bond, 1902, i. 150-4.

2. This may be amply studied in the buckram-men episode (*ii. iv. 111-279*) or the succeeding comedy (*ii. iv. 322-475*).

The whole of I. iii is an object-lesson: its rendering of speech-stress gives it a hallucinatory air of reality as speech by speech it grows in defiance.¹ Poetry was never more mimetic, more evidently what (in another connection) an American critic calls "a verbal sign which somehow shares the properties of, or resembles, the objects which it denotes".²

It is an effective expository style, detailing facts and commands, with an onward pressure of rhythm. But even in such passages the lines gain their spirit not from the facts but from what the speaker feels about the facts: they are exposition, but dramatic exposition.³ *A fortiori*, speeches specifically expressing feelings are livelier still, charged with attitudes arising from the whole context of the speaker's nature, purpose, situation, and estimate of his hearers. Hal's soliloquy (I. ii. 190-212) is relatively tame because relatively poor in such attitudes⁴; indeed, throughout there is less to Hal, despite the importance of his moral evolution, than there is to Henry, Hotspur, or Falstaff because there is less temperament expressed through the pressure of style. His speeches are lively enough in comedy, where they need not proceed from any weight of personality; in the serious scenes he is after all the observer, the learner still finding his way.

The last point of style relates to its richness as well as its vitality. The language of men is here not prosaically but imaginatively put down, and the Shakespearean imagination achieves—to use Keats's phrase—an "intensity, capable of making all disagreeables evaporate, from their being in close relationship with Beauty and Truth".⁵ One's judgement that the play is not satirical or denigratory (cf. pp. liii-lvii) is encouraged by its eloquence, its grandiloquence. That Shakespeare knows the snares of grandiloquence is evident when Falstaff parodies Euphuism (II. iv. 393-426) or provides his comment on Honour to contrast with Hotspur's (though this does not mean that he is simply right and Hotspur simply wrong). But there is also a valid grandiloquence which asserts the positive values of the life it expresses. The serious scenes are en-

1. Consider Henry's anger in I. iii. 76-91, 112-22 (e.g. "Why, yet he doth deny his prisoners", "Thou dost belie him, Percy, thou dost belie him", and "Art thou not asham'd? But sirrah, henceforth . . ."), and every word of Hotspur's in the same scene (the popinjay speech, the exhortation [156-84], and the outbursts in 192-252).

2. W. K. Wimsatt, *The Verbal Icon*, 1954, x.

3. Contrast them with, e.g., the Salic-law harangue in *H5*, I. ii. 33-114.

4. Contrast, e.g., Hotspur's vigour in expressing himself about Glendower, III. i. 142-58.

5. Letter to George and Thomas Keats, [21 Dec. 1817].

riched by a language of vivid distinction. Glendower may be the credulous romancer who exasperates Hotspur; or he may be the bounteous and scholarly gentleman Mortimer describes. But whichever interpretation is being offered presents him richly and, as it were, appreciatively; even Hotspur's account of his tediousness is delightful. Hal may dismay his father but his failings are lamented with a poetic passion—he is “almost an alien to the hearts / Of all the court” and “the soul of every man / Prophetically do forethink thy fall”. Henry, when still Bolingbroke, was rare like a comet, kept himself like a “robe pontifical”, like a feast valued for unusualness. Richard on the contrary skipped, ambled, and so mingled his royalty with capering fools, with gibing boys and beardless vain comparatives, that his subjects, surfeited as if with honey or with the cuckoo in June, were glutted, gorged, and full. The two portraits are in the highest degree graphic, animated, vivid. So too with the qualities of war. It is horrible, blood daubing earth's mouth, the beastly shameless transformation of disfigurement, stained nobility lying trodden on: but it is also glorious—armies clash “in the very heat / And pride” of contention, warriors are “the theme of honour's tongue”, “gallant”, “ever-valiant and approved”. They mount on horseback, plumed; gallantly armed, Hal drops into the saddle like an angel from the sky. With equal vividness they march as the tattered straggling rabble Falstaff describes. In each case the style is validly hyperbolic, committed to as spirited a meaning as possible. Its appreciative quality is as evident on the comic side as on the serious—and this again helps to avert too Puritanical a view of Eastcheap. After all, that Falstaff should mock authority in a parody of Euphuism, that in quizzing honour he should do so in the witty form of a catechism—this is part of the truth about him, that he is at home in a world of wit and style. His Biblical unction is part of the same truth, that he looks on fine phrases as a lover. Even the obloquy of which he is the appreciative victim (II. iv. 441–53) is grandiloquent, as fully flavoured as a nut or an apple. Our whole introduction to him (I. ii. 1–155) is in terms of spirited patterns of speech, with elegant alliterations, lofty comic periphrases, celestial invocations, literary and classical allusions, multiple mock-heroic similes, and Biblical idioms. The characteristic qualities of his own utterance have been excellently defined as follows:

Falstaff has a trick of voice that recalls the great prose writers of the seventeenth century, the doctors and divines. He shows the same curious combination of abandon and economy, the fine frenzy blended with and wrought into an inevitable rhythmic

movement, that is so characteristic of their work. His words have the air of being spoken extempore, and yet being under the strictest control.¹

This style, it may be objected, is a brilliant rhetorical gloss on a sordid reality, and Falstaff knows it to be so. But until late in *2 Henry IV* this moralistic view hardly presses itself; what takes the attention is the utter enjoyment of life he so racily expresses. Unlike Bobadill he is, until the end of Part 2, master of his vision, as well as creator of it. This is what his style conveys. And a similar brilliance of life is what the style as a whole conveys.

9. ESTABLISHMENT OF THE COPY-TEXT

Two Qq of 1598 provide the earliest and, as will be argued later, the only authoritative texts. Of the earlier, Qo, only four leaves survive²; on 25 May 1867 Halliwell recorded that they were "found some years ago" in the binding of a copy of Thomas's *Rules of the Italian Grammar* (1567); they must be of 1598, since that is the year of the SR entry. A complete text is provided by Q1: it was set up from Qo (cf. Hemingway, New Var., 344-5) and in the same printing-house, Peter Short's. Each later Q was set up from the one before—Q2 (1599), Q3 (1604), Q4 (1608), Q5 (1613); the Folio (1623) was set up throughout from Q5. Subsequent Qq (1622, 1632, 1639) and Ff (1632, 1664, 1685) have no authority; neither, indeed, have Qq2-5,F, but since some editors have thought otherwise the transmission needs examining all the way from the MS to the Folio.

Shakespeare would hand the players his MS of the Oldcastle version. This would be his "foul papers". From these, or possibly from a transcript, the prompt-book would be prepared. The play would be acted, the Oldcastle fuss provoked, and the play withdrawn. The revisions of the offending names could be made either in the prompt-copy and transferred to any MS (foul papers or transcript) going to the printer, or vice versa.

But what copy went to the printer? Foul papers? A fair copy? Prompt-book (or a transcript of it)? Prompt-book can be ruled out; the stage-directions show no prompt-book features; exits and entrances are defective,³ and there is at times an indeterminacy

1. R. W. David, *The Janus of Poets*, 1935, 40.

2. C1-C4, from i. iii. 199 to ii. ii. 106.

3. No entries for Blunt (i. i), Bardolph (ii. ii), Servant (ii. iii. 66; no exit, either, at l. 73), Gadshill, Bardolph, Peto, and Francis (ii. iv. 109), Vernon (v. i. 8), Douglas (v. iv. 23). No exits for Fal. (i. ii. 155), Francis and Vintner (ii. iv. 79, 83), Bardolph and the Hostess before they re-enter (ii. iv. 475), Hal's

which a prompt-book would settle.¹ Such defects suggest foul papers, and most bibliographical opinion holds that foul papers were Qo's "copy". Yet Q₉₀,₁ (Q₁ deriving closely from Qo) show some signs of a fair copy rather than foul papers, or at least of a MS somewhat spruced up. Speech-prefixes are fairly uniform, and follow the forms in the stage-directions; some colloquialisms have been thought to have undergone refinement. In addition, Wilson (N.C.S.) points out that the spelling is "far more normal than that for example of *Hamlet* Q₂ or *Love's Labour's Lost* Q₁", though he attributes the normality to the printers rather than a copyist. Each of these plays, incidentally, was printed at a different house.

Compared with a text unmistakably derived from foul papers, like the Q of 2 *Henry IV*, 1 *Henry IV* is strikingly uniform in speech-prefixes.² It has one important variant (iv. i reads *Per.* ten times for *Hot.*), but other variants are trifles of spelling or abbreviation, like *Wor.* / *Worst.*, *Hot.* / *Hots.*, *Falst.* / *Fal.* / *Fa.*, and *Poin.* / *Poi.* / *Poy.* / *Poynes* / *Po.* Part 2 is more irregular, too, in relating speech-prefixes to stage-directions.³ These and other loosenesses in it indicate foul papers; and Part 1, though its directions need amendment, is much freer from them. Its "copy", therefore, has been thought to be a transcript of foul papers rather than foul papers themselves.

There is, however, another possibility. In accounting for its speech-prefix uniformity it must be remembered that the original Oldcastle, Harvey, and Russell had to be changed. This could be done, with the minimum of trouble, on any existing copy without

companions (ii. iv. 497), Hal (v. i. 126), Prince John and Westmoreland (v. iv. 15), Worcester and Vernon (v. v. 15). No directions at all between iii. iii and iv. i. Westmoreland enters with the King's company (v. i) though he is "engag'd" in the rebel camp.

1. *Enter Prince, Poincs, and Peto, &c.* (ii. ii) leaves Bardolph's entry uncertain; ii. i. 32 is prefixed *Car.* (not 1 or 2 *Car.*); ii. ii prefixes *Trauel.* and *Tra.* without distinction of persons.

2. In 2*H4*, i. ii, *Fal.*'s prefixes are *Iohn*, *sir Iohn*, *Falst.*, and even (once) *Old.*, and the Lord Chief Justice's are *Iustice*, *Iust.*, *Lord*, and *Lo.*; in ii. i Gower is *Gower* and *Mess.*[*enger*]; in iv. iv Thomas Duke of Clarence is *Clar.* (or *Cl.*) and *Tho.*, while Humphrey Duke of Gloucester is *Glo.* and *Hum.*; in v. v, after the rejection, *Fal.* changes from *Falst.* to *Iohn*, though *Iohn* is used immediately after for Prince John. Most notably, in ii. iv Mistress Quickly and Doll Tearsheet are *Quickly*, *Qui.*, *host.*, and *Ho.*, and *Tere.*, *Doll*, *Dorothy*, *Dol.*, *Teresh.*, and *Doro.*

3. In 2*H4*, i. ii, Q's agreeable *Enter sir Iohn alone, with his page* results in the varied prefixes in note 2 above, as well as *Page* and *Boy*; in ii. i, *an Officer* or *two* is followed by prefixes *Phang*, *Snare*, and *Offic.*; in ii. ii, *sir Iohn Russel* (surviving from the original names?) enters in what is clearly a private Prince-Poins scene, and receives no speeches; in ii. iii *the wife to Harry Percie* of the entry-direction speaks as *Kate*; iii. i directs *Enter the King in his night-gowne alone*—but he addresses someone and calls for Surrey and Warwick, who enter accompanied by a speechless *sir Iohn Blunt*.

the need of a transcript. Anyone changing the names would stick to fairly uniform substitutions. The serious scenes, with their historical names, might be fairly uniform from the start—though there is the *Per.* variant in iv. i. Or if they were not, anyone revising the comic names might carry on regularizing throughout, in a copy going to press; he might, too, ensure reasonable, though incomplete, correspondence between entry-directions and speech-prefixes. In other words, the text of the play has undergone unusual treatment (the name-revision), and this treatment will necessarily produce features that look like a transcript. Since the transcript theory has its own difficulties¹ and is not in fact necessary to account for these features, it seems that the most likely “copy” for Q_o was revised foul papers. That foul papers were often the printer’s copy is evident from the testimony in F of Heminge and Condell (“To the great Variety of Readers”), that “His mind and hand went together: And what he thought, he vttered with that easinesse, that wee haue scarce receiued from him a blot in his papers”. The strongest fact weighing against the transcript theory is that the text is, in minute details, better than one would expect a transcript to be. The punctuation has dramatic points that look like Shakespeare’s own (cf. ‘Editorial Methods’, para. viii) and would, in a transcript, be evidence of remarkable accuracy. The treatment of past verb-forms points in the same direction. Hereward T. Price has shown² that Shakespeare, for metrical reasons, was careful about eliding weak verb past forms. 1 *Henry IV* strikingly conforms to this care: of past forms in the verse portions (the only ones to which the test applies) Q_o, 1 rightly elide 168 and rightly leave unelided

1. It is a little difficult to see why a transcript should be made. If the idea of extensive revision be rejected (cf. Intro., pp. xviii ff.), revision merely of the names would not appreciably mess up the MS or make it unusable. If a clean version were needed for the censor, it is odd that the risky “old lad of the castle” jibe at i. ii. 41 should survive, and “Haruey” and “Rossill” at i. ii. 158. If a transcript were made by Shakespeare, one would expect him to remove these relics (and the *Ross.* prefixes at ii. iv. 172 ff.), insert stage-directions between iii. iii and iv. i, change *Per.* to *Hot.* in iv. i, align the metrical prose as verse in such passages as ii. iii. 71–3, 78–89, and, not least, alter the “most sweet wench / As the hony of *Hibla*” sketch of the Hostess (i. ii. 40–1) to accord with the totally different portrait he had worked out as the play proceeded. If a transcript were made by someone else, one would expect him to remove the relics (knowing them to be part of the trouble), and perhaps to rectify the lack of break between iii. iii and iv. i, and the sudden *Per.* prefixes of iv. i. These blemishes would be more easily overlooked by someone glancing through a MS to amend it than by a transcriber going through in detail. It must be admitted, however, that any revision, by anyone, may leave a trail of inconsistencies.

2. In ‘The First Quarto of Titus Andronicus’, *English Institute Essays* 1947, 1948.

33; they wrongly elide 1 (at III. ii. 115, corrected in Q2), and wrongly leave unelided 10 (16 other apparent examples are of verb-stems ending in -w, -y, or a vowel, which tend to be exceptions anyway). Such counts, tedious both to make and to read about, remind one of Johnson's remark, "These are very slender disquisitions, but such is the task of the commentator". But they suggest a fidelity to the author's script closer than one would expect if a transcriber as well as a compositor had been at work.

Somewhere between Shakespeare's MS and the print, however, some colloquial details may have been lost. Qqo,1 have several lines which later editions have been tempted to make more metrical by introducing colloquial elisions:¹

- (a) Send vs your prisoners, or you wil [F you'l] heare of it.
(I. iii. 122)
- (b) And shed my deere bloud, drop by drop in the [Q5 i'th] dust. (I. iii. 132)
- (c) Before the game is [Q5 game's] afoote thou still letst slip.
(I. iii. 272)
- (d) And tis no maruaile he is [Capell, he's] so humorous,
Birlady he is [F hee's] a good musition. (III. i. 225-6)
- (e) Come brother let vs [Q4 let's] to the highest of the field,
(v. iv. 159)

The unelided forms are, it has been argued,² signs of a pedantic compositor committing "sedate expansions" (Dr Alice Walker attributes them to a transcriber³) in the desire to refine the text. It is indeed possible that the compositors erred in using such forms; they doubtless did so in many other lines where elision would help the metre and which eighteenth-century editors liked to amend (e.g. v. i. 15—"What say you to it [Pope, to't]? will you againe vnknit"). But the argument for compositorial pedantry is not strong; if some elisions seem "expanded", scores of others were accepted (as with "letst" and "tis" in (c) and (d) above). If, at these points, Qqo,1 depart from what Shakespeare wrote (and it is not certain that they do), the explanation is probably inadvertence. Later Qq and F may restore an original colloquialism (and it is again not certain that they do), but they operate by guess-work and have no authority in doing so. The present text retains the readings of Qqo,1 in most instances.

The case is the same with similar occurrences in the prose. There are several instances like the following:

1. Cf. also, e.g., collation notes for I. iii. 134, II. ii. 100, III. i. 66, 150, 153, 155, 188, III. ii. 123, IV. iii. 104, v. ii. 2, 70. Many other lines could also be regularized.

2. Wilson (N.C.S.), 104.

3. *Textual Problems of the First Folio*, 1953, 111.

- (a) An it [F an't] be not foure by the day (II. i. 1)
 (b) thou knowest [Q₄ knowst] hee is [F hee's] no starueling
 (II. i. 67-8)
 (c) a plague vpon it [F vpon't] (II. ii. 27)
 (d) a cup of sacke with lime in it [F in't (uncorrected copies,
 omitting 'lime'; cf. collation)] (II. iv. 123)
 (e) All is [Q₃ All's] one for that (II. iv. 153)
 (f) Wel, breath a while, and then to it [F to't] againe
 (II. iv. 245)
 (g) Why then, it is [Q₃ tis] like if there come a hote Iune
 (II. iv. 357)
 (h) I haue led my rag of Muffins [Rowe, Rag-o-Muffians;
 Capell, ragamuffins] where they are pepperd (v. iii. 36)

This last example is presumably the compositor's slip over Shakespeare's o' or a' (a like expansion occurs in "two of clocke" [III. iii. 199]—surely not pedantry but carelessness). The others may be "expansions", or they may be what Shakespeare wrote, knowing that his whole text was a script for speaking and that the actors would make the appropriate contractions. The elisions introduced later than Q_{90,1} are doubtless what the actors should (and will) say, but there is no authority in the texts which introduce them (cf. pp. lxxi-lxxv) and there is no need to adopt them (they could be numerous) into the text. Indeed, in F it is significant that they occur almost entirely in the portions¹ which Dr Walker has shown to be set up by Compositor B, the much less conservative of the two who set 1 *Henry IV*. B has sixteen of them while his careful team-mate A has hardly any. They do not, therefore, though Dover Wilson argues the contrary, indicate that F has any authority behind it; they merely show that B could sometimes guess plausibly, as often he guesses most implausibly. This must also be the conclusion about his most agreeable guesses, viz:

- (a) In Richards time, what do you [F de'ye] call the place?
 A plague vpon it [F vpon't], it is in Glocestershire;
 (I. iii. 239-40)
 (b) The Archbishop.
 Of Yorke, is it [F is't] not? (I. iii. 264)
 (c) lend me thy lanterne (quoth he) [F (quoth-a)] (II. i. 38-9)

These have an authentic ring, and would doubtless be so spoken on the stage; but again one queries B's freehandedness—in the last example he may indeed have spoilt a mimicry the Carrier may have been intended to make of Gadshill's (slightly) superior status, a status reflected in the "Sirrah carrier" address in the next line.

Have any later editions any authority? Q₂'s title-page calls it

1. I. i. 1-II. iv. 147; III. iii. 110-IV. i. 19; IV. iv. 27—the end.

"Newly corrected by *W. Shake-speare*", which would be less misleading if "corrected" were followed by a full stop. Q₂'s changes are mostly printing-house variations—several decidedly for the worse, like "waspe-tongue" instead of "waspe-stung" (i. iii. 233), "loe, Mortimer" instead of "Lo: Mortimer" (i. iii. 289), or "carping" instead of "capring" (iii. ii. 63). No correction is made of undoubted errors like "Haruey, Rossill" (i. ii. 158), the omitted *Hot.* before i. iii. 199, "present" (ii. iv. 33), "so youth" (ii. iv. 396), or "I my mind" (iv. i. 20). Q_{qo}, 1's "Oneyres" becomes "Oneyers" (ii. i. 75), which helps the determination of the right reading in a negative way, by suggesting that no further amendment was thought necessary. Apart from corrected misprints, and a good deal of normalized punctuation, the changes that might at first sight seem to carry the weight of some authority are:

- (a) lyes [Q₁ liues] the iest (i. ii. 185)
- (b) the [Q₁ that] Earle of March (i. iii. 83)
- (c) *Enter Hotspur, Worcester, and Douglas* [Q₁ omits the whole S.D.] (iv. i. S.D.)
- (d) *Hot.* [Q₁ *Per.*] for Hotspur's first ten speeches in iv. i)
- (e) thought's the slaue [Q₁ thoughts the slaues] of life (v. iv. 80)
- (f) *Prince and* [Q₁ omits *and*] *Iohn of Lancaster* (v. iv. 128 S.D.)

(a) and (b) are insignificant; (c), (d), and (f) are deducible from the context; and none transcends a compositor's sense. I judge (e), attractive though it is, to be a shade less relevant to Hotspur's situation (cf. v. iv. 80, note). One and all, despite the "Newly corrected", these changes stand or fall on their own probability rather than any sign of authority.

Q₃'s "improvements", apart from the removal of evident errors, are:

- (a) Go hang [Q_{qo}-2 Hang] (ii. ii. 42)
- (b) yet [Q_{q1,2} so] youth (ii. iv. 396)
- (c) rebel of that [Q_{q1,2} the] name (v. iv. 61)

There are also the colloquial contractions mentioned above (cf. p. lxx). Of the above three, (b) is self-evident; (a) and (c) are plausible but neither is so evidently right as to suggest anything more than chance alteration.

Q₄ introduces a colloquial contraction (cf. p. lxix) and also makes the commonsense substitution of the prefix *Poines* for *Prin.* at ii. iv. 36.

Q₅ introduces two colloquial contractions (cf. p. lxix), inserts the prefix *Hot.* (hitherto omitted) at i. iii. 199, and corrects Q_{q1}-4's "all vnder one" to "all vndone" (v. ii. 3); neither needs more than a compositor's common sense.

The situation with regard to F is more complicated. Malone showed that it was printed from Q₅, in that it repeats many errors and alterations first made in that edition: it was set up from a copy of Q₅ made up of corrected sheets throughout (Hemingway, *New Var.*, 352¹). Q₅ was its sole printed source as is indicated by its botching of errors which reference to earlier Q_q would have cleared up, the most famous instance being at v. iii. 11:

I was not borne a yeelder thou proud Scot, (Q_q 1-4, subst.)
 I was not borne to yeeld, thou proud Scot, (Q₅, subst.)
 I was not borne to yeeld, thou haughty Scot, (F)

See also the collations at i. i. 28; i. iii. 25, 70; ii. i. 13; iii. i. 29; iv. i. 85, 122, 123; v. iv. 83. But F's "copy" was a considerably edited Q₅, and the alterations (some of which may originate, however, with the compositors rather than an editor) are as follows:

- (a) Act and scene divisions are introduced, though with no break between the present v. ii and v. iii.
- (b) "Bardol(l)" becomes "Bardolph" (save for "Bardolfe" at F ii. ii. 50, "Bardol" at F ii. iv. 295). "Poins" is occasionally "Pointz".
- (c) Oaths are mostly purged, in accordance with the Act of 1606.
- (d) The stage-directions are somewhat altered.
- (e) Such numerals as Q_q give in figures F mostly gives in words.
- (f) There is some re-lineation in both prose and verse passages.
- (g) Along with many deteriorations, F has some plausible and some convincing new readings.

It has been argued that some of the changes show a copy of Q₅ to have been amended by collation with the Globe prompt-book.² But none of the changes needs more than an editor's or compositor's wits can supply. Of those above, (a) is not beyond an editor's ability—the play's divisions indicate themselves. (b) could originate in some acquaintance with the play—Bardolf(e) occurs throughout the Q of Part 2 (1600), though Bardol(l) persists through the successive Q_q of Part 1. On (c) it has been cogently argued that expurgation need not originate in the prompt-book³; that "the dividing line between plays from which profanity was not expurgated and those from which it was, lies between the Comedies and the Histories"⁴; that this dividing line corresponds

1. At iv. iii. 80 the corrected Q₅, followed by F, alters "lie" to "lay", probably in error; cf. collation.

2. Wilson (N.C.S.), 106-7.

3. W. W. Greg, *The Sh. First Folio*, 1955, 149-50.

4. Alice Walker, *RES*, 1951, ii. 225, and *Text. Problems of the First Folio*, 1953, 31.

to a break in F's printing from October 1621 to November 1622; that in that break the easy-going Sir George Buc resigned as Master of the Revels and a harsher policy was expected from his successor; and that, therefore, the expurgation was not a prompt-book but a literary operation, undertaken about 1621-2.¹

The expurgation is only partial. Offending phrases are excised (some of them very mild, like "by my troth" at i. ii. 20) or replaced by more-or-less inept substitutes. But the operation is oddly performed. A good many profanities go but many others remain,² while trivial changes occur like "confidence" for "saluation" (ii. iv. 9). "In faith" is sometimes cut, but it remains undisturbed in a number of places; at ii. iv. 437 it is thought a proper substitute for "Zbloud". "Faith" remains at ii. iv. 298 but is cut at ii. iv. 299. At iv. iii. 32 "would to God" remains but at iv. iii. 38 "God defend" yields to "Heauen defend", while at v. i. 120 "God befriend vs" remains but at v. i. 126 "God" again yields to "heauen". The cuts remove a Biblical irreverence like "wisdomes cries out in the streets" (i. ii. 86) or a harmless reference to weavers singing "psalms" (ii. iv. 130); yet other Biblical quips happily survive. The argument that expurgation was editorial in origin, and not from the prompt-book, is confirmed by the excision at i. ii. 86 which makes nonsense of Hal's remark and Falstaff's reply, and would hardly satisfy the actors.

(d) also weighs against prompt-book collation, for F's stage-directions, despite some tinkering, are no more adequate than Q5's. They fail to bring Blunt on in i. i, erroneously introduce "Pointz" at the beginning of i. ii (ignoring his entry at 102), and provide no exit for Falstaff in the same scene or entry for Bardolph in ii. ii. Throughout, though supplying some exits omitted in Qq (generally evident from the context, e.g. at ii. iv. 497, iv. iii. 113, and v. v. 15), they do little to remedy deficiencies. Most strikingly, they still retain Westmoreland in v. i, though no prompt-book could do so.

(e) is simple editorial or compositorial amendment.³

(f) offers some puzzles. Some of F's re-lineations are real or plausible improvements.⁴ Others are merely turnovers made at

1. Alice Walker, *loc. cit.*

2. E.g. i. iii. 55, 147, 172, 251, 276; ii. ii. 79; ii. iii. 95; ii. iv. 49, 59, 71, 129, 360, 385 (i'faith), 388; iii. i. 235, 243; iii. iii. 189; iv. i. 44; iv. iii. 29, 32, 60; v. i. 120; v. ii. 35; v. iv. 35, 144.

3. This dealt, e.g., with i. i. 26; ii. iv. 513; iii. iii. 69, 72, 188; iv. ii. 13-14; but not with v. iii. 37.

4. E.g. i. iii. 210-11; iii. i. 3-9, 218; iv. i. 54-5; iv. iii. 13-14; v. ii. 26-7; v. iv. 6-7.

about the medial pause rather than towards the line-end.¹ Not all these turnovers were, in fact, necessary and at III. i. 161-3 a quite unnecessary one has been made after "concealments" and has thrown the next two lines out—a sign of carelessness. Sometimes Q5's prose is semi-metrical and tempted F's compositors into inept versification.² Sometimes Q5's prose is quite unmetrical and yet was set up in F as irregular lines.³ Sometimes, still more oddly, Q5's regular verse is irregularly redivided.⁴ At I. iii. 209, after Q's "Good coosen giue me audience for a while", F adds the feeble tautology "And list to me", perhaps thinking that Hotspur's half-line "I crie you mercie" needed padding, which it did not. The collation at I. iii. 271 again shows wrong division and specious padding.

F makes guesswork attempts to smooth lines which all the Qq left rough or which Qq2-5's errors disarranged, but this implies no authority. The patent botches at I. iii. 70 (Q1 "What ere Lord *Harry Percie* . . ."; Qq2-5 "What e're *Harry Percie* . . ."; F "What euer *Harry Percie* . . ."), and at V. iii. 15, create no confidence that other regularizations, likely though some may be, are more than guesswork.⁵

(g) Do F's acceptable readings indicate prompt-book collation? They correct some evident misprints, and some other errors not beyond a compositor's wits, such as supplying the missing prefix (indicated by the context) at II. iv. 533, and changing "scantle" to "cantle" (III. i. 96), Qq's "monstrous scantle" being a virtual contradiction in terms. They alter the *Gad.*, *Ross.*, *Ross.*, *Ross.* prefixes of II. iv. 171, 172, 174, 178. They change "present", at II. iv. 33 to "President" (precedent), and "intemperance", at III. ii. 156, to "intemperature". The former change is clearly right, the latter argued to be right by Dover Wilson. Finally, they introduce the colloquialisms listed above (cf. pp. lxix-lxx). But does any of this confirm Dover Wilson's "firm link between the F 1 *Henry IV* and the Globe prompt-book"?

Surely not. Though he missed the "Haruey, Rossill" at I. ii. 158, the editor could change the prefixes unaided (as the Dering MS copyist did)—he knows the play has no *Ross.* "Intemperature", though slightly preferable to "intemperance" (cf. III. ii. 156, note), may well arise from the "distemp'rature" which the same com-

1. E.g. I. iii. 271; III. i. 22, 64, 66, 136, 152, 184, 207; III. ii. 1-2, 29; III. iii. 204; IV. i. 15-16, 94, 111; IV. iii. 41, 52, 107.

2. E.g. III. i. 103-7, 241-4.

3. E.g. II. i. 90-1; III. i. 192-3; III. iii. 170-4, 176-7.

4. E.g. IV. i. 45-6, 84-5; IV. iii. 32-3; IV. iv. 4-5, 25-6.

5. E.g. I. iii. 252, 254, 264; V. i. 25.

positor (A) had set the scene before (III. i. 31). "President" is not beyond an editor or compositor. The colloquialisms have been dealt with already, but it may be noted that though B colloquializes Q5's "An it be not foure by the day" (II. i. 1) and "quoth he" (II. i. 39), he decolloquializes some of Q5's rusticity.¹ In short, his erratic habits produce a few agreeable and many disagreeable variants. Both kinds, it seems likely, are his work. Otherwise one must postulate a collator who failed to remove major errors but here and there inserted an authoritative apostrophe. Such collation is inconceivable.

The conclusion, then, must be a conservative one, that Qq_{0,1} are the only substantive sources, that the prompt-book played no discernible part, and that the variants in later Qq and F have authority no greater than that of later editors, the authority merely of the light of nature.

The Dering Manuscript. An early seventeenth-century MS survives in which both parts of *Henry IV* are abridged into a single play. The abridgement, made perhaps for Court performance, is further revised by the hand of Sir Edward Dering (1598-1644), of Surrenden in Kent, possibly for private theatricals. The abridgement is based on Q5 (1613) of Part 1 and on Q (1600) of Part 2, and though it coincides in some emendations with F it shows no real signs of F influence. Sir Edward's revisions date from 1623 or 1624; they include the marking of acts and scenes, not identical with those of F. There are a few expurgations but most of Qq's profanities remain. About three-quarters of the text is from Part 1, all of whose scenes are represented save for II. i and IV. iv. The text has no authority but, along with some deliberate and a great many heedless alterations, it has to its credit the emendation of QqF's "trustfull" to "tristfull" (II. iv. 388). It was edited in 1845 for the Shakespeare Society by J. O. Halliwell. The manuscript, now in the Folger Shakespeare Library in Washington, is described with some, though not full, collation by Hemingway (New Var., 495-501).

10. EDITORIAL METHODS

(i) Qq_{0,1} are judged to be the sole authoritative texts, for the reasons given above.

(ii) Q1 (the Capell copy, at Trinity College, Cambridge) and F (the Kökeritz-Prouty facsimile) have been collated throughout, as has the unique copy of Q₀, in the Folger Library. For other QqFf I consulted in the first place the original Cambridge, the

1. Cf. II. i. 6, 10, 16.

original Arden, and the New Variorum collations, but then checked every reading against original copies of QqFf. Qq after Q5 and Ff after F1 are cited only for adopted or significant alternative readings. Qq means Qq1-5 (or 0-5 where Q0 exists), unless otherwise indicated; F means F1.

(iii) The collation records (a) all significant departures from Qq0,1, including punctuation-changes which affect the sense; (b) the main links of transmission from Qq0,1 to F; (c) some interesting editorial emendations, whether acceptable or not. Unless the sense or transmission is affected the collation mostly ignores (a) accidentals, minor literals, and spelling- or italicization-details, and variant forms of proper names, to trace which direct consultation of the original texts is essential; (b) variant forms of stage-directions later than F, and of locations; (c) alternative Elizabethan spellings provided they are unambiguous—these are silently modernized (e.g. to/too, lose/loose, then/than). The lemmas are given in modernized form, even though the citations following are in the original. A modernized text can hardly avoid this discrepancy, but whenever the modernization is misleading, the original is given also in brackets. The first edition to give an accepted reading is recorded first, any earlier conjecture following. A collation such as that at I. i. 26, e.g. “fourteen hundred] *Qq* (1400.), *F*”, means that *Qq* originate the reading, though in the form 1400., whereas *F* has it as in the text. “Subst.” (=substantially) means that editions agree except for variations immaterial to the point under consideration.

(iv) Colloquial or metrical elisions in texts after Q1 are rarely adopted. They may be what Shakespeare intended, but the criteria for their adoption would be (a) that colloquial speech should be written in colloquial forms and (b) that verse lines should not be irregular. These criteria methodically practised would involve not only the adoption of the later QqF elisions and those of later regularizers like Pope and Capell but the making of other changes too. The former would affect phrases like “Now *Hal*, what time of day is it lad?” (I. ii. 1), or “There is nothing but rogerie to be found in villanous man” (II. iv. 121-2)—both of which have been thought too precise to be natural; the latter would affect lines like “I would haue him poisoned with a pot of ale” (I. iii. 230), or “What say you to it? will you againe vnknit” (V. i. 15). *Metri gratia* one might also stretch out lines like “I thinke theres no man speakes better Welsh” (III. i. 47); but is it safe to assume (as Pope did) that Shakespeare wrote “there is no man”? Might he not have written the more pungent “there’s no man here”, or something similar? In short, a more adventurous editor would have amended the copy-text more often

and in doing so would have introduced some corrections and some errors—but which would be which it is hard to say. Shakespeare perhaps wrote “horriblie” at II. iv. 362 (cf. collation for II. iv. 368). But how can one tell? Emendations, therefore, are admitted only when evident errors can be evidently rectified.

(v) Modernization raises problems. Some words no modernization will quite deal with; Hotspur’s “parmacity” (I. iii. 57; “Par-macitie” in Q1) should not be pedanticized into “spermaceti” or bastardized into “parmaceti”. Others, when Shakespeare perhaps chose between alternative forms, are left unmodernized provided that the reader will not be jolted with unfamiliarity; “vildly” (for “vilely”), though retained in some new Arden volumes, is not adopted, but milder archaisms are retained, like “stronds” (I. i. 4), “loaden” (I. i. 37), “Wild of Kent” (II. i. 54), and “bands” (III. ii. 157). “And” (=“if”) is not changed to “an”.

(vi) Modernization of proper names is not easy. Trifling archaisms like Westmerland, Canturburie, or Sherley can be dealt with readily. But if Murrey becomes Murray, does Mordake become Murdoch? Sutton cophill can, phonetically, be Sutton Co’fil, and Bullenbrooke or Bullingbrooke is not much misrepresented by Bolingbroke, since this is pronounced Bollinbrook; but Shakespeare’s Gawsey (Gausell in Holinshed) can hardly become the modern Goushill. The best course is to modernize names which would otherwise cause trouble, and leave the rest: Mighell and S. Albones would worry the reader, but Mordake and Holmedon will not. The trickiest problem is with Bardolph. In *1 Henry IV* Qq he is always Bardol(l), doubtless pronounced Bardle, in *2 Henry IV* Q Bardolf(e), in *1 Henry IV* F Bardolph (Bardolfe once, Bardol once), and in *2 Henry IV* F Bardolf(e) or Bardolph. One relinquishes Bardol(l) regretfully; *2 Henry IV* Q’s Bardolf(e) perhaps represents Shakespeare’s final choice, odd though it is to have two Bardolfes in that play. Yet since Bardolph is universally accepted, and the sound is identical, I here surrender to the Folio.

(vii) In the verse in this edition, -ed indicates the syllabic past verb-ending, ’d the non-syllabic. In the prose, the -ed is silent or syllabic according to modern usage; consequently the copy-text’s contracted past forms indicating the non-syllabic ending (e.g. snatcht, lugd, talkt) need no collation when rendered in the prose into the uncontracted modern forms phonetically corresponding (e.g. snatched, lugged, talked). Other contracted forms in the copy-text which affect pronunciation (e.g. camst) are reproduced in the nearest modern equivalent (e.g. cam’st).

(viii) The punctuation is kept as close to Qqo,1 as is practicable

without distracting the reader. The original stopping is fairly light—indeed, the comma sometimes seems to have been the composers' (or Shakespeare's?) favourite resource. Sometimes the stopping suggests a dramatic point¹; often it allows syntax to be flexible. To reproduce Qq0,1's punctuation throughout is impossible, for much of it is haphazard. The main thing is not to clog the lines by too many heavy stops.

(ix) Additions to and alterations of the directions of Qq0,1 are indicated by square brackets.

II. ABBREVIATIONS

The abbreviated titles of Shakespeare's works are those of C. T. Onions, *A Shakespeare Glossary* (2nd edn, 1919). Line numbers and texts of passages cited or quoted are from the *Complete Works*, ed. W. J. Craig (Oxford, 1904). Quotations from the Bible, unless otherwise attributed, are from the Bishops' Bible, 1568. Qq indicates quartos 1-5 (or 0-5 where Q0 exists), unless otherwise defined. F indicates the First Folio. F1 is used only when the First has to be distinguished from the later Folios, F2, F3, and F4. In the collation, numerals are added after editors' names only when a particular edition is indicated. Other references are to the first editions.

Abbott	E. A. Abbott, <i>A Shakespearian Grammar</i> , 3rd edn, London, 1870.
Bailey	Nathaniel Bailey, <i>Dictionary of Cant Words</i> , added to <i>The New Universal English Dictionary</i> , 4th edn, London, 1759.
Beau. & Fl.	Beaumont and Fletcher, <i>Works</i> , ed. Arnold Glover and A. R. Waller, 10 vols., Cambridge, 1905-12.
Bond	See Lyly.
Brome (Shepherd)	Richard Brome, <i>Dramatic Works</i> , [ed. R. H. Shepherd,] 3 vols., London, 1873.
Brooks & Heilman	Cleanth Brooks and Robert B. Heilman, <i>Understanding Drama</i> , New York, 1945.
Bullen (<i>Old Plays</i>)	<i>A Collection of Old English Plays</i> , ed. A. H. Bullen, 4 vols., London, 1882-5.
Cambr.	<i>The Works of William Shakespeare</i> , ed. W. G. Clark, J. Glover, and W. A. Wright, 9 vols., Cambridge, 1863-6.
Capell	<i>Mr. William Shakespeare His Comedies, Histories, and Tragedies</i> , ed. Edward Capell, 10 vols., London, [1767-8].
Chambers (<i>W. Sh.</i>)	E. K. Chambers, <i>William Shakespeare, a Study of Facts and Problems</i> , 2 vols., Oxford, 1930.
Chambers (<i>El. St.</i>)	E. K. Chambers, <i>The Elizabethan Stage</i> , 4 vols., Oxford, 1923.
Chandler	<i>Henry IV, Part 1</i> , ed. F. W. Chandler, New York, 1911.

1. At i. ii. 4, 10, Q1 climaxes the successive phrases with semi-colons after "noone" and "taffata". At i. iii. 229 a colon after "mischance" suggests Hotspur savouring his outburst. In i. iii. 48-63 a volley of pattering commas, including an explosive one after "saltpetre", conveys Hotspur's impatience. In iii. iii. 170-4 Falstaff tosses off his instructions with a comma after every phrase.

- Collier 2, 3 *The Works of Shakespeare*, ed. J. P. Collier, 1st edn, 8 vols., London, 1842-4; 2nd edn, 6 vols., London, 1858; 3rd edn, 8 vols., London, 1878.
- Collier's MS Manuscript annotations (allegedly of the seventeenth century, but actually forgeries) in J. P. Collier's copy of the Second Folio.
- Cooper Thomas Cooper, *Thesaurus Linguae*, London, 1565.
- Cotgrave Randle Cotgrave, *A Dictionarie of the French and English Tongues*, London, 1611.
- Cowl & Morgan *The First Part of King Henry the Fourth*, ed. R. P. Cowl and A. E. Morgan (The Arden Shakespeare), 4th edn, London, 1930.
- Cowl (*Sources*) R. P. Cowl, *Sources of the Text of King Henry IV* (various places of publication), 1929-48.
- C.W. Samuel Daniel, *The First Foure Bookes of the Ciuile Wars*, London, 1595.
- Dekker (Bowers) Thomas Dekker, *Dramatic Works*, ed. Fredson Bowers, vols. I-III-(in progress), Cambridge, 1953-.
- Dekker (Grosart) Thomas Dekker, *Non-Dramatic Works*, ed. A. B. Grosart, 5 vols., London, 1884-6.
- Dekker (Shepherd) Thomas Dekker, *Dramatic Works*, [ed. R. H. Shepherd,] 4 vols., London, 1873.
- Dyce 1, 2 *The Works of William Shakespeare*, ed. A. Dyce, 1st edn, 6 vols., London, 1857; 2nd edn, 9 vols., London, 1864-7.
- EETS The Early English Text Society.
- Elton *King Henry IV, Part I*, ed. O. Elton, London, 1889.
- Evans (*Suppl.*) G. Blakemore Evans, *Supplement to the New Variorum edition of Henry IV, Part 1* (*Sh. Q.*, vii. 3), New York, 1956.
- Fabyan Robert Fabyan, *The New Chronicles of England and France*, ed. Sir Henry Ellis, London, 1811.
- F.V. *The Famous Victories of Henry the fifth*, ed. P. A. Daniel, Shakspeare-Quarto Facsimiles 39, London, 1887.
- Grant White *The Works of William Shakespeare*, ed. R. Grant White, 12 vols., Boston, 1875.
- Greene (Collins) Robert Greene, *Plays and Poems*, ed. J. C. Collins, 2 vols., Oxford, 1905.
- Greene (Grosart) Robert Greene, *Life and Complete Works*, ed. A. B. Grosart, 15 vols., London, 1881-6.
- Hall Edward Hall, *The Vnion of the Two Noble and Illustre Famelies of Lancastre and Yorke*, London, 1809 edn.
- Halliwell *The Works of William Shakespeare*, ed. J. O. Halliwell, 16 vols., London, 1853-65.
- Hanmer 1, 2 *The Works of Shakespear*, ed. Sir Thomas Hanmer, 1st edn, 6 vols., Oxford, 1744; 2nd edn, 6 vols., Oxford, 1771.
- Hardinge Notes on 1 *Henry IV* by Nicholas Hardinge, in Lewis Theobald's edn of Shakespeare, 1733.
- Hardyng *The Chronicle of Iohn Hardyng . . . together with the Continuation by Richard Grafton*, ed. Sir Henry Ellis, London, 1812 edn.
- Harvey Gabriel Harvey, *Complete Works*, ed. A. B. Grosart, 3 vols., London, 1884-5.

- Hazlitt's *Dodsley* *A Select Collection of Old English Plays, originally published by Robert Dodsley . . . revised by W. Carew Hazlitt, 15 vols., London, 1874-6.*
- Heath Benjamin Heath, *A Revisal of Shakespear's Text*, London, 1765.
- Hemingway A New Variorum edition of Shakespeare: *Henry the Fourth Part I*, ed. S. B. Hemingway, Philadelphia, 1936.
- Hemingway (Yale) *The First Part of King Henry the Fourth* (The Yale Shakespeare), ed. S. B. Hemingway, New Haven, 1917.
- Heywood, John John Heywood, *Works*, ed. Burton A. Millington, Urbana, 1956.
- Heywood, Thomas Thomas Heywood, *Dramatic Works*, [ed. R. H. Shepherd,] 6 vols., London, 1874.
- Holinshed (or Hol.) Raphael Holinshed, *Chronicles of England, Scotland and Ireland*, 6 vols., London, 1807-8 edn.
- Hudson *The Harvard Shakespeare*, ed. H. N. Hudson, 20 vols., Boston, 1880-1.
- Hunt. L. Q. *The Huntington Library Quarterly.*
- JEGP *The Journal of English and Germanic Philology.*
- Johnson *The Plays of William Shakespeare*, ed. Samuel Johnson, 8 vols., London, 1765.
- Johnson, T. 1, 2 *The Works of Mr. William Shakespear*, pub. T. Johnson; 1st edn, 1710; 2nd edn, 1721.
- Jonson (H. & S.) Ben Jonson, *Works*, ed. C. H. Herford and Percy and Evelyn Simpson, 11 vols., Oxford, 1925-52.
- Jorgensen P. A. Jorgensen, 'Military Rank in Shakespeare', *Hunt. L.Q.*, 14, 1950-1.
- Kittredge *Sixteen Plays of Shakespeare*, ed. G. L. Kittredge, Boston, 1946.
- Linthicum M. C. Linthicum, *Costume in the Drama of Shakespeare and his Contemporaries*, Oxford, 1936.
- Lyly (Bond) John Lyly, *Complete Works*, ed. R. W. Bond, 3 vols., Oxford, 1902.
- Madden D. H. Madden, *The Diary of Master William Silence*, 2nd edn, London, 1907.
- Malone *The Plays and Poems of William Shakspeare*, ed. Edmond Malone, 10 vols., London, 1790.
- Mal. Soc. The Malone Society.
- Marlowe Christopher Marlowe, *Works*, gen. ed. R. H. Case, 6 vols., London, 1930-3.
- Mason John Monck Mason, *Comments on the last Edition of Shakespeare's Plays*, London, 1785.
- Minsheu John Minsheu, *Ductor in Linguas, The Guide into the Tongues*, London, 1617.
- MLN *Modern Language Notes.*
- MLR *The Modern Language Review.*
- Moorman *King Henry IV, Part I*, ed. F. W. Moorman, London, 1893.
- Nashe (Grosart) Thomas Nashe, *Complete Works*, ed. A. B. Grosart, 6 vols., London, 1881-5.
- Nashe (McKerrow) Thomas Nashe, *Works*, ed. R. B. McKerrow, 5 vols., London, 1904-10.
- Noble Richmond Noble, *Shakespeare's Biblical Knowledge*, London, 1935.

- NQ*
OED
Onions
PMLA
 Pope 1, 2
PQ
RES
 Rowe 1, 3

SAB
 Schmidt
Sh. Q.
Sh.'s Engl.
 Singer
 Sisson
SN
SP
 Spurgeon
 SR
 Staunton
 Steevens
 Stow
 Sugden

 Theobald 1, 2
 Tilley
TLS
Var. 1773
Var. 1778
Var. 1821
 Vaughan
- Notes and Queries.*
A New English Dictionary, Oxford, 1884-1928.
 C. T. Onions, *A Shakespeare Glossary*, 2nd edn. revised, Oxford, 1919.
Publications of the Modern Language Association of America.
The Works of Shakespeare, ed. Alexander Pope, 1st edn. 6 vols., London, 1725; 2nd edn, 10 vols., London, 1728.
The Philological Quarterly.
The Review of English Studies.
The Works of Mr William Shakespeare, ed. Nicholas Rowe, 1st edn, 7 vols., London, 1709; 3rd edn, 8 vols., London, 1714.
The Shakespere Allusion-Book, rev. J. Munro, re-issued with a preface by Sir Edmund Chambers, 6 vols., Oxford, 1898.
 A. Schmidt, *Shakespeare-Lexikon*, rev., 2 vols., Berlin and Leipzig, 1923.
The Shakespeare Quarterly.
Shakespeare's England; an Account of the Life and Manners of his Age, 2 vols., Oxford, 1916-17.
The Dramatic Works of William Shakespeare, ed. S. W. Singer, 10 vols., Chiswick, 1826.
 C. R. Sisson, *New Readings in Shakespeare*, 2 vols., Cambridge, 1956.
Studia Neophilologica.
Studies in Philology.
 Caroline Spurgeon, *Shakespeare's Imagery and what it tells us*, Cambridge, 1935.
A Transcript of the Registers of the Company of Stationers of London, 1554-1640 A.D., ed. Edward Arber, 3 vols., London, 1875.
The Plays of Shakespeare, ed. Howard Staunton, 3 vols., London, 1828-50.
The Plays of William Shakespeare, notes by Samuel Johnson and George Steevens, ed. Isaac Reed, 13 vols., London, 1793.
 John Stow, *Chronicles of England*, London, 1580; *Annals of England*, London, 1592.
 Edward H. Sugden, *A Topographical Dictionary to the Works of Shakespeare and his Fellow Dramatists*, Manchester, 1885.
The Works of Shakespeare, ed. Lewis Theobald, 1st edn, 7 vols., London, 1733; 2nd edn, 8 vols., London, 1740.
 M. P. Tilley, *A Dictionary of the Proverbs in England in the Sixteenth and Seventeenth Centuries*, Ann Arbor, 1930.
The Times Literary Supplement.
The Plays of William Shakespeare, ed. Samuel Johnson and George Steevens, 10 vols., London, 1773.
The Plays of William Shakespeare, ed. Samuel Johnson and George Steevens, 10 vols., London, 1778.
The Plays and Poems of William Shakespeare, ed. James Boswell, 21 vols., London, 1801.
 Henry H. Vaughan, *New Readings and New Readings of Shakespeare's Tragedies*, 1878-86.

- Walker Wm S. Walker, *A Critical Examination of Shakespeare's Text*, 3 vols., London, 1860.
- Warburton *The Works of Shakespear*, ed. Wm Warburton, 8 vols., London, 1747.
- Webster John Webster, *Complete Works*, ed. F. L. Lucas, 4 vols., London, 1927.
- Wilson (*Fortunes*) John Dover Wilson, *The Fortunes of Falstaff*, Cambridge, 1943.
- Wilson (N.C.S.) *The First Part of the History of Henry IV*, ed. John Dover Wilson (*The New Cambridge Shakespeare*), Cambridge, 1946.
- Wright *King Henry IV, Part I*, ed. W. A. Wright, London, 1897.

THE FIRST PART OF
KING HENRY THE FOURTH

CHARACTERS¹

KING HENRY *the Fourth.*
 HENRY, *Prince of Wales,* } *sons to the King.*
 LORD JOHN *of Lancaster,* }
 EARL OF WESTMORELAND.
 SIR WALTER BLUNT.
 THOMAS PERCY, *Earl of Worcester.*
 HENRY PERCY, *Earl of Northumberland.*
 HENRY PERCY, *surnamed HOTSPUR, his son.*
 EDMUND MORTIMER, *Earl of March.*
 ARCHIBALD, *Earl of Douglas.*
 OWEN GLENDOWER.
 SIR RICHARD VERNON.
 RICHARD SCROOP, *Archbishop of York.*
 SIR MICHAEL, *a friend to the Archbishop of York.*
 SIR JOHN FALSTAFF.
 POINS.
 PETO.
 BARDOLPH.
 GADSHILL.
 LADY PERCY, *wife to Hotspur, and sister to Mortimer.*
 LADY MORTIMER, *daughter to Glendower, and wife to Mortimer.*
 MISTRESS QUICKLY, *hostess of the Boar's Head in Eastcheap.*
Lords, Officers, Sheriff, Vintner, Chamberlain, Drawers,
two Carriers, Ostler, Messengers, Travellers, and Attendants.

SCENE : *England and Wales.*

1. No list of characters appears earlier than Rowe.

[THE FIRST PART OF] THE HISTORY OF [KING] HENRY THE FOURTH

[ACT I]

[SCENE I.—*London. The Palace.*]

Enter the KING, LORD JOHN OF LANCASTER, EARL OF WESTMORELAND, [SIR WALTER BLUNT,] with others.

King. So shaken as we are, so wan with care,
Find we a time for frightened peace to pant,
And breathe short-winded accents of new broils
To be commenc'd in stronds afar remote:
No more the thirsty entrance of this soil

5

THE FIRST . . . FOURTH] THE HISTORIE OF / Henry the fourth. *Qq*; The First Part of Henry the Fourth, / with the Life and Death of HENRY / Sirnamed HOT-SPURRE F. King] *Hammer*; not in *QqF*.

ACT I

Scene 1

ACT I SCENE I.] *F* (*Actus Primus. Scæna Prima.*); not in *Qq*. Location.] *Capell* (*subst.*). S.D. Lord John of Lancaster,] *QqF*; omitted *Capell*, some edd. Sir Walter Blunt,] *Dering MS*, *Capell* (*Blunt*,) *Var.* 1778; not in *QqF*. 5. entrance] *QqF*; bosom *Dering MS*; Entrails *F4*; entrants *conj. Var.* 1773; *Erinnys Steevens*, *conj. Mason*.

Heading] Additions to and alterations of *Q1*'s directions are indicated by square brackets. All locations are editorial; they are inserted merely in deference to convention, and no undue attention need be paid to them.

1. *So . . . care*] The latter part of *R2* shows Henry afflicted by his wild son, by hostile conspirators, and by remorse, to dispel which he vows a crusade. *Hol.* records also a pestilence, an ominous meteor, diabolic visitations, an attempted assassination, and wars threatened by the French and launch-

ed by the Scots and Welsh. The tone here is caught from *Hol.*; cf. *App.* III, pp. 167–8. This is the first of the abundant references to bodily states and actions.

4. *stronds*] A phonetic variant of "strands".

5–18. *No more . . . master*] The irony of Henry's deluded hopes is present in Daniel—"And yet new *Hydraes* lo, new heades appeare / T'afflict that peace reputed then so sure" (*C.W.*, iii. 86).

5–6. *thirsty entrance . . . daub*] *Malone*

Shall daub her lips with her own children's blood,
 No more shall trenching war channel her fields,
 Nor bruise her flow'rets with the armed hoofs
 Of hostile paces: those opposed eyes,
 Which, like the meteors of a troubled heaven, 10
 All of one nature, of one substance bred,
 Did lately meet in the intestine shock
 And furious close of civil butchery,
 Shall now, in mutual well-beseeming ranks,
 March all one way, and be no more oppos'd 15
 Against acquaintance, kindred, and allies.
 The edge of war, like an ill-sheathed knife,
 No more shall cut his master. Therefore, friends,
 As far as to the sepulchre of Christ—
 Whose soldier now, under whose blessed cross 20
 We are impressed and engag'd to fight—
 Forthwith a power of English shall we levy,
 Whose arms were moulded in their mothers' womb
 To chase these pagans in those holy fields
 Over whose acres walk'd those blessed feet 25

16. allies] *Qq1-3,5,F (subst.)*; all eyes *Q4*. 22. Forthwith] *Qq1,2,4,5,F*;
 Forth with *Q3*. 23. mothers'] *QqF* (mothers), *Theobald*; Mother's *F4*.

refers to *Gen. iv. 11*: "And now art thou cursed from the earth, which hath opened her mouth to receive thy brothers blood from thy hand". Cain's fratricide of Abel perhaps suggested to Shakespeare this violent image for the earth's crevices splashed by civil slaughter. *R3*, v. iv. 36 ff., expresses a similar horror of past civil war and hope for restored peace.

9-10. *those opposed . . . heaven*] In the meteor image the idea of enemy eyes flashing fire coalesces with that of "a troubled heaven" attending dynastic disturbances. Cf. *R2*, II. iv. 7, 9—
 " 'Tis thought the king is dead . . . /
 And meteors fright the fixed stars of heaven".

11. *All . . . bred*] "Meteor" was used for various atmospheric phenomena, "consisting of vapours drawn up into the Middle Region of the Air" (Florio,

New World of Words). In Shelley it can still mean any kind of fiery phenomenon (*Shelley's Prose*, ed. D. L. Clark, 1954, 61).

14. *mutual well-beseeming*] interdependent, well-ordered.

19-22. *As far . . . levy*] Gosson's *Schoole of Abuse*, 1579 (ed. Arber, 50), has a similar usage: "*Scipio . . . leuied his force too the walles of Car[t]hage*". The proposed crusade, which the chronicles put at the end of Henry's reign, Shakespeare brings forward as an expiation for Richard's murder (*R2*, v. vi. 49-50), perhaps prompted by an appeal the Emperor of Constantinople made to Henry in 1400 for aid against the Turks (Hol., III. 17).

21. *impressed and engag'd*] conscripted and pledged by our vow.

25-7. *blessed . . . cross*] "The king's mood in this scene is heavy with religious emotion" (Noble, 169).

Which fourteen hundred years ago were nail'd
For our advantage on the bitter cross.

But this our purpose now is twelve month old,
And bootless 'tis to tell you we will go;

Therefor we meet not now. Then let me hear 30

Of you, my gentle cousin Westmoreland,

What yesternight our Council did decree

In forwarding this dear expedience.

West. My liege, this haste was hot in question,

And many limits of the charge set down 35

But yesternight, when all athwart there came

A post from Wales, loaden with heavy news,

Whose worst was that the noble Mortimer,

Leading the men of Herefordshire to fight

Against the irregular and wild Glendower, 40

Was by the rude hands of that Welshman taken,

A thousand of his people butchered,

Upon whose dead corpse there was such misuse,

26. fourteen hundred] *Qq* (1400.), *F*. 28. now is twelve month] *Qq1-3*; is twelve month *Qq4,5*; is a tweluemonth *F*. 30. Therefor] *QqF* (Therefore), *this edn.* 39. Herefordshire] *Q6,F*; Herdforsshire *Qq1-3*; Herdfordshire *Qq4,5*. 42. A thousand] *Qq*; And a thousand *F*. 43. corpse] *Q1,F* (corpes), *Var.* 1821; corps *Qq2-5*.

28. *now . . . old*] Historically, two years elapsed between Richard's murder (1400) and the battle of Holmedon (1402).

30. *Therefor . . . now*] It is not for that that we meet now.

31. *gentle cousin*] noble kinsman. "Cousin" was used for various degrees of kinship: Westmoreland's wife was Henry's half-sister.

33. *dear expedience*] cherished and urgent enterprise. The primary sense of "expedience" is "speed" (cf. *H5*, iv. iii. 69-70—"the French . . . will with all expedience charge on us"); this sense is taken up in Westmoreland's first line.

34. *hot in question*] being eagerly debated.

35. *limits of the charge*] "To limit" can mean "to assign"; cf. *R3*, v. iii. 25—"Limit each leader to his several

charge". Since "charge" can mean "business" and "duties" as well as "expenditure", the phrase comprehensively signifies "assignments of resources and of commanders' duties in the campaign".

37. *post*] messenger.

38-46. *the noble Mortimer . . . spoken of*] See App. III, p. 168. On Mortimer's identity see i. iii. 79, 144, notes.

40. *irregular and wild*] This accords with the chronicles: "irregular" = "engaged in 'guerilla' warfare" (Kittredge). For the courtly, scholarly (though touchy) Glendower of iii. i see Intro., p. xxvi.

43. *corpse*] = corpses; "corps" and "corpes" were plural as well as singular. Similarly in *F 2H4*, i. i. 192-3—"My Lord (your Sonne) had onely but the Corpes, / But shadowes, and the shewes of men to fight".

Such beastly shameless transformation,
 By those Welshwomen done, as may not be 45
 Without much shame retold or spoken of.

King. It seems then that the tidings of this broil
 Brake off our business for the Holy Land.

West. This match'd with other did, my gracious lord,
 For more uneven and unwelcome news 50
 Came from the north, and thus it did import:
 On Holy-rood day, the gallant Hotspur there,
 Young Harry Percy, and brave Archibald,
 That ever valiant and approved Scot,
 At Holmedon met, where they did spend 55
 A sad and bloody hour;
 As by discharge of their artillery,
 And shape of likelihood, the news was told;
 For he that brought them, in the very heat
 And pride of their contention did take horse, 60
 Uncertain of the issue any way.

King. Here is a dear, a true industrious friend,
 Sir Walter Blunt, new lighted from his horse,
 Stain'd with the variation of each soil

49. did] *Qq1,2*; like *Qq3-5,F.* lord,] *Qq1-5 (L.)*, *Q6,F (Lord.)*. 50. For] *Qq1-4*; Far *Q5,F (subst.)*. 51. import] *Qq1-4*; report *Q5,F.* 55-6.] *As QqF*; At . . . met, / Where . . . hour, / *Capell, most edd.* 62. a dear] *Qq4 corr., 5,F*; deere *Qq1-3,4 uncorr.* a true] *Qq1-4*; and true *Q5,F.* 64. Stain'd] *Qq*; Strain'd *F*, *Dering MS.*

49-55. *This . . . met*] Nearly three months separated the defeats of Mortimer (22 June 1402) and Douglas (14 Sept.). Hol. dates the latter ("on the Rood daie in haruest"—i.e. 14 Sept.) but not the former, and Shakespeare heightens the dramatic impact by making them contemporaneous.

54. *approved*] of proved worth.

55-6. *At . . . hour*] The rhythmical velocity seems better conveyed by this lineation (of *QqF*) than by the usual readjustment (cf. collation).

55. *Holmedon*] Humbleton near Wooler in Northumberland.

57. *artillery*] Formerly used for any missiles in war, not confined to gun-fire.

58. *shape of likelihood*] the way probability shaped itself.

58-9. *the news was . . . them*] "News" could be plural as well as singular. *R2*, III. iv, has "this news" in l. 74 and "these news" in ll. 82, 100.

60. *pride*] highest pitch, supreme position; cf. *Mac.*, II. iv. 12—"A falcon towering in her pride of place".

60, 63. *horse*] References to urgent horsemanship are numerous in both parts of the play; cf. II. iii. 68 ff., IV. i. 104-10, 119-23, and Harry Levin, 'Falstaff Uncoltd', *MLN*, 1946, 305-10. The effect is to create a world of vigorous movement and military activity.

62. *true industrious*] loyally zealous.

Betwixt that Holmedon and this seat of ours; 65
 And he hath brought us smooth and welcome news.
 The Earl of Douglas is discomfited;
 Ten thousand bold Scots, two and twenty knights,
 Balk'd in their own blood, did Sir Walter see
 On Holmedon's plains; of prisoners Hotspur took 70
 Mordake, Earl of Fife and eldest son
 To beaten Douglas, and the Earl of Athol,
 Of Murray, Angus, and Menteith:
 And is not this an honourable spoil?
 A gallant prize? ha, cousin, is it not?

West.

In faith,

75

66. welcome] *Qq*; welcomes *F*. 69. blood, did] *Q5, F* (blood did); blood. Did *Qq1-4*. 71. Earl] *QqF*; the Earl *Pope*. 75-6. not? . . . conquest] *As Stevens*; not? In faith it is. / *West*. A conquest *Qq1,2*; not? In faith it is. / *West*. A conquest *Qq3-5, F*.

66. *And he . . . news*] The King, apparently dependent on Westmoreland for news of the Welsh and Scottish outbreaks, now proves the better-informed. Some commentators take this for duplicity, or as showing that a passage has been cut. Neither assumption is necessary: the fact that Henry, while knowing less of the Welsh rising than his Council, knows more of the Scottish one both emphasizes his leading position and reflects the confused situation. The messenger was actually one Nicholas Merbury, but Hol. gives no name and Shakespeare can thus enhance Blunt's role.

68. *two and twenty*] "three and twenty" in Hol., iii. 21.

69. *Balk'd . . . blood*] Lying defeated in blood-stained ridges. A balk is a ridge between furrows; "balk'd" here carries too its other meaning "thwarted". (M. Doran, 'Imagery in *R2* and in *H4*', *MLR*, xxxvii, 1942.)

71. *Mordake, Earl*] Hol. has "Mordacke earle of Fife" (iii. 21) and Pope's change (cf. collation) is unnecessary. "R, 'the dog's letter', was so fiercely spoken by the Elizabethans that it might, in verse, be made to produce an additional syllable where such was wanted" (A. C. Sprague, *Poems of*

Samuel Daniel, 1930, p. xxxii, fn., citing *Delia*, 1592, xxxv. 5—"And I, though borne in a colder clime").

71-2. *eldest son . . . Douglas*] Murdoch Stewart was eldest son of Robert, Duke of Albany, Regent of Scotland; Hol. calls him "the duke of Albanies sonne" (iii. 22). Shakespeare here and at i. iii. 257, however, follows a printer's error (Hol., iii. 21), where a comma was omitted after "gouernor"—"of prisoners among other were these, Mordacke earle of Fife, son to the gouernor Archembald earle Dowglas". That Murdoch was *eldest* son Shakespeare could have found in Hol., *Hist. Scot.*, v. 405-6—"Murdocke (eldest sonne to duke Robert) earle of Fife"—or, more probably, in Stow's account of Holmedon—"Murdake the eldest sonne of the duke of Albanie, that was heyre apparant to the realme of Scotland" (*Annales*, 521).

73. *Menteith*] One of "Mordake"'s titles. In making Menteith a separate person Shakespeare follows Hol.—"Mordacke earle of Fife . . . Robert earle of Angus, and (as some writers haue) the earles of Atholl & Menteith" (iii. 21).

74, 80. *honourable spoil . . . honour's tongue*] The "honour" theme, so asso-

It is a conquest for a prince to boast of.

King. Yea, there thou mak'st me sad, and mak'st me sin

In envy that my Lord Northumberland

Should be the father to so blest a son;

A son who is the theme of honour's tongue, 80

Amongst a grove the very straightest plant,

Who is sweet Fortune's minion and her pride;

Whilst I by looking on the praise of him

See riot and dishonour stain the brow

Of my young Harry. O that it could be prov'd 85

That some night-tripping fairy had exchang'd

In cradle-clothes our children where they lay,

And call'd mine Percy, his Plantagenet!

Then would I have his Harry, and he mine:

But let him from my thoughts. What think you, coz, 90

Of this young Percy's pride? The prisoners

Which he in this adventure hath surpris'd

To his own use he keeps, and sends me word

I shall have none but Mordake, Earl of Fife.

West. This is his uncle's teaching, this is Worcester, 95

Malevolent to you in all aspects,

Which makes him prune himself, and bristle up

79. to] *Qq1-4*; of *Q5,F*. 87. lay] *Qq1,3-5,F*; say *Q2*.

ciated with Hotspur, is sounded at once.

82. *minion*] darling.

86-7. *That some . . . lay*] Fairies, it was thought, would substitute an ugly changeling for a beautiful child. Like Daniel, Shakespeare makes Hotspur and Hal coeval, though Hotspur was twenty-one years the elder.

91-4. *The prisoners . . . Fife*] Cf. App. III, p. 170. By the law of arms (though Hol. does not mention this) Hotspur could retain the prisoners except for the Earl of Fife who, as a prince of the blood royal, must be surrendered to the King. Cf. Sir J. Turner, *Pallas Armata*, pr. 1683, 341: "The Ransome of a Prisoner belongs to him who took him, unless he be a person of very eminent quality, and then the Prince, the State, or their General seizeth on

him, giving some gratuity to those who took him".

95-6. *Worcester . . . aspects*] Following Walsingham, who calls Worcester "inventor (ut dicitur) totius mali", Hol. says that "his studie was euer (as some write) to procure malice". Shakespeare likens him to a planet exerting an evil influence in his "aspects" to the earth. "Malevolent" and "aspects" have an underplay of astrological significance; cf. "malevolent star" in Massinger, *Duke of Milan*, 1. iii. 313.

97. *prune*] A falconry term for the hawk trimming her feathers for action: typical, like the dog image in the next lines, of the play's physical vitality. Shakespeare shows a lively knowledge of birds and "the special aspect of their life which attracts him is their *movement*" (Spurgeon, 48).

The crest of youth against your dignity.

King. But I have sent for him to answer this;

And for this cause awhile we must neglect 100

Our holy purpose to Jerusalem.

Cousin, on Wednesday next our Council we

Will hold at Windsor, so inform the lords:

But come yourself with speed to us again,

For more is to be said and to be done 105

Than out of anger can be uttered.

West. I will, my liege.

Exeunt.

[SCENE II.—*London. An Apartment of the Prince's.*]

Enter PRINCE OF WALES and SIR JOHN FALSTAFF.

Fal. Now, Hal, what time of day is it, lad?

Prince. Thou art so fat-witted with drinking of old sack,

102-3. we / Will hold at] *T. Johnson 2, Pope*; we will hold / At *QqF.* 103. so] *Qq*; and so *F.* inform] *Qq1-4, F* (informe); informer *Q5.*

Scene II

SCENE II.] *F* (*Scæna Secunda.*); not in *Qq.* Location.] *Theobald* (*subst.*). S.D.] *Qq*; *Enter* Henry Prince of Wales, Sir John Falstaffe, and Pointz. | *F.*

97-8. *bristle . . . crest*] Cf. *John*, iv. iii. 148-9—"Now . . . / Doth dogged war bristle his angry crest".

99. *I have . . . this*] To assert the King's leadership Shakespeare varies from Hol., who says that the Percys themselves "came to the king vnto Windsore (vpon a purpose to prooue him)" (iii. 22).

105-6.] "The substance of the king's speech is: 'Dismiss the lords until Wednesday next, but you yourself return to me at once, for more is to be said and done than I can say or do in public, in my present angry condition'" (Hemingway, Yale). "Utter" has its Elizabethan sense of "make public". Quasi-proverbial; see Tilley, N307—"Nothing is well said or done in a passion (in anger)".

Scene II

Entry.] "The point of this [that Fal. is supposedly 'discovered' asleep on the inner stage] has eluded the critics" (Wilson, N.C.S.). But can one imagine the Prince entering unannounced and doing the comic discovery "business" as a mute solo?

1-12. *what time . . . the day*] "It is indeed an absurdity for Fal. to ask the time of day, for Fal. has properly nothing to do with the world of time. . . For Fal., each day is a new day lived for itself. The future does not cast a cloud over the present" (Brooks and Heilman, 382).

2. *fat-witted*] thick-witted. Cf. *LLL.*, v. ii. 269—"Well-liking wits they have; gross, gross; fat, fat".

sack] *OED*, "Sack, *sb.*³ Often

and unbuttoning thee after supper, and sleeping upon benches after noon, that thou hast forgotten to demand that truly which thou wouldst truly know. 5
 What a devil hast thou to do with the time of the day? Unless hours were cups of sack, and minutes capons, and clocks the tongues of bawds, and dials the signs of leaping-houses, and the blessed sun himself a fair hot wench in flame-coloured taffeta, I see 10
 no reason why thou shouldst be so superfluous to demand the time of the day.

Fal. Indeed, you come near me now, Hal, for we that take purses go by the moon and the seven stars, and not "by Phœbus, he, that wand'ring knight so fair": 15

4. after noon] *Qq*; in the afternoone *F*.

14. the seven] *Qq* 1-4; seuen *Q* 5, *F*.

faire *QqF*.

11. be so] *Q* 1, *F*; be *Qq* 2-5.

15. "by . . . fair"] *This edn*; by . . .

described as a sweet wine, though Shakespeare's mention of sack and sugar [cf. l. 110] shows that it was not always such in the 16th c. A general name for a class of white wines . . . from Spain and the Canaries".

4-7. *that thou . . . the day*] The point is hardly that, as Johnson supposed, *Fal.* had asked in the *night* for the time of *day* (the scene is not laid at night) but that he is so bemused as to be asking not after sack, capons, etc., but after something quite irrelevant to him. With typical quickness he seizes (ll. 13-15) on a sense of "day" (the opposite of night) different from Hal's.

6-12. *What a devil . . . the day*] Nashe furnishes an apparent parallel—"What haue we to doe with scales and hower-glasses, except we were Bakers or Clock-keepers? I cannot tell how other men are addicted, but it is against my profession to . . . keepe any howers but dinner or Supper. It is a pedanticall thing to respect times and seasons" (*Summers Last Will*, McKerrow, iii. 247).

9. *leaping-houses*] brothels.

10. *flame-coloured taffeta*] Prostitutes wore taffeta petticoats; cf. Dekker, *1 Honest Whore*, II. i. 94-5—"The

knight, Sir *Oliuer Lollio*, swore he wold bestow a taffata petticoate on thee, but to breake his fast with thee" (Bowers, ii. 46). *All's W.* refers to "your taffeta punk" (II. ii. 24); in Barry's *Ram Alley*, IV. i, a bawd sues a courtesan for "five weeks' loan for a red taffata gown" (Hazlitt's *Dodsley*, x. 344).

11. *superfluous*] A quibble: (a) needlessly inquisitive; (b) self-indulgent; cf. *Lr.*, IV. i. 68—"superfluous and lust-dieted man".

13. *you . . . near me*] you are near the mark.

14. *go by*] A quibble: (a) are abroad in; (b) tell the time by.

the seven stars] i.e. "the seauen Starres, called the Pleiades" (Dekker, *King's Entertainment*; Bowers, ii. 301).

15. "*by Phœbus . . . fair*"] Warburton suggested, as is likely, that this is from a lost ballad; Mr J. C. Maxwell points out to me *OED*'s comment on the "tag" use of "he"—"3a . . . Common in ballad style . . . [citing *Chevy Chase*]"—and examples in *Clyomon & Clomydes* (Mal. Soc., 1913, 778, 827). As a possible source for the allusion Steevens refers to *The Mirrour of princely deedes and knighthood* by M[argaret] T[yler], from Diego Ortuñez de Gala-

and I prithee sweet wag, when thou art king, as God save thy Grace—Majesty I should say, for grace thou wilt have none—

Prince. What, none?

Fal. No, by my troth, not so much as will serve to be prologue to an egg and butter. 20

Prince. Well, how then? Come, roundly, roundly.

Fal. Marry then sweet wag, when thou art king let not us that are squires of the night's body be called thieves of the day's beauty: let us be Diana's foresters, 25 gentlemen of the shade, minions of the moon; and let men say we be men of good government, being governed as the sea is, by our noble and chaste mis-

16. king] *Qq* 2-5, *F*; a king *Qr*. 20. by my troth] *Qq*; not in *F*.

horra's romance *Espejo de Principes y Caballeros*; in this the Knight of the Sun (*El Donzel del Febo*) appears, and a jocose reference in Butler's *Hudibras* (L i. 15-16) shows that it was popular. Douce suggests *The Voyage of the Wandering Knight*, trans. 158: by William Goodyear from the French of Jean de Cartigny (*Illust. of Sh.*, 1807, i. 415).

16-17. *as . . . save*] *OED* gives "As. †29. Formerly used to introduce an imperative sentence. *Obs.*", and quotes Chaucer's "as go we seene" (let us go and see) and "As lene it me" (Do lend it me), but no later examples.

17. *grace*] A triple quibble: (a) Highness; (b) spiritual grace; (c) grace before meat.

21. *egg and butter*] Friday or Lenten fare, presumably unworthy of more than the minimum of grace; J. Eliot, *Orlando in Guiana*, 1593, 117, has "It is fasting day to day. . . There are egges in the shell, butterd, peched, and fride".

22. *roundly*] to the point (with a glance at *Fal.*'s figure?).

24-5. *squires . . . of the body*] "Squires of the body" were a nobleman's attendants. The following word-play seems intended: "night knight" (Bradley,

Sh's Engl., ii. 541, rejects this, arguing that the "k" was sounded, but Wilson (N.C.S.) points to the "nave-knave" pun of 2*H* 4, ii. iv. 278, and the "knight-errant" [= "night-sinner"] of *ibid.*, v. iv. 25; "body-bawdy" (cf. Middleton, *Family of Love*, v. i. 125—"the liberality of your bawdies, not your minds" (*Works*, ed. Bullen, ii. 98); "body-beauty-booty". It is wrong to tie these witticisms down to one prosaic meaning but approximately they mean "Since we serve the night's excitements, do not complain that we are inactive by day". The German *Tagesdieb*, thief of day (a euphemism for a loafer), may provide a parallel.

25. *Diana's foresters*] Followers of Diana as moon-goddess, they will range abroad serving her also as huntress. Cf. *Cym.*, ii. iii. 74—"Diana's rangers".

26. *gentlemen . . . shade*] "Cf. Gentlemen of the Chamber, etc., members of the Royal Household" (Wilson, N.C.S.).

minions . . . moon] So also Wilkins, *Miseries of Enforced Marriage*, 1607, sig. F3v—"the Moone, patronesse of all purse-takers".

27. *of good government*] A quibble: (a) well-behaved; (b) serving a good ruler.

treass the moon, under whose countenance we steal.

Prince. Thou sayest well, and it holds well too, for the fortune of us that are the moon's men doth ebb and flow like the sea, being governed as the sea is, by the moon—as for proof now, a purse of gold most resolutely snatched on Monday night, and most disso-
lutely spent on Tuesday morning, got with swearing
“Lay by!”, and spent with crying “Bring in!”, now
in as low an ebb as the foot of the ladder, and by and
by in as high a flow as the ridge of the gallows.

Fal. By the Lord thou say'st true, lad; and is not my host-
ess of the tavern a most sweet wench? 40

Prince. As the honey of Hybla, my old lad of the castle;
and is not a buff jerkin a most sweet robe of durance?

30. too] *Q1* (to), *Qq2-5, F.* 33. proof now,] *Wilson (N.C.S.)*; profe. Now
QqF. 39. By the Lord] *Qq*; not in *F.* 41. As the honey of Hybla] *Qq*;
As is the hony *F.*

29. *countenance*] Another quibble:
(a) face; (b) patronage.

steal] Another quibble: (a) go by
stealth; (b) thief.

30. *it holds well*] the simile is apt.

36. “*Lay by!*”] Either “Stand and
deliver!” or perhaps “Drop your
weapons!”; cf. Brome (*Shepherd*, vol.
ii), *Covent-Garden Weeded* (p. 90)—
“Lay by your Armes, my Masters. I
bring none but friends”.

“*Bring in!*”] “food and drink”
understood.

36-8. *now . . . gallows*] Cf. John Hey-
wood, *Three Hundred Epigrammes*, 56:
“Thou art at an ebbe in Newgate,
thou hast wrong, / But thou shalt be
aflote at Tyburne ere long”. Pro-
verbial; Tilley, E56. “The foot of the
ladder” prompts the “gallows” asso-
ciation, since it was up a ladder that
the condemned man had to climb,
wearing the noose, to the crossbar
from which he was to drop.

39-40. *my hostess . . . wench*] An echo
of *F.V.*'s “pretie wench that can talke
well” at “the olde Tauerne in East-
cheape” (i. 89-91). The oblique-
ness of this innuendo, and Hal's rejec-

tion of it (l. 46), reflect Shakespeare's
care to keep Hal reputable.

41. *Hybla*] In Sicily, source of the
famous Hyblaean honey.

old lad . . . castle] A pun on “Old-
castle”; also a cant term for roisterer.
Gabriel Harvey's *Four Letters*, 1592
(Grosart, i. 225), refers to “old Lads of
the Castell”, and his *Pierce's Supereroga-
tion*, 1593 (Grosart, ii. 44), to “a lusty
ladd of the Castell, that will bind
Beares, and ride golden Asses to
death”. “Old Dick of the Castle”
occurs in Nashe's *Haue with You* (Mc-
Kerrow, iii. 5). In mediaeval homi-
letic literature the tavern was often the
devil's castle (Owst, *Lit. and Pulpit*,
438), which may help to explain the
term. Shakespeare's audience would
know, too, that one of Southwark's
principal brothels was called The
Castle (Stow, *Surray*, ‘Bridge Ward
Without’).

42. *buff . . . durance*] Hal seems to
mean “Mind you don't land in gaol”.
A buff (leather) jerkin was the con-
stable's jacket. “Durance” quibbles on
its hard-wearing qualities and the gaol
it suggested; cf. *Err.*, iv. iii. 24—“he

Fal. How now, how now, mad wag? What, in thy quips and thy quiddities? What a plague have I to do with a buff jerkin? 45

Prince. Why, what a pox have I to do with my hostess of the tavern?

Fal. Well, thou hast called her to a reckoning many a time and oft.

Prince. Did I ever call for thee to pay thy part? 50

Fal. No, I'll give thee thy due, thou hast paid all there.

Prince. Yea, and elsewhere, so far as my coin would stretch, and where it would not I have used my credit.

Fal. Yea, and so used it that were it not here apparent that thou art heir apparent—But I prithee sweet wag, shall there be gallows standing in England when thou art king? and resolution thus fubbed as it is with the rusty curb of old father Antic the law? Do not thou when thou art king hang a thief. 55 60

Prince. No, thou shalt.

Fal. Shall I? O rare! By the Lord, I'll be a brave judge!

Prince. Thou judgest false already, I mean thou shalt have the hanging of the thieves, and so become a rare hangman. 65

Fal. Well, Hal, well; and in some sort it jumps with my humour, as well as waiting in the court, I can tell you.

39. it not] *Q*₁: it *F*. 48. fubbed] *Q*₁ fubd : fubbd *F*. 60. king] *Q*₁:—g: a King *Q*₄ 45 *F*. 62. By the Lord] *Q*₁: not in *F*.

[the sergeant]... takes pity on decayed men and gives them suits of durance".

44. quiddities] quibbles, subtleties.

48. called... reckoning] he called her to give an account of herself: he asked her for the bill.

55-6. here... hair] These 'and 'hair' too made a passable pun in Shakespeare's day. Were Hal not Prince of Wales, *Fal.* suggests, he would get no more credit.

58. resolution... fubbed] courage rebbed of its due reward.

59. drink] "Speaking of the law as a venerable buffoon is a right Falstaffian

stroke of humour" (Hudson. —and, one may add, of irresponsibility.

60-1. hang... shall] A strong innuendo: cf. Tilley, T119—"The great thieves hang the little ones".

61-5.] Reminiscent of *F.V.* when the Prince promises to make Ned the Lord Chief Justice and Ned replies "By gogs' wounds, he be the brauest Lord chiefe Justice That euer was in England" (vi. 19-24). But in Shakespeare Hal is revealingly sardonic.

62. brave] fine.

67-9. waiting... court... suits] (a)

Prince. For obtaining of suits?

Fal. Yea, for obtaining of suits, whereof the hangman 70
hath no lean wardrobe. 'Sblood, I am as melancholy
as a gib cat, or a lugged bear.

Prince. Or an old lion, or a lover's lute.

Fal. Yea, or the drone of a Lincolnshire bagpipe.

Prince. What sayest thou to a hare, or the melancholy of 75
Moor-ditch?

71. 'Sblood] *Qq*; not in *F*.

being a suitor in the royal court for preferment; (*b*) waiting about the law-court for the felon's robes, which were the hangman's perquisite: cf. Brome (*Shepherd*, vol. 1), *Mad Couple well Match'd* (p. 5)—"I will do some notorious death-deserving thing (though these cloaths goe to th' Hangman for't), what care I?" The "waiting-suits" jest was traditional; cf. John Heywood's *Epigrammes* (5th Hundred, 156), and Tilley, S962—"Suits hang half a year in Westminster Hall; at Tyburn half an hour's hanging ends all".

72. *gib cat*] *OED*, "Gib 2. A male cat . . . in later dialectal use, one that has been castrated". The cat's melancholy was proverbial, perhaps because of its mournful outcries; cf. Tilley, C129. Mr J. C. Maxwell sends me a note: "A pleasant appearance of the melancholy cat is in [Dekker,] 1 *Honest Whore* (Bowers), II. i. 131-2—'now you looke like an old he cat, going to the gallows' ". He wonders if there were a proverbial connection between cats and gallows. I can trace none, but Dr Harold Brooks reminds me that dogs were certainly hanged for misbehaviour—"Let gallows gape for dog, let man go free" (*H5*, III. vi. 44).

lugged] baited.

73. *old lion*] The forlorn expression of ageing lions might strike visitors to the royal menagerie at the Tower of London: in 1598 Hentzner saw one named Edward VI, born in that king's reign.

74. *drone*] Steevens and others show

that "Lincolnshire bagpipe" was applied to frogs and bitterns. But frogs croak and bitterns boom, so they are ruled out by "drone" ("At once the bass-pipe and its single note"—Wilson, N.C.S.). In Shakespeare's day the English bagpipe seems to have been associated with Lancs. and Lincs.; Robert Armin describes Christmas festivities where "a noyse of minstrells and a Lincolnshire bagpipe was prepared" (*Nest of Ninnies*, 1608, Sh. Soc. ed., 9). Drayton has "And *Bells and Bag-pipes* next belong to *Lincolne-shire*" (*Poly-Olb.*, xxiii. 266).

75. *hare*] "One of the moste melancholike beastes that is" (Turbervile, *Booke of Hunting*, 1575, 160). Kittredge cites Alanus de Insulis, *De Planctu Naturae*, in the 12th c. to the same effect (*Anglo-Lat. Satir. Poets*, ed. T. Wright, 1872, II. 442). Tilley, H151, gives proverbial references.

76. *Moor-ditch*] Between Bishopsgate and Cripplegate, "a very narrow, and the same a filthy channel" (Stow, *Survey*, 'The Town Ditch'). It was associated with melancholy; Malone quotes John Taylor's *Pennyles Pilgrimage*, 1618, 129—"moody, muddy, Moore-ditch melancholy"; Kittredge refers to *The Penniless Parliament of Threadbare Poets*, 1608 (ed. C. Hindley, *Old Book Collector's Miscellany*, 1872, II. 3)—"all such as buys this book, and laughs not at it, before he has read it over, shall be condemned of melancholy, and be adjudged to walk in Moorfields, twice a week".

Fal. Thou hast the most unsavoury similes, and art indeed the most comparative rascalli-est sweet young prince. But Hal, I prithee trouble me no more with vanity. I would to God thou and I knew where a commodity of good names were to be bought: an old lord of the Council rated me the other day in the street about you, sir, but I marked him not, and yet he talked very wisely, but I regarded him not, and yet he talked wisely, and in the street too.

Prince. Thou didst well, for wisdom cries out in the streets and no man regards it.

Fal. O, thou hast damnable iteration, and art indeed able to corrupt a saint: thou hast done much harm upon me, Hal, God forgive thee for it: before I knew thee, Hal, I knew nothing, and now am I, if a man should speak truly, little better than one of the wicked. I must give over this life, and I will give it over: by the Lord, and I do not I am a villain, I'll be damned for never a king's son in Christendom.

Prince. Where shall we take a purse tomorrow, Jack?

Fal. 'Zounds, where thou wilt, lad, I'll make one; an I do not, call me villain and baffle me.

77. similes] *Q5*; smiles *Qq1-4, F.* 78. rascalli-est] *Qq1-3*; rascal-est *Qq4, 5, F.*
80. to God] *Qq*; not in *F.* 86-7. wisdom . . . and] *Qq*; not in *F.* 89. upon] *Q1*;
vnto *Qq2-5, F.* 91. am I] *Qq*; I am *F.* 93-4. by the Lord] *Qq*; not in *F.*
97. 'Zounds] *Qq*; not in *F.*

78. *comparative*] fertile in (insulting) comparisons; cf. iii. ii. 67, and *LLL.*, v. ii. 852—"Full of comparisons and wounding flouts".

79-85. *But Hal . . . too*] "*Fal.* adopts the Scriptural style of the sanctimonious Puritan" (Hemingway, *New Var.*).

81. *commodity*] supply. *The Discouerie of the Knights of the Poste*, 1597, has "it were well, if they knew where a good commodetie of names were to be sould" (sig. C1r).

86-7. *wisdom . . . it*] *Prov.*, i. 20, 24—"Wisedome cryeth without, and putteth forth her voyce in the streetes"; "Because I haue called, and ye refused, I haue stretched out

my hande, and no man regarded".

88. *damnable iteration*] "a wicked trick of repeating and applying holy texts" (Johnson).

92. *the wicked*] *Fal.* mimics Puritan idiom: cf. Overbury's *Characters*, *A Button-Maker of Amsterdame*—"most of the wicked (as hee calles them) be there . . ."; and Butler's *Hudibras*, ii. ii. 251-2—"She's of the Wicked, as I guess / B'her looks, her language, and her dress".

98. *baffle*] To baffle was to degrade a perjured knight by hanging him, or his effigy, or his shield, upside down; cf. Spenser, *F.Q.*, vi. vii. 27—"He by the heeles him hung vpon a tree, / And baffuld so that all which passed by, /

Prince. I see a good amendment of life in thee, from
praying to purse-taking. 100

Fal. Why, Hal, 'tis my vocation, Hal, 'tis no sin for a
man to labour in his vocation.

Enter POINS.

Poins!—Now shall we know if Gadshill have set a
match. O, if men were to be saved by merit, what
hole in hell were hot enough for him? This is the 105
most omnipotent villain that ever cried "Stand!"
to a true man.

Prince. Good morrow, Ned.

Poins. Good morrow, sweet Hal. What says Monsieur
Remorse? What says Sir John Sack—and Sugar? 110
Jack! how agrees the devil and thee about thy soul,

102. S.D.] *Qq*; not in *F*. 103. Poins!—] *Q1* (Poynes), *Q2* (Poynes), *Q3* (Poines); *Poines*. / *Qq4,5* (as speech prefix); *Pointz*. / *F* (as speech prefix). 104. match] *Qq*; Watch *F*. 110–11. Sack—and Sugar? Jack!] *Cowl & Morgan*; Sacke, and Sugar Iacke? *Qq1–4*; *Sacke and Sugar*, Iacke? *Q5*; Sacke and Sugar: Iacke? *F*; Sack-and-Sugar? Jack! *Rowe*.

The picture of his punishment might see".

99. *amendment of life*] More Biblical idiom, from the Geneva version (*Matt.*, iii. 8, *Luke*, xv. 7, *Acts*, xxvi. 20) and the Communion Service, Litany, and *Homily on Repentance* (Noble, 61).

102. *to labour . . . vocation*] *I Cor.*, vii. 20 (Geneva)—"let euerie man abide in the same vocation wherein he was called", a text often echoed by Protestant divines. Noble (70) cites the *Homily against Idleness*—"so every one . . . ought . . . to exercise himself, according to the vocation, whereunto God hath called him". Nashe, like Fal., equates robbery with an honest living—"He held it as lawful for hym (since al labouring in a man's vocation is but getting) to gette wealth as wel with his sword by the High-way side, as the Laborer with his Spade or Mattocke" (*Christes Teares*, 1593; McKerrow, ii. 64).

103. *Gadshill*] This is the thief Cut-

bert Cutter's nickname in *F.V.* (ii. 67), from the scene of his exploits. Shakespeare accepts it as a proper name.

103–4. *set a match*] Thieves' cant: = "plan a robbery".

104. *by merit*] "i.e. by works, not faith" (Wilson, N.C.S.). *OED*, "Merit *sb.* 3b.—*spec.* in theology, the quality, in actions or persons, of being entitled to reward from God".

106. *omnipotent*] Used humorously = "unparalleled". Nashe has "more boystrous and cumbersome than a payre of *Swissers* omnipotent galeaze breeches" (*Haue with you*, McKerrow, iii. 35).

107. *true*] honest; cf. *F.V.*—"Theefe: It is not too late for true men to walke. *Law[rence]*: We know thee not to be a true man" (ii. 77–8).

110–11. *Sack—and Sugar? Jack*] *Qq1–4*'s "*Sacke*, and *Sugar Iacke*?" is all but impossible (though M. Mahood, *Sh.'s Wordplay*, 1957, 15, thinks it means "Sack-and-sugar Tankard"—*OED*

that thou soldest him on Good Friday last, for a cup of Madeira and a cold capon's leg?

Prince. Sir John stands to his word, the devil shall have his bargain, for he was never yet a breaker of proverbs: he will give the devil his due. 115

Poins. Then art thou damned for keeping thy word with the devil.

Prince. Else he had been damned for cozening the devil.

Poins. But my lads, my lads, tomorrow morning, by 120
four o'clock early at Gad's Hill, there are pilgrims going to Canterbury with rich offerings, and traders riding to London with fat purses. I have vizards for you all; you have horses for yourselves. Gadshill lies tonight in Rochester, I have bespoke 125
supper tomorrow night in Eastcheap: we may do it as secure as sleep. If you will go, I will stuff your purses full of crowns: if you will not, tarry at home and be hanged.

Fal. Hear ye, Yedward, if I tarry at home and go not, 130
I'll hang you for going.

Poins. You will, chops?

119. had been] *Qq*; had *F*. 126. tomorrow night] *Qq*; to morrow *F*.

has "Jack . . . 20. A quarter of a pint"). Yet the comma suggests an inflection which allows "sack" to quibble on (a) sack-cloth (following Remorse); (b) sherry; (c) the "stuffed cloak-bag of guts". As for sack-and-sugar, Simon Eyre equates it with old age—"lets be merry whiles we are yong, olde age, sacke and sugar will steale vpon vs ere we be aware" (*Shoemaker's Holiday*, iii. iii. 22-3; Bowers, i. 55). Lyly, *Mother Bombie*, ii. v. 52, writes "Without wine and sugar his veins wold waxe colde", and sack is "that which doth an old man good" *ibid.*, ii. v. 14; Bond, iii. 193-4.

112. *Good Friday*] The strictest of fasts, to elude which Fal. would go to any lengths. Wilson (N.C.S.) quotes *John*, i. i. 234-5—"Sir Robert might have eat his part in me Upon Good-Friday and ne'er broke his fast".

115-16. *he was . . . due*] "Give every-

one his due" was proverbial (Tilley, D634).

119. *cozening*] cheating.

121. *Gad's Hill*] I follow Wilson's spelling (N.C.S.) to distinguish the place from the man. On the London road two miles N.W. of Rochester, it was notorious for robberies. *F.V.*'s thief is "a taking fellow / Vpon Gads hill in Kent" (ii. 69-70); cf. Dekker & Webster, *West-ward Hoe*, ii. ii. 226 (Bowers, ii. 343)—"the way lies ouer Gads-hill, very dangerous".

124. *vizards*] "High-Pads . . . have a Vizor-Mask, and two or three Perukes of different Colours and Make, the better to conceal themselves" (Bailey).

126. *Eastcheap*] Cf. ll. 39-40, note.

130. *Yedward*] Dialectal for Edward.

132. *chops*] "Fafelu . . . *Puffed vp; fat cheeked; a chops*" (Cotgrave). "You whoreson chops" is Doll's characteristic endearment at 2*H4*, ii. iv. 234.

Fal. Hal, wilt thou make one?

Prince. Who, I rob? I a thief? Not I, by my faith.

Fal. There's neither honesty, manhood, nor good fellowship in thee, nor thou cam'st not of the blood royal, if thou darest not stand for ten shillings. 135

Prince. Well then, once in my days I'll be a madcap.

Fal. Why, that's well said.

Prince. Well, come what will, I'll tarry at home. 140

Fal. By the Lord, I'll be a traitor then, when thou art king.

Prince. I care not.

Poins. Sir John, I prithee leave the Prince and me alone:
I will lay him down such reasons for this adventure 145
that he shall go.

Fal. Well, God give thee the spirit of persuasion, and him the ears of profiting, that what thou speakest may move, and what he hears may be believed, that the true prince may (for recreation sake) prove 150
a false thief, for the poor abuses of the time want countenance. Farewell, you shall find me in Eastcheap.

Prince. Farewell, the latter spring! Farewell, All-hallown summer! [Exit Falstaff.] 155

134. by my faith] *Qq*; not in *F.* 141. By the Lord] *Qq*; not in *F.* 147-
8. God give thee . . . him] *Qq*; maist thou haue . . . he *F.* 155. S.D.] *F2*;
not in *Qq*, *F1*.

134. *I rob?*] Virtuous indignation rather belied by l. 96.

137. *royal . . . ten shillings*] A royal was worth 10s. "Stand for" = (a) be worth; (b) make a fight for.

147-9. *God . . . move*] More Puritan parody; Nashe, *Anat. of Absurditie* (McKerrow, i. 22), has "they will make men beleue, they doe nothing where-to the Spirit dooth not perswade them", and Jonson, *Alch.*, iii. i. 48-9 (H. & S., v. 342), "*Ananias*: The motion's good, / And of the spirit".

150. *recreation sake*] A frequent usage; see Abbott, 31, and "sport sake", "credit sake" (ii. i. 69, 71), "safety sake" (v. i. 65).

154. *the latter spring*] Pope and other

edds. change to "thou", but the vocative definite article is found in the 16th c.; cf. 3*H6*, v. v. 38—"Take that, the likeness of this railer here" (King Edward, stabbing Prince Edward), and *Lr.*, i. i. 271-2—"The jewels of our father . . . / Cordelia leaves you". The phrase means the youth or Indian summer of old age; Mr J. C. Maxwell refers me to Middleton, *Honourable Entertainments* (Mal. Soc., 1953, *Entertainment viii*, 175-6)—"That in this latter Spring of your graue yeares, / You may be greene in Vertues" (addressed to the Lord Mayor and Aldermen).

154-5. *All-hallown summer*] *OED*, "A season of fine weather in the late

Poins. Now, my good sweet honey lord, ride with us to-morrow. I have a jest to execute that I cannot manage alone. Falstaff, Bardolph, Peto, and Gads-hill shall rob those men that we have already way-laid—yourself and I will not be there: and when they have the booty, if you and I do not rob them, cut this head off from my shoulders. 160

Prince. How shall we part with them in setting forth?

Poins. Why, we will set forth before or after them, and appoint them a place of meeting, wherein it is at our pleasure to fail; and then will they adventure upon the exploit themselves, which they shall have no sooner achieved but we'll set upon them. 165

Prince. Yea, but 'tis like that they will know us by our horses, by our habits, and by every other appointment to be ourselves. 170

Poins. Tut, our horses they shall not see, I'll tie them in the wood; our vizards we will change after we leave them; and sirrah, I have cases of buckram for the nonce, to immask our noted outward garments. 175

Prince. Yea, but I doubt they will be too hard for us.

Poins. Well, for two of them, I know them to be as true-bred cowards as ever turned back; and for the third, if he fight longer than he sees reason, I'll forswear arms. The virtue of this jest will be the incomprehensible lies that this same fat rogue will 180

158. Bardolph, Peto] *Theobald*; Haruey, Rossill *QqF*. 162. head off] *Qq1,2*; head *Qq3-5,F*. 163. How] *Qq*; But how *F*. 169. Yea] *Qq*; *IF*. 176. Yea, but] *Qq*; But *F*. 181. this same] *Qq1-4*; this *Q5,F*.

autumn [about 1 Nov., All Saints' Day]; also *fig.* brightness or beauty lingering or reappearing in old age". In similar reference to Fal.'s autumnal mellowness *Poins* in 2*H4*, II. ii. 112, calls him "martlemas" (St Martin's day, 11 Nov.).

158. *Bardolph, Peto*] *QqF*'s "Haruey, Rossill", *Qq*'s speech-prefix "*Ross.*" (II. iv. 172, 174, 178), and *Q 2H4*'s entry-direction "Sir Iohn Russel" (II. ii), are probably original names (though not found in *F.V.*), elsewhere changed when Oldcastle became Fal.

159-60. *waylaid*] set an ambush for. 170-1. *appointment*] accoutrement.

174. *sirrah*] "A form of *sir* used in familiar address. *Poins* is treating the Prince as a comrade" (Kittredge).

174-5. *cases . . . nonce*] rough cloth suits for the occasion.

176. *doubt*] fear.

180-1. *incomprehensible*] beyond "comprehension", or bounds. *OED* quotes *Book of Common Prayer*, 1548—"The father incomprehensible, the sonne incomprehensible: and the holy gost incomprehensible". Nashe writes

tell us when we meet at supper, how thirty at least
he fought with, what wards, what blows, what
extremities he endured; and in the reproof of this
lives the jest.

185

Prince. Well, I'll go with thee; provide us all things
necessary, and meet me tomorrow night in East-
cheap; there I'll sup. Farewell.

Poins. Farewell, my lord.

Exit.

Prince. I know you all, and will awhile uphold

190

The unyok'd humour of your idleness.

Yet herein will I imitate the sun,

Who doth permit the base contagious clouds

To smother up his beauty from the world,

That, when he please again to be himself,

195

Being wanted he may be more wonder'd at

By breaking through the foul and ugly mists

Of vapours that did seem to strangle him.

If all the year were playing holidays,

To sport would be as tedious as to work;

200

But when they seldom come, they wish'd-for come,

185. lives] *Q1*; lyes *Qq2-5, F.* 189. S.D.] *QqF* (*Exit Poines. or Exit Pointz.*),
Dyce.

of "the incomprehensible corpulence" of a book (*Haue with You*, McKerrow, iii. 35).

183. *wards*] postures of defence.

184. *reproof*] disproof.

187. *tomorrow night*] They are to meet at Gad's Hill in the morning, but Shakespeare's mind is so intent on Fal.'s fabrications that it jumps ahead to tomorrow's supper, not tonight's.

190-212. *I know . . . I will*] Johnson's excellent comment points out that this speech combines a functional, expository purpose with an apparently "natural picture" of Hal's mind. "This speech is very artfully introduced to keep the prince from appearing vile in the opinion of the audience: it prepares them for his future reformation, and, what is yet more valuable, exhibits a natural picture of a great mind offering excuses to itself, and palliating those follies which

it can neither justify nor forsake".

191. *unyok'd humour*] unbridled inclination.

192. *the sun*] Traditional symbol of royalty.

193. *contagious clouds*] "Pestilence was thought to be generated in fog, mist, and clouds" (Kittredge): cf. *MND.*, II. i. 90—"contagious fogs"; and "armies of pestilence" in the clouds (*R2*, III. iii. 87). T. W. Baldwin points out echoes of sonnet xxxiii—"Anon permit the basest clouds to ride / With ugly rack on his celestial face, / And from the forlorn world his visage hide", and of sonnet xxxiv—"To let base clouds o'ertake me in my way, / Hiding thy bravery in their rotten smoke" (*On the Lit. Genetics of Sh.'s Sonnets*, 1950, 235).

198. *strangle*] stifle, eclipse; cf. *Mac.*, II. iv. 7—"And yet dark night strangles the travelling lamp".

And nothing pleaseth but rare accidents:
 So when this loose behaviour I throw off,
 And pay the debt I never promised,
 By how much better than my word I am, 205
 By so much shall I falsify men's hopes;
 And like bright metal on a sullen ground,
 My reformation, glitt'ring o'er my fault,
 Shall show more goodly, and attract more eyes
 Than that which hath no foil to set it off. 210
 I'll so offend, to make offence a skill,
 Redeeming time when men think least I will. *Exit.*

[SCENE III.—*Windsor. The Council Chamber.*]

*Enter the KING, NORTHUMBERLAND, WORCESTER, HOTSPUR,
 SIR WALTER BLUNT, with others.*

King. My blood hath been too cold and temperate,
 Unapt to stir at these indignities,
 And you have found me—for accordingly
 You tread upon my patience: but be sure
 I will from henceforth rather be myself, 5
 Mighty, and to be fear'd, than my condition,
 Which hath been smooth as oil, soft as young down,
 And therefore lost that title of respect

210. foil] *Qq* 1-3 (foile); soile *Qq* 4,5; soyle *F.* 212. S.D.] *Qq*; not in *F.*

Scene III

SCENE III.] *F* (*Scæna Tertia.*); not in *Qq.* Location.] Halliwell (*Windsor. A Room in the Palace.*), Wilson (*N.C.S.*). S.D. with] *Qq*; and *F.*

202. *rare accidents*] the exceptional and unexpected; cf. sonnet lii—"Therefore are feasts so solemn and so rare, / Since, seldom coming, in the long year set, / Like stones of worth they thinly placed are". For a further possible echo of this sonnet see iii. ii. 58, note.

206. *hopes*] *OED*, "Hope. †3. Expectation (without implication of desire. *Obs.*)."

207. *sullen ground*] dull background

(with mental gloom also implied). 212. *Redeeming time*] Making amends for wasted time. Biblical; cf. *Ephes.*, v. 16—"Redeeming the tyme, because ye dayes are euyl".

Scene III

Location.] This meeting Shakespeare, following Hol., indicates to be at Windsor; cf. i. i. 103.

3. *found me*] found me so.

6. *condition*] natural disposition.

Which the proud soul ne'er pays but to the proud.

Wor. Our house, my sovereign liege, little deserves 10

The scourge of greatness to be us'd on it,
And that same greatness too which our own hands
Have help to make so portly.

North. My lord,—

King. Worcester, get thee gone, for I do see
Danger and disobedience in thine eye: 15

O sir, your presence is too bold and peremptory,
And majesty might never yet endure
The moody frontier of a servant brow.

You have good leave to leave us; when we need
Your use and counsel we shall send for you. 20

Exit Worcester.

[*To North.*] You were about to speak.

North. Yea, my good lord.

Those prisoners in your Highness' name demanded,
Which Harry Percy here at Holmedon took,
Were, as he says, not with such strength deny'd
As is deliver'd to your Majesty. 25

Either envy therefore, or misprision,
Is guilty of this fault, and not my son.

Hot. My liege, I did deny no prisoners,
But I remember, when the fight was done,

20. S.D.] *Qq*; *not in F.* 21. S.D.] *Rowe*; *not in QqF.* 22. Highness' name] *Qq*; Highnesse *F.* 24. deny'd] *Rowe*; denied *QqF.* 25. is] *Qq1-4*; he *Q5*; was *F.* deliver'd] *Rowe*; deliuered *QqF.* 26. Either envy therefore] *Qq*; Who either through enuy *F.* 27. Is] *Qq*; Was *F.*

12-13. *our . . . portly*] The Percys were among Henry's first supporters on his return from exile. Cf. i. iii. 158, iv. iii. 54, v. i. 33, and *R2*, ii. iii. "Portly" is trisyllabic, cf. i. i. 71 note; it = "stately", as in Spenser, *F.Q.*, iii. ii. 24—"Portly his person was and much increast, / Through his Heroick grace, and honorable gest".

18. *moody . . . brow*] angry defiance of a subject's frown. "Frontier" = rampart, or border fortress, whence the sense of something formidably defiant. Like "front" (cf. iii. i. 12) or "frontlet" (*Lr.*, i. iv. 210) it can suggest the forehead and its expressions; *OED* gives

"Frontier. A.1†c. The forehead. *Obs. rare*: Stubbes, *Anat. Abus.* 1 (1877), 67, Their bolstred heir . . . standeth crested round their frontiers".

26. *envy, misprision*] malice, mistake. 28 ff.] Of this speech, of Hotspur's outbreaks about Glendower and Lady Percy, and of Faulconbridge's idiom in *John*, G. H. W. Rylands writes: "All these passages have critical significance. . . These voices demanded a new medium, verse which will allow colloquial emphases and prose order. . . Dramatic effect must war with poetic decoration" (*Sh. Criticism* 1919-35, ed. Ridler, 383-4).

When I was dry with rage, and extreme toil, 30
 Breathless and faint, leaning upon my sword,
 Came there a certain lord, neat and trimly dress'd,
 Fresh as a bridegroom, and his chin new reap'd
 Show'd like a stubble-land at harvest-home.
 He was perfumed like a milliner, 35
 And 'twixt his finger and his thumb he held
 A pouncet-box, which ever and anon
 He gave his nose, and took't away again—
 Who therewith angry, when it next came there,
 Took it in snuff—and still he smil'd and talk'd: 40
 And as the soldiers bore dead bodies by,
 He call'd them untaught knaves, unmannerly,
 To bring a slovenly unhandsome corse
 Betwixt the wind and his nobility.
 With many holiday and lady terms 45
 He question'd me, amongst the rest demanded
 My prisoners in your Majesty's behalf.
 I then, all smarting with my wounds being cold,
 To be so pester'd with a popinjay,

41. bore] *Qq*; bare *F*. 45. terms] *Qq* [terms *Qq*1.4. tearmes *Qq*2.3.5 : tearme *F*. 46. question'd] *F*; questioned *Qq*. amongst] *Qq*1.2; among *Qq*3-5,*F*. 49. pester'd] *Qq*1-4 (pestred); pestered *Q*5,*F*.

33. *reap'd*] close-clipped. Men of fashion, at the date of the play, wore close-clipped beards.

35. *perfumed . . . milliner*] A milliner dealt in haberdashery, perfumed to attract attention and originally imported from Milan. W. Rowley, *Search for Money*, 1609 (Percy Soc. ed., 17), says "the milliners threw out perfumes to catch him by the nose and . . . sweete gloves to fit his hand".

37. *pouncet-box*] small box, with perforated lid, for aromatic powder.

40. *took . . . in snuff*] (a) was incensed; (b) snuffed it up. The use of powdered tobacco as snuff is traceable to the early 1600s (cf. Hemingway, *New Var.*), but "snuffs made of herbs, aromatic and others, were us'd medicinally long enough before Henry the fourth" (Capell, *Notes*, 1779, 153).

45. *holiday*] choice, not workaday.

Cf. Lodge & Greene, *Looking-Glass for London* (Greene, *Plays & Poems*, i. 163, ll. 591-4)—"she will call me Rascall, Rogue, Runnagate, Varlet, Vagabond, Slaue, Knaue, Why, alasse sir, and these be but holi-day tearmes, but if you heard her working-day words, in faith, sir, they be ratlers like thunder, sir".

46. *question'd me*] Both "interrogated me" and "talked away to me".

49. *To be . . . popinjay*] The slight syntactical detachment of this line, which *F* puts in parentheses, reflects Hotspur's impatience. "Popinjay" = parrot, prattler; cf. *Jack Juggler* (Mal. Soc., 1933, ll. 237-8)—"She chaffeth like a Pye all daye / And speaketh like a paratt Poppagaye". Eliot's *Orthopia Gallica*, 44, has "gay as a Papingay, perke as a Sperhawke", which suggests the dandification of Hotspur's

Out of my grief and my impatience 50
 Answer'd neglectingly, I know not what,
 He should, or he should not, for he made me mad
 To see him shine so brisk, and smell so sweet,
 And talk so like a waiting-gentlewoman
 Of guns, and drums, and wounds, God save the mark!
 And telling me the sovereignest thing on earth 56
 Was parmacity for an inward bruise,
 And that it was great pity, so it was,
 This villainous saltpetre should be digg'd
 Out of the bowels of the harmless earth, 60
 Which many a good tall fellow had destroy'd
 So cowardly, and but for these vile guns
 He would himself have been a soldier.
 This bald unjointed chat of his, my lord,
 I answer'd indirectly, as I said, 65
 And I beseech you, let not his report
 Come current for an accusation
 Betwixt my love and your high Majesty.

Blunt. The circumstance consider'd, good my lord,

51. Answer'd] *Q1* (Answerd), *F*; Answered *Qq2-5*. 52. or he] *Qq*; or *F*.
 56. sovereignest] *Qq1,2,5* (soueraignest); soueraignst *Qq3,4,F* (soueraign'st *F*).
 59. This] *Qq*; That *F*. 61. destroy'd] *Qq4,5,F* (*subst.*); destroyed *Qq1-3*.
 63. himself have been] *Qq1-3,F*; haue been himselfe *Qq4,5*. 65. I answer'd]
Qq (I answered), *Pope*; Made me to answer *F*. 66. his] *Q1*; this *Qq2-5,F*.
 69. consider'd] *Rowe*; considered *QqF*.

visitor. *OED* gives "popinjay 4. *fig. b*—a type of vanity or empty conceit, in allusion to the bird's gaudy plumage, or to its mechanical repetition of words and phrases".

50. *grief*] pain; cf. v. i. 132.

54. *talk . . . waiting-gentlewoman*] "To laugh like a wayting Gentlewoman" is one of the "accoutrements" of a gallant, in Dekker's *Patient Grissil*, II. i. 67 (Bowers, I. 227).

55. *God . . . mark*] A phrase generally deprecatory or apologetic, but here indignant; cf. *Oth.*, I. i. 33—"I—God bless the mark!—his Moorship's ancient". Originally perhaps a formula invoking a blessing on the mark of the cross made to avert evil.

57. *parmacity*] The spelling "parma-

city" or "parmacity" for "spermaceti" was apparently due to a fanciful etymology from "Parma city". Thus Minsheu gives "Parmacetic, *confectio optima à Ciuitate Parmae ita dicta*". It was credited with a penetrative medicinal quality which resolved coagulated blood and hence cured inward bruises. Kittredge quotes Barnabe Riche's *Farewell to the Military Profession*, 1581 (Sh. Soc. ed., 154): "The Doctor tooke spermaceti, and suche like thynges that bee good for a bruse, and recovered hymself in a shorte space".

61. *tall*] doughty, valiant.

65. *indirectly*] inattentively.

67. *Come current*] "be accepted at its face value" (Kittredge); also, "intrude".

Whate'er Lord Harry Percy then had said 70
 To such a person, and in such a place,
 At such a time, with all the rest retold,
 May reasonably die, and never rise
 To do him wrong, or any way impeach
 What then he said, so he unsay it now. 75

King. Why, yet he doth deny his prisoners,
 But with proviso and exception,
 That we at our own charge shall ransom straight
 His brother-in-law, the foolish Mortimer,
 Who, on my soul, hath wilfully betray'd 80
 The lives of those that he did lead to fight
 Against that great magician, damn'd Glendower,
 Whose daughter, as we hear, the Earl of March
 Hath lately marry'd: shall our coffers then
 Be empty'd to redeem a traitor home? 85
 Shall we buy treason, and indent with fears
 When they have lost and forfeited themselves?
 No, on the barren mountains let him starve;
 For I shall never hold that man my friend
 Whose tongue shall ask me for one penny cost 90

70. Whate'er Lord] *Q1*; What e're *Qq2-5*; What euer *F*. 76. yet he] *Qq*;
 yet *F*. 80. on] *Qq1-2*; in *Qq3-5, F*. 82. that] *Qq1,2*; the *Qq3-5, F*. 83.
 the] *Qq2-5, F*; that *Q1*. 84. marry'd] *Rowe*; married *QqF*. 85. empty'd]
Rowe; emptied *QqF*. 88. mountains] *Q1* (mountaines); mountaine *Qq2-5, F*
 (*subst.*). starve] *Qq1-3*; sterue *Qq4,5, F*.

70-5. *Whate'er . . . said*] "Whatever he said then, in the circumstances described, should be forgotten and not cited to his harm, as proof that his words were disloyal." "Shakespeare has tied himself up in a little knot, but the sense is clear" (Wilson, N.C.S.).

79. *brother-in-law*] Hotspur married Elizabeth (though Shakespeare calls her Kate), sister of the Sir Edmund Mortimer (1376-1409) who was Glendower's captive and son-in-law (cf. l. 83).

82-3. *that great magician . . . the Earl*] *Qq* have "that" and *F* has "the" in both places. The redoubled "that"s seem too emphatic: most edd. sacrifice one, or both. The first is kept as being

Q1's reading and significantly emphasizing Glendower, and the second replaced since it probably slipped in by contagion with the other "that"s in the passage.

83-4. *Earl of March . . . marry'd*] The Edmund Mortimer who was captured and married Glendower's daughter was not in fact Earl of March, that title belonging to his nephew, a younger Edmund (1391-1425).

86. *indent*] make an agreement. *with fears*] "Fears" has both an abstract sense (parallel to "treason") and a personal one (= "cowards"): "shall we come to terms with cowardice when the cowards have given themselves up?"; see III. ii. 43, note.

To ransom home revolted Mortimer.

Hot. Revolted Mortimer!

He never did fall off, my sovereign liege,
 But by the chance of war: to prove that true
 Needs no more but one tongue for all those wounds, 95
 Those mouthed wounds, which valiantly he took,
 When on the gentle Severn's sedgy bank,
 In single opposition hand to hand,
 He did confound the best part of an hour
 In changing hardiment with great Glendower. 100
 Three times they breath'd, and three times did they
 drink

Upon agreement of swift Severn's flood,
 Who then affrighted with their bloody looks
 Ran fearfully among the trembling reeds,
 And hid his crisp head in the hollow bank, 105
 Bloodstained with these valiant combatants.
 Never did bare and rotten policy
 Colour her working with such deadly wounds,
 Nor never could the noble Mortimer
 Receive so many, and all willingly: 110
 Then let not him be slander'd with revolt.

King. Thou dost belie him, Percy, thou dost belie him,
 He never did encounter with Glendower:
 I tell thee, he durst as well have met the devil
 alone

95. tongue for] *Hanmer*; tongue: for *Qq*; tongue. For *F*. 107. bare] *Qq*; base *F*.
 111. not him] *Qq*; him not *F*. slander'd] *F* (sland'red); slandered *Qq*.
 114. thee, he] *QqF*; thee, / He *Steevens*, most later *edd*.

94-106. to prove . . . combatants]
 "These ornate lines", Wilson (N.C.S.)
 comments, "come oddly from Hot-
 spur, who speaks the contemptuous
 words of poets and poetry." But Hot-
 spur always gets worked up when
 thinking of combat (as in II. iii. 48 ff.),
 and these lines are rightly taken by
 H. T. Price ('Sh. as Critic', *PQ*, July
 1941, 391)—"When he makes Hot-
 spur say [ll. 101-6] he is telling us
 something about Hotspur—that he is a
 windy man who rants".

99. confound] consume.

100. changing hardiment] matching
 valour.

105. crisp head] Wilson (N.C.S.)
 points out the quibbles: "crisp" = (a)
 curled; (b) rippled: "head" = (a) sur-
 face; (b) pressure of water against a
 bank (*OED sb.* 17).

107. bare] wretched, beggarly (cf.
 III. ii. 13), or perhaps, as *Sisson* sug-
 gests, bare-faced.

policy] cunning.

114.] *Q1*'s lineation in this stormy
 scene includes "irregular" lines which
 it seems not only unnecessary but

As Owen Glendower for an enemy. 115
 Art thou not asham'd? But sirrah, henceforth
 Let me not hear you speak of Mortimer:
 Send me your prisoners with the speediest means,
 Or you shall hear in such a kind from me
 As will displease you. My Lord Northumberland: 120
 We license your departure with your son.
 Send us your prisoners, or you will hear of it.

Exit King[, with Blunt and train.]

Hot. And if the devil come and roar for them
 I will not send them: I will after straight
 And tell him so, for I will ease my heart, 125
 Albeit I make a hazard of my head.

North. What, drunk with choler? Stay, and pause
 awhile,
 Here comes your uncle.

[Re-]enter WORCESTER.

Hot. Speak of Mortimer?
 'Zounds, I will speak of him, and let my soul
 Want mercy if I do not join with him: 130
 Yea, on his part I'll empty all these veins,
 And shed my dear blood, drop by drop in the dust,
 But I will lift the down-trod Mortimer
 As high in the air as this unthankful King,

120. you] *Qq*; ye *F*. 122. you will] *Qq*; you'll *F*. S.D. with *Blunt and train*] *Capell* (*subst.*); not in *QqF*. 126. Albeit I make a] *Qq*; Although it be with *F*.
 128. S.D.] *Qq1-4, F* (*Enter Wor. or Enter Worcester*), *Capell*; not in *Q5*.
 129. 'Zounds] *Qq*; Yes *F*. 131. Yea, on his part] *Qq*; In his behalfe *F*. 132.
 in the] *Qq1-4*; i'th *Q5, F*. 133. down-trod] *Qq*; downfall *F*. 134. in the]
Qq1-4; in'th *Q5*; i'th *F*.

damaging to cure by setting the hypermetrical portion on a separate line, as most edd. do. Similar metrical speed and passion, through elision or irregular stress or both, occur at ll. 16, 32, 112, 116, 216, 221, and 244 in this scene, and need no smoothing.

122. *you will*] Wilson (N.C.S.) prefers *F*'s "you'll", as presumably the authentic abbreviation. But these phrases involving colloquial elision

seem to have been set up, and were perhaps written, haphazardly, and *F*, though undoubtedly representing what should be spoken, has no authority: cf. *Intro.*, pp. lxix-lxx.

123. *the devil . . . them*] An echo of 1 *Peter*, v. 8—"your aduersarie the deuyll, as a roaryng lion"; reminiscent too of the "roaring devil i' the old play" of popular drama (cf. *H5*, iv. iv. 76).

- As this ingrate and canker'd Bolingbroke. 135
North. Brother, the King hath made your nephew mad.
Wor. Who struck this heat up after I was gone?
Hot. He will forsooth have all my prisoners,
 And when I urg'd the ransom once again
 Of my wife's brother, then his cheek look'd pale, 140
 And on my face he turn'd an eye of death,
 Trembling even at the name of Mortimer.
Wor. I cannot blame him: was not he proclaim'd,
 By Richard that dead is, the next of blood?
North. He was, I heard the proclamation: 145
 And then it was, when the unhappy King
 (Whose wrongs in us God pardon!) did set forth
 Upon his Irish expedition;
 From whence he, intercepted, did return
 To be depos'd, and shortly murdered. 150
Wor. And for whose death we in the world's wide mouth
 Live scandaliz'd and foully spoken of.
Hot. But soft, I pray you, did King Richard then
 Proclaim my brother Edmund Mortimer
 Heir to the crown?
North. He did, myself did hear it. 155
Hot. Nay, then I cannot blame his cousin King,
 That wish'd him on the barren mountains starve.
 But shall it be that you that set the crown
 Upon the head of this forgetful man,

135. Bolingbroke] *QqF* (Bullingbrooke), *Pope*. 143. not he] *Qq*; he not *F*.
 150. murdered] *Qq*; murdered *F*. 154. brother Edmund] *Q1*; brother *Qq2-5, F*. 157. starve] *Qq*; staru'd *F*.

135. *canker'd Bolingbroke*] rotten at heart. Bolingbroke, spelt Bullen- or Bullingbrook(e) in *Hol.* and *QqF*, is pronounced Bollinbrook.

141. *an eye of death*] Either "an eye menacing death" (Johnson) or "an eye of mortal fear" (Kittredge). There are parallels to the former sense (e.g. *Cor.*, III. iii. 69—"Within thine eyes sat twenty thousand deaths"), but the latter seems right for the context; cf. the king's alleged pallor at III. i. 8.

144. *the next of blood*] The same con-

fusion as before (ll. 79, 83-4). The proclaimed heirs were (a) Roger Mortimer, Earl of March; (b) on Roger's death (1398) his son Edmund, Earl of March. Hotspur's "brother Edmund Mortimer" (l. 154) was, as aforesaid, this Edmund's uncle, not the heir; and the heir himself, at III. i. 190, refers to Hotspur's wife as "my aunt Percy".

147. *Whose . . . us*] the wrongs we inflicted on whom.

149. *intercepted*] interrupted.

154. *my brother*] Cf. l. 144, note.

And for his sake wear the detested blot 160
 Of murderous subornation—shall it be
 That you a world of curses undergo,
 Being the agents, or base second means,
 The cords, the ladder, or the hangman rather?
 —O, pardon me, that I descend so low, 165
 To show the line and the predicament
 Wherein you range under this subtle King!
 Shall it for shame be spoken in these days,
 Or fill up chronicles in time to come,
 That men of your nobility and power 170
 Did gage them both in an unjust behalf
 (As both of you, God pardon it, have done)
 To put down Richard, that sweet lovely rose,
 And plant this thorn, this canker Bolingbroke?
 And shall it in more shame be further spoken, 175
 That you are fool'd, discarded, and shook off
 By him for whom these shames ye underwent?
 No, yet time serves wherein you may redeem
 Your banish'd honours, and restore yourselves
 Into the good thoughts of the world again: 180
 Revenge the jeering and disdain'd contempt
 Of this proud King, who studies day and night

160. wear] *Qq*; wore *F*. 165. me] *Qq* 1-4; if *Q* 5, *F*.

161. *murderous subornation*] aiding and abetting murder.

162-7. *That you . . . King*] Cf. Intro., p. lxii.

166-7. *line . . . predicament . . . range*] The surface sense is "degree and category in which you are ranked". For "line" as "degree" *OED* "Line. *sb.* †18. Degree, rank, station" cites "Skiparis and seruandis of euery line" from *Extracts Abord. Reg.*, 1526. "Predicament" was originally a logicians' term for a category of objects, a "classification". But the passage illustrates the richness of Shakespeare's meanings: "line" carries from l. 164 implications of hangman's rope, and "predicament" suggests its modern sense of "dangerous situation": cf.

Mer. V., iv. i. 358—"In which predicament [i.e. danger of death], I say, thou stand'st".

171. *gage them both*] pledge their nobility and power.

174. *canker*] *OED* gives "Canker †5. An inferior kind of rose: the dog-rose". Shades of meaning from "canker" as "canker-worm" (which destroys plants) and as "ulcer" are probably present. The imagery in ll. 173-4 is characteristically biased.

181. *disdain'd*] disdainful. This form is here not participial but = "characterized by"; cf. "the guiled shore | To a most dangerous sea" (*Mer. V.*, iii. ii. 97-8) and "some distressed stroke" (*Ork.*, Q, i. iii. 157, where *F* has "distressefulle").

To answer all the debt he owes to you,
Even with the bloody payment of your deaths:
Therefore, I say—

Wor. Peace, cousin, say no more. 185

And now I will unclasp a secret book,
And to your quick-conceiving discontents
I'll read you matter deep and dangerous,
As full of peril and adventurous spirit
As to o'er-walk a current roaring loud 190
On the unsteadfast footing of a spear.

Hot. If he fall in, good night, or sink, or swim!
Send danger from the east unto the west,
So honour cross it from the north to south,
And let them grapple: O, the blood more stirs 195
To rouse a lion than to start a hare!

North. Imagination of some great exploit
Drives him beyond the bounds of patience.

183. to you] *Qq1-4*; you *Q5*; vnto you *F*. 188. you] *Qq1-4, F*; your *Q5*.
195. O, the] *Qq1-4*; the *Q5, F*.

183-4. *debt . . . deaths*] This word-play (cf. v. i. 126-7) occurs as early as the first Engl. trans. of *De Imit. Christi* (c. 1400, EETS, Extra ser., lxiii, 1893, 88)—“gode menne þat payed her dette of holy depe”.

189-91. *As full . . . spear*] This, like 2*H4*, i. i. 170-1 (“You knew he walk’d o’er perils, on an edge, / More likely to fall in than to get o’er”), refers to the “perilous bridge” or “sword-bridge” of medieval romances. In *Mabinogion* (‘Kilwch and Olwen’, Everyman Lib., 103), “Osla Gyllellvawr . . . bore a short broad dagger” which, laid over a torrent, “would form a bridge sufficient for the armies of . . . Britain”. Lancelot, Dr Harold Brooks points out to me, crosses a dangerous bridge in Chrétien de Troyes (*Erec and Enid*, Everyman Library, 308-9)—“The bridge across the cold stream consisted of a polished gleaming sword; but the sword was stout and stiff, and was as long as two lances. At each end there was a tree-trunk in which the

sword was firmly fixed. . . [He] preferred to maim himself rather than fall from the bridge and be plunged in the water . . . [so] he passes over with great pain and agony, being wounded in the hands, knees and feet”. See also H. R. Patch, *The Other World*, 1950, for sword-bridge refs. and illustration facing p. 306.

192. *If . . . swim*] “A man falling in such an adventure is doomed, whether he sink or swim: let us salute his passing.”

196. *To rouse . . . hare*] “Rouse” and “start” were hunting terms, the latter for the hare, the former for bigger game. Turberville, *Booke of Hunting*, 1575, writes “We . . . Vnherbor a Harte, we . . . rowse a Bucke . . . ; we . . . starte a Hare; we . . . bolt a Conie . . . ; we . . . vnkenell a Fox” (239); and Lyly, *Midas*, iv. iii. 47-8 (Bond, iii. 148), has “thou shouldest say, start a hare, rowse the deere, spring the partridge”. Hotspur’s idiom is typically energetic.

[*Hot.*] By heaven, methinks it were an easy leap
 To pluck bright honour from the pale-fac'd moon, 200
 Or dive into the bottom of the deep,
 Where fathom-line could never touch the ground,
 And pluck up drowned honour by the locks,
 So he that doth redeem her thence might wear
 Without corrival all her dignities: 205
 But out upon this half-fac'd fellowship!

Wor. He apprehends a world of figures here,
 But not the form of what he should attend:
 Good cousin, give me audience for a while.

Hot. I cry you mercy.

Wor. Those same noble Scots 210
 That are your prisoners—

Hot. I'll keep them all;
 By God he shall not have a Scot of them,
 No, if a Scot would save his soul he shall not.
 I'll keep them, by this hand!

Wor. You start away,
 And lend no ear unto my purposes: 215

199. *Hot.* By] *Q5,F*; By *Qq0-4*. 209. a while] *Qq*; a-while, / And list to me *F*.
 210-11. Those . . . Scots / That . . . prisoners—] *As F*; Those . . . Scots that . . .
 prisoners *Qq*. 212. God] *Qq*; heauen *F*.

199-205. *By heaven . . . dignities*] Hotspur's extravagance is indicated by an oration in Eracles' vein, popularized by Shakespeare's early contemporaries. Cf. Marlowe, 1 *Tamb.*, iv. iv. 17-19—"Ye Furies . . . / Dive to the bottom of Avernus' pool, / And in your hands bring hellish poison up"; Greene, *Frier Bacon*, ll. 1537-8 (*Plays & Poems*, ii. 61)—"thou knowest I haue diued into hell / And sought the darkest pallaces of fiendes"; *Tit.*, iv. iii. 43-4—"I'll dive into the burning lake below, / And pull her out of Acheron by the heels".

205. *corrival*] partner, associate, as in iv. 31.

206. *half-fac'd fellowship*] skimpy sharing of honours. Hotspur wants them all himself. *OED* defines "half-faced" at 2*H4*, iii. ii. 286 ("this same

half-faced fellow, Shadow"), as "Of a coin, having a profile stamped upon it; hence of persons, having a thin, pinched face", and, as used here, "imperfect, incomplete, half-and-half".

207. *apprehends*] snatches at.

figures] "Figure is here used equivocally. As it is applied to Hotspur's speech it is a rhetorical mode [i.e. it = figures of speech]; as opposed to *form* it means appearance or shape" (Johnson).

213. *if a Scot*] A quibble on "scot", a small payment: cf. v. iv. 113, note. On the phrase "We will not lose a Scot" Fuller comments "That is, we will lose nothing, how inconsiderable soever. . . . This Proverb began in the *English borders*, when . . . they had little esteem of, and less affection for, a *Scotch-man*" (*Worthies*, 1662, ii. 303).

Those prisoners you shall keep—

Hot.

Nay, I will: that's flat!

He said he would not ransom Mortimer,
Forbade my tongue to speak of Mortimer,
But I will find him when he lies asleep,
And in his ear I'll holla "Mortimer!"

220

Nay, I'll have a starling shall be taught to speak
Nothing but "Mortimer", and give it him
To keep his anger still in motion.

Wor. Hear you, cousin, a word.

Hot. All studies here I solemnly defy,

225

Save how to gall and pinch this Bolingbroke:
And that same sword-and-buckler Prince of Wales,
But that I think his father loves him not,
And would be glad he met with some mischance—
I would have him poison'd with a pot of ale!

230

Wor. Farewell, kinsman: I'll talk to you

When you are better temper'd to attend.

220. holla] *F*; hollow *Qq* 0-2; hollo *Qq* 3-4; hallow *Q* 5. 221. Nay, I'll] *Qq* *F*; Nay, / I'll *Steevens*, many later edd. 230. him poison'd] *Qq* (him poisoned), *Pope*; poyson'd him *F*. 232. temper'd] *Qq* 0, *F*; tempered *Qq* 2-5.

220. And . . . "Mortimer!"] An echo of Marlowe, *Ed. 2*, ii. ii. 125-7—"Mor. jun.: Cousin, and if he will not ransom him, / I'll thunder such a peal into his ears / As never subject did unto his king".

221. Nay, . . . speak] Many edd. make "Nay" a separate line, but this is just like the colloquially slurred "Nay, I will" of l. 216 or "Why, it cannot choose" of l. 273, and suggests Hotspur's velocity; cf. note on l. 114.

starling] Elizabethan texts have many talking starlings: e.g. Florio's *Montaigne*, ii. xii (Tudor Trans., ii. 159)—"We teach Blacke-birds, Starlins, . . . to chat"; and Drayton, *The Owle* (l. 634)—"Like a *Starling*, that is taught to prate".

225. All . . . defy] I . . . renounce all concerns.

227. sword-and-buckler] swashbuckling. Cf. *Tarlton's Jests* (W. C. Hazlitt, *Sh. Jest-Books*, 1864, ii. 197)—"Not

long since lived a little swaggerer, called Blacke Davie, who would at sword and buckler fight with any gentleman or other for twelve pence". Hal's tastes, Hotspur implies, are plebeian: when Shakespeare was a boy, gentlemen began to adopt the rapier instead of the sword, which was retained by serving-men. Kittredge cites *Quarrel between Hall and Mallerie*, c. 1580 (*Miscellanea Antiqua Anglicana*, 1816, 13)—"Mallerie drew his rapier, and bad his man take him to his sword and buckler". Cf. also Porter, *Two Angry Women of Abington*, 1599 (Mal. Soc., 1912, ll. 729-30)—"Wher's your blew coate, your sword and buckler, sir? / Get you such like habite for a servingman". Cf. ii. iv. 165-6, note.

230. pot of ale] i.e. Hal's drinking habits too are plebeian.

231. Farewell . . . you] With a rolled "r" and a glided "I'll" this is passably metrical, and certainly expressive.

- North.* Why, what a wasp-stung and impatient fool
 Art thou to break into this woman's mood,
 Tying thine ear to no tongue but thine own! 235
- Hot.* Why, look you, I am whipp'd and scourg'd with rods,
 Nettled, and stung with pismires, when I hear
 Of this vile politician Bolingbroke.
 In Richard's time—what do you call the place?
 A plague upon it, it is in Gloucestershire— 240
 'Twas where the mad-cap Duke his uncle kept,
 His uncle York—where I first bow'd my knee
 Unto this king of smiles, this Bolingbroke,
 'Sblood, when you and he came back from Ravenspurgh.
- North.* At Berkeley castle. 245
- Hot.* You say true.
 Why, what a candy deal of courtesy
 This fawning greyhound then did proffer me!

233. wasp-stung] *Qq* 0,1; waspe-tongue *Qq* 2-5; Waspe-tongu'd *F.* 236. whipp'd] *Qq* 1-5, *F.* (whipt); whip *Q* 0. 239. do you] *Qq*; de'ye *F.* 240. upon it] *Qq*; vpon't *F.* 242. bow'd] *F.*; bowed *Qq*. 244. 'Sblood, when] *Qq*; When *F.*; 'Sblood! / When *Cambr.* 247. candy] *Qq* 0-2; candie *Qq* 3-5; caudie *F.*

237. *Nettled*] Irritated as if stung with nettles. Hotspur's criteria of impatience are as vivid as could be desired. *pismires*] ants.

238. *politician*] A word almost always sinister in Elizabethan usage; Chapman, *Revenge of Bussy* (*Works*, 1873, ii. 119), has "This was a sleight well maskt. O what is man, / Vnless he be a Politician".

239-40. *do you call . . . upon it*] Cf. collation, note on l. 122, and Intro., p. lxx.

241. *mad-cap Duke*] Edmund Langley, Duke of York, fifth son of Edward III, is described in Hol. as "a man rather coueting to liue in pleasure, than to deale with much businesse" (ii. 831), and similarly in Hardyng's *Chronicle* (1812 ed., 340)—"Edmonde hyght of Langley of good chere, / Glad and mery . . . / When all [the] lordes to counsell and parlyament / [Went,] he wolde to hunte and also to hawe kyng, / All gentyll disporte [as to a lorde]

appent / He vsed aye". Neither *Woodstock* nor *R2*, however, shows him in the least "mad-cap", unless Shakespeare has in mind the sputtering testiness of his loyalty to Richard (*R2*, ii. ii-iii) and later to Henry (*ibid.*, v. ii-iii). The trait may be traditional.

kept] dwelt, lived.

244. 'Sblood] To make this a separate line, as some edd. do, breaks Hotspur's impetuosity, and I follow *Qq*'s rough velocity.

Ravenspurgh] The Yorkshire harbour, near Spurn Head, since submerged by the sea, where in 1399 Bolingbroke landed on returning from exile.

247. *candy deal*] sugary quantity.

248. *fawning greyhound*] The association of sticky sweetmeats and fawning treacherous dogs is frequent in Shakespeare, e.g. *Cæs.*, iii. i. 42-3—"With that which melteth fools; I mean sweet words, / Low-crooked curtsies, and base spaniel fawning";

"Look when his infant fortune came to age",
 And "gentle Harry Percy", and "kind cousin": 250
 O, the devil take such cozeners!—God forgive me!
 Good uncle, tell your tale; I have done.

Wor. Nay, if you have not, to it again,
 We will stay your leisure.

Hot. I have done, i'faith.

Wor. Then once more to your Scottish prisoners; 255
 Deliver them up without their ransom straight,
 And make the Douglas' son your only mean
 For powers in Scotland, which, for divers reasons
 Which I shall send you written, be assur'd
 Will easily be granted.—[*To North.*] You, my lord, 260
 Your son in Scotland being thus employ'd,
 Shall secretly into the bosom creep
 Of that same noble prelate well-below'd,
 The Archbishop.

Hot. Of York, is it not?

249. his] *Qq*0-2,5,*F*; this *Qq*3,4. 252. I] *Qq*; for *I F*. 253. to it] *Qq*; too't *F*.
 254. We will] *Qq*; Wee'l *F*. i'faith] *Qq*; insooth *F*. 260. granted.—[*To*
North.] You, my lord,] *Theobald*; granted you my Lord. *Qq*0,1,4; granted you,
 my Lord. *Qq*2,3,5,*F*. 261. employ'd] *F*; employed *Qq*. 264. is it] *Qq*; is't *F*.

Ham., iii. ii. 65-7—"let the candied tongue lick absurd pomp / . . . Where thrift may follow fawning"; and *Ant.*, iv. x. 33-6—"The hearts / That spaniel'd me at heels . . . / . . . do discandy, melt their sweets / On blossoming Caesar". Spurgeon thinks that Shakespeare fastidiously disliked dogs begging for sweetmeats at table and licking hands (Spurgeon, 197). There are, however, many non-Shakespearean instances of canine fawning (Cooper's *Thesaurus* defines "adulatio" as "Properly the fawning of a dogge; Flat-terie"), and of sugary or honeyed obsequiousness. The image-cluster may be Shakespearean, but its parts are popular tags; cf. Tilley, "Dog" (D459), "Spaniel" (S704), and "Whore" (W327), and J. L. Jackson, 'Sh.'s Dog-and-Sugar Imagery' (*Sh. Q.*, i. iv, 1950, 260-3).

249. "Look when . . ." Idioms like

"Look how", "Look what", "Look when" are misinterpreted if commas are inserted after "Look". They mean "However", "Whatever", "When-ever"; e.g. *Ven.*, 289—"Look when a painter would surpass the life"; and *R3*, i. iii. 290—"Look when he fawns he bites" (Mark Eccles, 'Sh.'s Use of "Look how" and similar Idioms', *JEGP*, 1943, 386 ff.).

251. *cozeners*] cheats (with, of course, the play on "cousin").

257. *the Douglas' son*] The definite article designates the head of distinguished Scottish families. For Shakespeare's error in Mordake's parentage see i. i. 71-2, note.

262. *into . . . creep*] wind yourself into the confidence. Proverbial; Tilley, B546—"He will creep into your bosom". Worcester has a sly idiom.

264.] A crowded line which suggests the urgent exchanges. Cf. col-

- Wor.* True, who bears hard
 His brother's death at Bristow, the Lord Scroop. 265
 I speak not this in estimation,
 As what I think might be, but what I know
 Is ruminated, plotted, and set down,
 And only stays but to behold the face
 Of that occasion that shall bring it on. 270
- Hot.* I smell it. Upon my life it will do well!
- North.* Before the game is afoot thou still let'st slip.
- Hot.* Why, it cannot choose but be a noble plot;
 And then the power of Scotland, and of York,
 To join with Mortimer, ha?
- Wor.* And so they shall. 275
- Hot.* In faith it is exceedingly well aim'd.
- Wor.* And 'tis no little reason bids us speed,
 To save our heads by raising of a head;
 For, bear ourselves as even as we can,
 The King will always think him in our debt, 280
 And think we think ourselves unsatisfy'd,
 Till he hath found a time to pay us home:
 And see already how he doth begin
 To make us strangers to his looks of love.
- Hot.* He does, he does, we'll be reveng'd on him. 285
- Wor.* Cousin, farewell. No further go in this
 Than I by letters shall direct your course.
 When time is ripe, which will be suddenly,
 I'll steal to Glendower, and Lord Mortimer,
 Where you, and Douglas, and our powers at once, 290
 As I will fashion it, shall happily meet,

271. it. Upon] *Qq*; it: / Vpon *F.* well] *Qq*; wond'rous well *F.* 272. game is] *Qqo-4*; game's *Q5, F.* 281. unsatisfy'd] *Rowe*; vnsatisfied *QqF.* 287. course.] *Johnson*; course *QqF.* 288. suddenly,] *Qqo, 1*; suddenly: *Qq2-5, F (subst.).* 289. Lord] *Qqo, 1 (Lo:); Rowe*; loe, *Qq2-5, F.* 290. powers] *Qqo, 2-5*; powres *Q1, F.*

lation, note on l. 122, and Intro., p. lxx.

264-5. *who . . . Scroop*] Shakespeare follows Hol. in making Scrope the Archbishop's brother; he was in fact his cousin. His execution in 1399 at Bristol is recorded in *R2*, III. ii. 142. "Bears hard" = "takes ill".

266. *estimation*] conjecture.

272. *game is*] Cf. collation, note on l. 122, and Intro., p. lxx.

thou . . . slip] you're always letting the hounds loose.

278. *a head*] a force of arms.

282. *pay us home*] i.e. "pay us out"—with the implication of "give us a home thrust".

288. *suddenly*] at once, immediately.

To bear our fortunes in our own strong arms,
Which now we hold at much uncertainty.

North. Farewell, good brother; we shall thrive, I trust.

Hot. Uncle, adieu: O, let the hours be short, 295
Till fields, and blows, and groans applaud our sport!

Exeunt.

292. bear our] *Qq1-5, F*; bear out *Qo*. 296. S.D.] *Qq*; exit / *F*.

[ACT II]

[SCENE I.—*Rochester. An Inn Yard.*]

Enter a Carrier with a lantern in his hand.

First Car. Heigh-ho! An it be not four by the day I'll be hanged; Charles' wain is over the new chimney, and yet our horse not packed. What, ostler!

Ost. [*Within*] Anon, anon.

First Car. I prithee, Tom, beat Cut's saddle, put a few flocks in the point; poor jade is wrung in the withers out of all cess. 5

Enter another Carrier.

Sec. Car. Peas and beans are as dank here as a dog, and that is the next way to give poor jades the bots: this

ACT II

Scene 1

ACT II SCENE I.] *F* (*Actus Secundus. Scena Prima.*); not in *Qq.* Location.] *Capell.*
1. An it] *Qq*; an't *F.* 4. S.D.] *Theobald*; not in *QqF.* 6. poor] *Qq*; the
poore *F.* 9. that] *Qq*; this *F.*

1. *by the day*] in the morning.

2. *Charles' wain*] the Plough, Great Bear.

3. *horse*] horses. Often plural in Elizabethan usage; cf. the unchanged plural "hors" in O.E.

5. *beat Cut's saddle*] i.e. in order to soften it. "Cut" = a labouring horse (*OED*), either a curtal or gelding. Minshew defines it as "a Curtall horse without a taile . . . court de queue".

5-6. *put . . . point*] stuff some wool into the pommel.

6. *poor jade is*] The terse idiom, as in l. 11, implies rusticity.

6-7. *wrung . . . cess*] sadly galled on the ridge between the shoulder-blades; "out of cess" = excessively.

8. *dank as a dog*] This is as meaningless as most alliterative similes. Dogs seem liable to these odious comparisons, so suggested emendations like "bog", "dock", "fog" are unnecessary. John Taylor, *A Dogge of Warre* (*Works . . . from Folio Ed. of 1630*, Spenser Soc., pt. II, 1868, 232), asserts that "I haue heard a Man say, I am as hot as a Dogge, or, as colde as a Dogge; I sweat like a Dogge, (when indeed a Dog neuer sweates,) as drunke as a Dogge, hee swore like a Dogge". One could also be as dry, greedy, idle, low, melancholy, sick, and weary as a dog; Tilley, D433-41.

9. *next way*] nearest, quickest way.

bots] "little short wormes [in horses' intestines] with great red heads, and

house is turned upside down since Robin Ostler died. 10
First Car. Poor fellow never joyed since the price of oats rose, it was the death of him.

Sec. Car. I think this be the most villainous house in all London road for fleas, I am stung like a tench.

First Car. Like a tench! By the mass, there is ne'er a king 15
 christen could be better bit than I have been since the first cock.

Sec. Car. Why, they will allow us ne'er a jordan, and then we leak in your chimney, and your chamber-lye breeds fleas like a loach. 20

First Car. What, ostler! Come away, and be hanged, come away!

Sec. Car. I have a gammon of bacon, and two razes of

10. Ostler] *Qq*; the Ostler *F.* 13. be] *Qq* 0-4; to be *Q*5; is *F.* 15. By the mass] *Qq*; not in *F.* 16. christen] *Qq*; in Christendome, *F.* 18. they] *Qq* 0-4; you *Q*5, *F.*

long small white Tailles . . . ingendred by foule and naughty feeding" (Gervase Markham, *Maister-Peece of Farriery*, 1615, ch. 74). They are in fact hatched from eggs laid on leaves which the horse swallows.

11-12. *never . . . rose*] Oats averaged about 6s. a quarter in 1593, 11s. in 1594, 12s. in 1595, and 18s. in 1596, dropping to about 14s. in 1597 and 10s. in 1598 (J. E. T. Rogers, *Hist. of Agric. & Prices*, 1887, v. 268). The Queen's Proclamation for the Dearth of Corne (31 July 1596) forbids extortionate prices (*Bibl. Lindesiana*, vol. v, *Cat. of Tudor . . . Proclamations*, ed. R. Steele, 1910, i, No. 884).

14. *stung like a tench*] The tench's spotted markings may have suggested vermin bites. Or cf. l. 20, note.

15. *By the mass*] Elyot, in *The Governour*, 1531, iii. vii, says that "the masse . . . is made by custome so simple an othe, that it is now used amonge husbande men and artificers": Earle in 1628 calls it "an olde out-of-date innocent othe" (*Microcosmographie*, 'A Blunt Man'). Nevertheless *F* expurgates it.

15-16. *king christen*] "a Christian

king. The Carrier implies that kings have the best of everything" (Kittredge).

17. *first cock*] "The times of cock-crow were conventionally fixed as follows: first cock, midnight; second cock, 3 a.m. . . ; third cock, an hour before day" (Kittredge).

18-19. *jordan . . . chimney*] "jordan" = chamberpot; "chimney" = fireplace. Andrew Boorde condemns this insanitary custom—"Be ware of emptying of pyse-pottes, and pyssing in chymnes, so that all euyll and contagious ayres may be expelled" (*Dyetary of Helth*, 1542, EETS, Extra ser., x, 1870, 236-7).

19. *chamber-lye*] urine.

20. *loach*] Cf. l. 14, note. Pliny asserts that "some fishes there be, which of themselves are given to breed fleas and lice" (*Nat. Hist.*, trans. Holland, 1601, ix. xlvii).

21. *Come away*] Come here, come along.

23-4. *razes of ginger*] An echo of the robbed carrier's complaint in *F.V.*—"hee hath . . . taken the great rase of Ginger, that bouncing Besse . . . should haue had" (iv. 28-31). "Raze" =

ginger, to be delivered as far as Charing Cross.

First Car. God's body! The turkeys in my pannier are
quite starved. What, ostler! A plague on thee, hast
thou never an eye in thy head? canst not hear? And
'twere not as good deed as drink to break the pate on
thee, I am a very villain. Come, and be hanged!
Hast no faith in thee? 25 30

Enter GADSHILL.

Gads. Good morrow, carriers, what's o'clock?

[*First*] *Car.* I think it be two o'clock.

Gads. I prithee lend me thy lantern, to see my gelding in
the stable.

First Car. Nay, by God, soft! I know a trick worth two of 35
that, i'faith.

Gads. I pray thee lend me thine.

Sec. Car. Ay, when? Canst tell? Lend me thy lantern,
quoth he! Marry I'll see thee hanged first.

Gads. Sirrah carrier, what time do you mean to come to 40
London?

Sec. Car. Time enough to go to bed with a candle, I war-
rant thee; come, neighbour Mugs, we'll call up the
gentlemen, they will along with company, for they
have great charge. *Exeunt [Carriers].* 45

25. God's body] *Qq*; *not in F.* 28. deed] *Qq*0-3; a deed *Qq*4,5,*F.* on] *Qq*0-4; of *Q*5,*F.* 31, 32. o'] *QqF* (a), *Theobald.* 32. *First Car.*] *Hammer* (1 *Car.*); *Car.* / *QqF.* 35. by God, soft] *Qq*; soft I pray ye *F.* 36. i'faith] *Qq*; *not in F.* 37. pray thee] *Qq*0-2; prethee *Qq*3-5,*F.* 38. Ay, when?] *Qq*0,1 (I when), *Qq*2-5,*F.* (I, when,) *Pope.* 39. quoth he] *Qq*; quoth-a *F.* 45. S.D. *Carriers*] *Rowe*; *not in QqF.*

"obs. form of *race*, i.e. root (of ginger); OF. *rais*, *raiz*, Lat. *radicem*" (*OED*, "Race. sb. 6"). Ginger, used medicinally and as a spice in food or drink, was imported in root form.

24. *as far as Charing Cross*] Then a separate village, and on the far side of London from Rochester.

28. *as good . . . drink*] A popular tag; cf. II. ii. 22.

35-6. *I know . . . that*] "I'm not such a fool": a popular tag (*Tilley*, T518).

38. *Ay . . . tell*] A retort to an incon-

venient request. *Tilley*, T88, cites *Marlowe*, *Faustus*, III. iiiB. 27—"Vint. Come, give it me again. *Robin*. Ay, much; when? can you tell?"—and other instances.

39. *quoth he*] F's "quoth-a" is more colloquial; cf. I. iii. 122, note, and *Intro.*, p. lxx.

42. *Time . . . candle*] Evasive rustic wit.

45. *great charge*] much to look after (whether baggage, business, or valuables).

Gads. What ho! Chamberlain!

Enter Chamberlain.

Cham. "At hand, quoth pick-purse."

Gads. That's even as fair as "At hand, quoth the chamberlain": for thou variest no more from picking of purses than giving direction doth from labouring; 50
thou layest the plot how.

Cham. Good morrow, master Gadshill. It holds current that I told you yesternight: there's a franklin in the Wild of Kent hath brought three hundred marks with him in gold, I heard him tell it to one of his 55
company last night at supper, a kind of auditor, one that hath abundance of charge too, God knows what; they are up already, and call for eggs and butter—they will away presently.

46. S.D.] *Kittredge; QqF (after line 45).*

46. S.D.] Capell and some edd. put this entry after l. 51 because of the delayed answer (l. 52), and prefix "[*Within*]" to l. 47. But an exactly similar entry, satirical comment, and delayed greeting occur at l. ii. 102-9.

47. *At hand, quoth pick-purse*] A popular tag—"Ready, sir, as the pick-purse said": cf. Cotgrave—"A la main. *Nimbly, readily, actiuey, at hand (quoth pick-purse)*"; and *Apus and Virginia* (Mal. Soc., 1911, l. 531)—"*Hap-hazard*: At hand (quoth picke purse) here redy am I".

49-51. *thou . . . how*] Chamberlains, like other inn-servants, had a poor reputation. "Manie an honest man", says Harrison's *Description of Engl.* (Hol., *Chron.*, i. 414-15), "is spoiled of his goods as he trauelleth to and fro . . . for when he commeth into the inne . . . the chamberlaine . . . giueth warning to such od ghests as hant the house and are of his confederacie, to the vtter vndoing of manie an honest yeoman as he iournieth by the waic."

50. *giving direction*] (a) overseeing; (b) thieves' cant for planning a "match": cf. Jonson, *E.M.O.O.H.H.*,

iv. vi. 31-4 (H. & S., iii. 547)—"signior Clog, that was hang'd for the robbery . . . gaue all the directions for the action".

51. *layest the plot*] "Equivocal: plot = (a) overseer's plan for workmen; (b) highwayman's plot" (Wilson, N.C.S.).

53. *franklin*] freeholder. Franklins were rich yeomen; John Russell's *Boke of Nurture*, c. 1440 (EETS, Orig. ser., xxxii, 1894, 73), ranks "Marchaundes & Franklonz, worshipfulle & honorable" as "peregalle to a squyere of honoure", and to Serjeants of Law, ex-Mayors of London, Masters of Chancery, and Apprentices of Law.

54. *Wild*] Weald.
three hundred marks] £200. The mark was the value of 13s. 4d., not a coin.

56. *auditor*] A royal officer who examined the accounts of receivers and other "under Officers Accomptable" (Minsheu, "Auditor"). This may be in apposition to "franklin" or to "one of his company"; probably the latter, to give this confidant some reality.

58-9. *eggs and butter*] Cf. i. ii. 21, note.

59. *presently*] at once.

Gads. Sirrah, if they meet not with Saint Nicholas' clerks, 60
I'll give thee this neck.

Cham. No, I'll none of it, I pray thee keep that for the
hangman, for I know thou worshippes Saint Nicho-
las, as truly as a man of falsehood may.

Gads. What talkest thou to me of the hangman? If I hang, 65
I'll make a fat pair of gallows: for if I hang, old Sir
John hangs with me, and thou knowest he is no
starveling. Tut, there are other Troyans that thou
dream'st not of, the which for sport sake are content
to do the profession some grace, that would (if mat- 70
ters should be looked into) for their own credit sake
make all whole. I am joined with no foot-landrakers,
no long-staff sixpenny strikers, none of these mad

62. pray thee] *Qq*; prythee *F.* 67. knowest] *Qq* 0-3; knowst *Q4, F*; knowes *Q5*.
he is] *Qq*; hee's *F.* 68. Troyans] *Q* 0; Troians *Qq* 1-5, *F.* 72. foot-landrakers]
Q4; footland rakers *Qq* 0-3 (*subst.*); foot-land rakers *Q5*; Foot-land-Rakers *F.*

60. *Saint . . . clerks*] Like "Saint Nicholas' clergymen" (*OED*, "clergy-men", 2) a euphemism for highway robbers. *Martin's Months Minde* (by Nashe?; Grosart, i. 151) has "like the Saint Nicholas Clarkes on Salsburie plaine [he] stept out before vs in the high waie, and bidde vs stand"; and *Belman of London* (Dekker; Grosart, iii. 151) says "The theefe that commits the *Robbery*, and is cheife clerke to Saint Nicholas, is called the *High Law-yer*". St Nicholas was patron-saint of children, scholars, sailors, shepherds, and travellers. "From wandering scholars the saint's protection seems rapidly to have been extended to other vagabonds . . . and by the 16th c. the same phrase has a less respectable connotation for highwaymen" (O. E. Albrecht, *Four Latin Plays of St Nicholas*, 1935, 34). The saint's attributes are three balls or purses of gold, deriving either from money he threw in a poor man's window, or from treasure he miraculously made robbers restore (cf. *Ludus super Iconia S. Nicolai*, Pollard, *Engl. Miracle Plays*). Perhaps, as Hemingway (New Var.) and Wilson

(N.C.S.) suggest, the balls or purses made him look like the patron of robbers. In the popular mind there may have been a punning association between Nicholas and necklace (= noose: G. S. Haight, *TLS*, 16 Sept. 1944, 451).

64. *truly . . . falsehood*] The "true/false" antithesis in the sense "honest/dishonest" is frequent: cf. ll. 91-2, and ii. ii. 23.

67. *thou . . . he is*] Cf. i. iii. 122, note.

68. *Troyans*] Troyans or Trojans, like Corinthians and Ephesians, were boon companions. Kemp, *Nine Daies Wonder*, 1600 (Camden Soc., 1840, 13), has "he was a kinde good fellow, a true Troyan".

69, 71. *sport sake, credit sake*] Cf. i. ii. 150, note.

72. *foot-landrakers*] vagabond footpads. To rake is to roam about.

73. *long-staff . . . strikers*] Footpads, says Bailey, are "a Crew of Villains . . . using long Poles or Staves, with an Iron Hook at the End, with which they either pull Gentlemen from their Horses, or knock them down". "Sixpenny" = paltry; cf. "euerie six

mustachio purple-hued maltworms, but with nobility and tranquillity, burgomasters and great onyers, 75 such as can hold in, such as will strike sooner than

74. mustachio purple-hued] *Qq* (*subst.*; Mustachio-purple-hu'd- *F.* 75. onyers] *Wilson* (*N.C.S.*, *conj.* *Malone*; *Oneyres* *Qq* 6, 1; *Oneyers* *Qq* 2-5, *F.*; *Oneraires* *conj.* *Pope* 1; *One-eyers* *conj.* *Pope* 2; *Moneyers* *Theobald*, *conj.* *Hardinge*; owners *Hammer*; mynheers *Capell*; one-yers *Johnson*; ones; —yes *Collier MS*, *Collier* 2. 76. in,] *F.* in *Qq*.

pennie slaue" (*Nashe, Anat. of Absurditie*; *McKerrow*, i. 7). "To strike" is thieves' cant for purse-cutting or pocket-picking; the act of "figging" (pocket-picking), says *Greene*, is known as "striking" (*Notable Discov. of Coosnage*, 1591; *Grosart*, x. 38).

73-4. mad . . . maltworms] roaring be-whiskered purple-faced soakers. Fierce moustaches supposedly betokened valour. "Maltworm" = toper; *A Wonderful . . . Prognostication* (by *Nashe*?; *McKerrow*, iii. 383) foretells "ye dearth that by their deuout drinking is like to ensue of Barly, if violent death take not away such co[n]suming mault worms".

75. tranquillity] Many needless emendations have been proposed. The word is in the vein of travesty which gives us "I did impetecos thy gratillity" (*Tw. N.*, II. iii. 28). It contrasts the serene "nobility" with the landrakers and strikers.

onyers] *QqF*'s "Oneyres" or "One-yers" has been much emended (cf. collation). Observing that the verb "to ony" was still used in the Exchequer of his day, from *o.ni.*, a fiscal technicality, *Malone* suggested "onyers" as a possibility, the sense being "sheriffs accountable to the King for moneys due". *OED* gives "O.Ni, oni. *Obs.* An abbreviation of the Latin words *oneratur, nisi habeat sufficientem exonerationem*, 'he is charged, or legally responsible, unless he have a sufficient discharge', with which the account of a sheriff with the King was formerly marked in the Exchequer: sometimes used *subst.* as a name for this phrase or the fact itself." *OED* also quotes *Coke On Littleton*, iv. 16 (1628)—"The

course of the Eschequer is, that as soon as a Sheriffe or Escheator enter into his account for issues, amerciaments, and mean profits, to mark upon his head O.Ni. which is as much as to say [Latin phrase as above], and presently he is become the King's debtor"; and also "Oni, o'ni *v. trans.* to mark with O.Ni". *John Cowell, The Interpreter*, repeats *Coke* almost verbatim (1684 edn, Aaa2^r; the term does not occur in the editions of 1607, 1637). The only doubt is whether *Shakespeare* would at this plebeian moment launch an Exchequer technicality at his audience, though law-terms were certainly more familiar to the litigious Elizabethans. Another possibility is "oneyers"—"as he terms them in merriment by a cant termination, great one-yers, as we say privateer, auctioneer, etc." (*Johnson*); *Lettsom* cited *Dickens* in corroboration—"Miss Sally's such a one-er for that, she is." 'Such a what?' said *Dick*. 'Such a one-er,' returned the Marchioness" (*Old Cur. Shop*, ch. lviii). The equally odd, and oddly similar, title "An-heires" occurs in *Wiv.*, II. i. 227, from an equally jocular speaker the Host, who likes high-flown appellations (e.g. "Cavaliero", "Bully-Rook"). What is wanted in both places is something facetiously grandiloquent, recognizable as a title yet far-fetched; "Ameires" ("Amirs") has been suggested for *Wiv.* and is possible here.

76. hold in] A quibble: (a) keep counsel; (b) stick together; (c) stick to the quarry (a hunting term: cf. *Madden*, 53).

76-8. strike . . . pray] assault sooner

speak, and speak sooner than drink, and drink
 sooner than pray—and yet, 'zounds, I lie, for they
 pray continually to their saint the commonwealth,
 or rather not pray to her, but prey on her, for they 80
 ride up and down on her, and make her their boots.

Cham. What, the commonwealth their boots? Will she hold out water in foul way?

Gads. She will, she will, justice hath liquored her: we steal as in a castle, cock-sure: we have the receipt of 85 fern-seed, we walk invisible.

Cham. Nay, by my faith, I think you are more beholding to the night than to fern-seed for your walking invisible.

Gads. Give me thy hand, thou shalt have a share in our 90 purchase, as I am a true man.

Cham. Nay, rather let me have it, as you are a false thief.

Gads. Go to, *homo* is a common name to all men: bid the

78. 'zounds] *Qq*; not in *F*. 79. to] *Qq*; vnto *F*. 80. pray] *Qq*; to pray *F*.
 prey] *Q5, F*; pray *Qq* 0-4. 87. by my faith] *Qq*; not in *F*. think] *Qq*; thinke
 rather, *F*. 88. fern-seed] *Qq*; the Fernseed *F*. 90-1.] *As Qq*; Give . . . hand./
 Thou . . . purpose, / *As . . . man F (verse)*. 91. purchase] *Qq*; purpose *F*.

than speak to a man (with a pun on
 "strike" as meaning rob; cf. l. 73,
 note); speak to him (e.g. swearing
 "Lay by", as at l. ii. 36) even sooner
 than drink; and certainly drink sooner
 than pray. To speak to or with a vic-
 tim was thieves' cant for holding him
 up; cf. *OED*, "Speak, v. 13h, 16†d".
 Bailey gives "To SPEAK with, to steal".
 "Talk with" seems similarly used
 in *F.V.* (ii. 13-16)—cf. App. III, p.
 189.

81. boots] spoils.

83. hold . . . way] Literally, "let you go dryshod in muddy roads"; figuratively, "protect you in difficulty".

84. justice . . . her] Those who control the laws have (a) "greased" her (with ref. to "boots" and perhaps bribery), and (b) made her drunk.

85. in a castle] Proverbial; "in complete security". Kittredge suggests an "Oldcastle" echo.

85-6. receipt of fern-seed] = "the

fern-seed formula". Fern-seed was
 thought to be visible only on St John's
 (Midsummer) Eve (23 June) and, if
 gathered then, to render the wearer
 invisible. Cf. Jonson, *New Inn*, i. vi. 16-
 18 (H. & S., vi. 418)—"*Fer[ret]*. I had /
 No med'cine, Sir, to goe inuisible: /
 No Ferne-seed in my pocket".

91. purchase] Euphemistic for "plunder". Cf. *H5*, iii. ii. 45-6—"They will steal any thing and call it purchase".

91-2. true man . . . false thief] Cf. l. 64, note.

93. homo . . . men] A frequently-cited tag from Lily and Colet's *Shorte Introduction of Grammar* (1549)—"a Noun Substantive either is Proper . . . Or else is common, as, Homo is a Name common to all men". Nashe repeats it, as Wilson (N.C.S.) points out, in *Pierce Penilesse* (McKerrow, i. 187-8). Gadshill has promised as a "true man"; the chamberlain bids him promise as a "false thief"; to which he

ostler bring my gelding out of the stable. Farewell,
you muddy knave. [*Exeunt.*] 95

[SCENE II.—*Gad's Hill. The Highway.*]

Enter PRINCE, POINS, and PETO.

Poins. Come, shelter, shelter! I have removed Falstaff's horse, and he frets like a gummed velvet.

Prince. Stand close! [*They retire.*]

Enter FALSTAFF.

Fal. Poins! Poins, and be hanged! Poins!

Prince. [*Coming forward*] Peace, ye fat-kidneyed rascal, 5
what a brawling dost thou keep!

94. my] *Qq*; the *F.* 95. you] *Qq*0,1; ye *Qq*2-5,*F.* S.D.] *F*; not in *Qq*.

Scene II

SCENE II.] *F* (*Scæna Secunda.*); not in *Qq*. Location.] *Capell* (*Gad's-Hill. The Road down it.*). S.D.] *F*; *Enter Prince, Poines, and Peto, &c.* | *Qq*. 3. S.D.] *Dyce*; not in *QqF*. 5. S.D.] *Dyce*; not in *QqF*.

replies that he is a (true) man for *homo* is common to all men, including (false) thieves.

95. *muddy*] dull-witted.

Scene II

S.D.] Some edd. reserve this entry merely for the Prince and Poins, and bring Peto and Bardolph in with Gadshill; in *QqF* it is Bardolph who at l. 50 is applied to for news and at l. 51 gives it. Other edd. bring on all four here and give Gadshill a solo entry at l. 46 (as in *QqF*), making him the one applied to for news, and furnishing it (cf. collation, ll. 46, 49-50, 51). On the face of it one would expect Gadshill to be separate and to act as informant, and the other four to keep together. But *Q*0's entry does not specifically bring Bardolph on here (the "&c" may indicate *Fal.*), while *Q*0 does specifically name Peto here and make

Bardolph the informant later (though not showing any indication of entry). Sisson argues that were a speech-prefix for Bardolph, not a vocative, intended in l. 50, Shakespeare would have written not Bardoll, but Bar., and that "the Quarto text and punctuation give no support to emendation". The arrangement adopted here and at ll. 47-51 involves the least amendment of *Q*0.

2. *frets . . . velvet*] chafes; a quibble on human irritation and the "fretting" or fraying of velvet treated with gum to give a showy gloss. Marston, *Malcontent*, i. ii. 13-14 (*Plays*, ed. H. H. Wood, 1934, i. 145), has "He come among you . . . as Gum into Taffata, to fret, to fret". Tilley, T8, gives other examples. In Eliot's *Ortho-epia Gallica*, ii. 69, a customer for velvet asks "Is it not gummed?" and the salesman replies "No I assure you of my faith".

Fal. Where's Poin, Hal?

Prince. He is walked up to the top of the hill; I'll go seek him. [Retires.]

Fal. I am accursed to rob in that thief's company; the rascal hath removed my horse and tied him I know not where. If I travel but four foot by the squier further afoot, I shall break my wind. Well, I doubt not but to die a fair death for all this, if I scape hanging for killing that rogue. I have forsworn his company hourly any time this two and twenty years, and yet I am bewitched with the rogue's company. If the rascal have not given me medicines to make me love him, I'll be hanged. It could not be else, I have drunk medicines. Poin! Hal! A plague upon you both! Bardolph! Peto! I'll starve ere I'll rob a foot further—and 'twere not as good a deed as drink to turn true man, and to leave these rogues, I am the veriest varlet that ever chewed with a tooth: eight yards of uneven ground is threescore and ten miles afoot with me, and the stony-hearted villains know it well enough. A plague upon it when thieves can-

7. Where's] *Qq* 0,1; What *Qq* 2-5, *F.* 9. S.D.] *Dyce*; not in *QqF.* 10. thief's] *Qq*; Theefe *F.* the] *Qq*; that *F.* 12. squier] *QqF* (squire), *Cambr.* 16. two and twenty] *Qq* 0-4 (xxii.), *Q* 5 (22.), *F.* years] *Qq* 0,1 (yeares); yeare *Qq* 2-5, *F.* (subst.). 21. Bardolph] *F*; Bardol *Q* 0; Bardoll *Qq* 1-5. I'll rob] *Qq*; I rob *F.* 22. as drink] *Qq*; as to drinke *F.* 27. upon it] *Qq*; vpon't *F.*

10-11. *the rascal . . . horse*] A possible echo of Nashe, 'The complaint of Gluttonie' (*Pierce Penilesse*; McKerrow, i. 201)—"The *Romane* Censors, if they lighted vpon a fat corpulent man, they straight tooke away his horse, and constrained him to goe a foote: positiuely concluding his carkasse was so puffed vp with gluttonie or idlenesse. If we had such horse-takers amongst vs, and that surfit-swolne Churles, who now ride on their foot-clothes, might be constrained to carrie their flesh budgets from place to place on foote, the price of veluet and cloath would fall with their belies . . . *Plenus venter nil agit libenter*".

12. *squier*] measure; an obs. form of square, a measuring instrument. Cf.

Spenser, *F.Q.*, II. i. 58—"Temperance . . . with golden squire / Betwixt them both can measure out a meane".

18. *medicines*] potions.

21. *Bardolph*] On the spellings "Bardol(l)" / "Bardolfe" / "Bardolph" see Intro., p. lxxvii.

starve] die—the original meaning; cf. O.E. "steorfan", to die.

27-8. *thieves . . . another*] Besides glancing paradoxically at "true" (= honest; cf. II. i. 64, note), "he gives the principle of honour among thieves a comic application, as if honour were more to be expected of thieves than of honest men" (Kittredge). Tilley, T121a, quotes "Thieves are never rogues among themselves".

not be true one to another! (*They whistle.*) Whew! A plague upon you all, give me my horse, you rogues, give me my horse and be hanged!

30

Prince. [*Coming forward*] Peace, ye fat guts, lie down, lay thine ear close to the ground, and list if thou canst hear the tread of travellers.

Fal. Have you any levers to lift me up again, being down? 'Sblood, I'll not bear my own flesh so far afoot again for all the coin in thy father's exchequer. What a plague mean ye to colt me thus?

35

Prince. Thou liest, thou art not colted, thou art uncolted.

Fal. I prithee good Prince Hal, help me to my horse, good king's son.

40

Prince. Out, ye rogue, shall I be your ostler?

Fal. Hang thyself in thine own heir-apparent garters! If I be ta'en, I'll peach for this: and I have not ballads made on you all, and sung to filthy tunes, let a

29. upon] *Qq*; light vpon *F.* give me] *Qq*; Giue *F.* 31. S.D.] *Dyce*, not in *QqF.* 32. canst] *Qqo*, 1; can *Qq2-5, F.* 35. 'Sblood] *Qq*; not in *F.* my] *Qo*; mine *Qq1-5, F.* 41. ye] *Qqo*, 1; you *Qq2-5, F.* 42. Hang] *Qqo-2*; Go hang *Qq3-5, F.* 44. on you] *Qqo-2*; on *Qq3-5, F.*

37. colt] trick.

42. *Hang . . . garters*] "Alluding to the Order of the Garter, in which he was enrolled as heir-apparent" (Johnson), and also to the popular tag "He may hang himself in his own garters" (Tilley, G42). Q3 et seq. read "Go hang", but the phrase existed without "go" as well as with it; see *Tw. N.*, 1. iii. 12—"And [these boots] be not [good enough to drink in], let them hang themselves in their own straps", and Tourneur, *Ath. Trag.*, II. v (Mermaid edn, 285), "I bid him hang himselfe in his owne garters".

43. *peach*] turn king's evidence, lay information.

43-4. *ballads . . . tunes*] Wilson (N.C.S.) points out a Nashe parallel (*Christes Teares*, 1593; McKerrow, II. 103)—"Ignominious Ballads made of you, which euery Boy woulde chaunt vnder your Nose". One could hire ballad-writers to lampoon one's enemies; cf. *Woodstock*, II. 1659-60—

"I'll have these verses sung to their faces by one of my schoolboys, wherein I'll tickle them all i' faith"; and Jonson, *Bart. Fair*, II. ii. 15-17 (H. & S., vi. 41)—"and thou wrong'st me, I'll finde a friend shall right me, and make a ballad of thee". Topical ballads were sold in the streets by ballad-singers, and stuck upon tavern walls: Fal. proposes to have his capture of Coleville "in a particular ballad" (2*H4*, IV. iii. 52). "Ten-groat rhymers", Massinger calls their writers (*Bondman*, v. iii. 216), and Hal when King disparages flowery speeches with "A rhyme is but a ballad" (*H5*, v. ii. 166). Ballads had their appropriate tunes; thus *Fortune my Foe* was the Hanging Tune, for ballads about executions; cf. Samuel Rowley, *Noble Souldier*, III. ii (Bullen, *Old Plays*, I. 293)—"I shall have scurvy ballads made of me / Sung to the Hanging Tune". See H. E. Rollins, *A Pepysian Garland* (1922) and *The Pack of Autolycus* (1927), and C. H. Firth,

cup of sack be my poison—when a jest is so forward, 45
and afoot too! I hate it.

Enter GADSHILL [and BARDOLPH].

Gads. Stand!

Fal. So I do, against my will.

Poins. O, 'tis our setter, I know his voice. [*Coming forward with PETO*] Bardolph, what news? 50

Bard. Case ye, case ye, on with your vizards, there's money of the King's coming down the hill, 'tis going to the King's exchequer.

Fal. You lie, ye rogue, 'tis going to the King's tavern.

Gads. There's enough to make us all. 55

Fal. To be hanged.

Prince. Sirs, you four shall front them in the narrow lane:
Ned Poins and I will walk lower—if they scape from your encounter, then they light on us.

Peto. How many be there of them? 60

Gads. Some eight or ten.

Fal. 'Zounds, will they not rob us?

Prince. What, a coward, Sir John Paunch?

Fal. Indeed, I am not John of Gaunt your grandfather,
but yet no coward, Hal. 65

Prince. Well, we leave that to the proof.

Poins. Sirrah Jack, thy horse stands behind the hedge;

45. when a] *Qqo, 1, F*; when *Qq2-5*. 46. S.D. and Bardolph] *Rowe*; not in *QqF*.
49-50. voice. Bardolph, what] *Qo* (voice. Bardoll, what), *Q1* (voice, Bardoll, what), *Q2* (voyce, Bardoll, what), *Qq3-5* (voyce: *Bardol* what [subst.]), *F* (voyce / *Bardolfe*, what); voice. / *Bard.* What *Var.* 1773, many edd., conj. *Johnson*. S.D.] *Dyce* (*Coming forward with Bardolph and Peto*); not in *QqF*. 51. *Bard.*] *QqF*; *Gads. Johnson*, many edd. 54. ye] *Qqo-2*; you *Qq3-5, F*. 57. Sirs, you] *Qqo-2*; You *Qq3-5, F*. 58. Poins] *Qq*; not in *F*. 60. How many be there] *Qqo, 1*; How many be they *Q2*; But how many be they *Qq3-5*; But how many be *F*. 62. 'Zounds] *Qq*; not in *F*. 64. your] *Qqo-4, 5 corr., F*; our *Q5 uncorr.* 66. Well, we] *Qqo-2*; Well, wee] *Qq3-5*; Wee'l *F*.

'Ballads and Broad-sides' (*Sh.'s Engl.*, ii. 511 ff.).

49. setter] informant (thieves' cant).

50-1. *Bardolph* . . . *Bard.*] The colation shows how "Bardolph" (l. 50) came in some edns to be the speaker of "What news?". Arguing that Gads-hill should be the news-bringer, some

edd. alter *Bard.* (l. 51) to *Gads.*, but the change is unnecessary.

51. *Case ye*] Mask yourselves.

64. *John of Gaunt*] "Fal.'s pun . . . did not lack personal application, for Prince Hal was tall and thin; cf. the exchange . . . in ii. iv. 240-4" (*Kittredge*).

when thou need'st him, there thou shalt find him.
Farewell, and stand fast.

Fal. Now cannot I strike him, if I should be hanged. 70

Prince. Ned, where are our disguises?

Poins. Here, hard by, stand close. [*Exeunt Prince and Poins.*]

Fal. Now, my masters, happy man be his dole, say I—
every man to his business.

Enter the Travellers.

[*First Trav.* Come, neighbour, the boy shall lead our 75
horses down the hill; we'll walk afoot awhile and
ease our legs.

Thieves. Stand!

[*Second Trav.* Jesus bless us!

Fal. Strike, down with them, cut the villains' throats! 80
Ah, whoreson caterpillars, bacon-fed knaves, they
hate us youth! Down with them, fleece them!

[*First Trav.* O, we are undone, both we and ours for ever!

Fal. Hang ye, gorbellied knaves, are ye undone? No, ye
fat chuffs, I would your store were here! On, bacons, 85

72. S.D.] *Malone* (subst.); not in *QqF*. 73. say I] *Qq0-4, F*; say *Q5*. 74. S.D.
the] *Qq*; not in *F*. 75. *First Trav.*] *Capell*; *Trauel.* / *QqF* (subst.). 78. Stand]
Qq0-4; Stay *Q5, F*. 79. *Sec. Trav.*] *Dyce 2*; *Trauel.* / *QqF* (subst.). Jesus] *Qq*;
Iesu *F*. 81. Ah] *QqF* (a), *Rowe*. 83. *First Trav.*] *Capell*; *Tra.* / *QqF* (subst.).
84. are ye] *Qq*; are you *F*.

73. *happy . . . dole*] Proverbial: "May
each one's fortune be to be a happy
man".

74. *every . . . business*] Proverbial:
"Every man as his business lies"
(*Tilley*, M104).

81. *whoreson caterpillars*] Intro., p.
xxxvii, gives *Woodstock* parallels. As
with "gorbellied knaves" and "fat
chuffs" *Fal.* deflects his own failings on
to his opponents: the receivers, he im-
plies, are battenning on society. The
caterpillar metaphor is as frequent in
the 16th c. as "parasite" in the 20th c.;
e.g. *R2*, II. iii. 166—"The caterpillars
of the commonwealth".

bacon-fed knaves] = "great lumber-
ing bumpkins". *Woodstock*, I. 1615, has
"baconfead pudding-eaters". *Boorde*,

Dietary of Helth, 1542 (EETS, Extra
ser., x, 1870, 273), says that "Bacon is
good for carters and plowmen, the
whiche be euer labourynge in the
earth or dunge".

84. *gorbellied*] "Pançu . . . Gorbellied,
great-paunched" (*Cotgrave*). Nashe has
"an vnconscionable vast gorbellied
Volume" (*Haue with you*; *McKerrow*,
iii. 35).

85. *chuffs*] Often applied to rich or
avaricious farmers or citizens. "Franc-
gontier. A good rich Yeoman, substantiall
yonker, wealthie chuffe" (*Cotgrave*);
"ritch chuffes" (*Woodstock*, I. 1527).
"A fat chuffe" and "rich Chuffes"
occur in Nashe (*McKerrow*, i. 163, ii.
107).

store] "all you possess" (*Kittredge*).

on! What, ye knaves! young men must live. You are grandjurors, are ye? We'll jure ye, faith.

Here they rob them and bind them. Exeunt.

[*Re-*]enter the PRINCE and POINS[, disguised].

Prince. The thieves have bound the true men; now could thou and I rob the thieves, and go merrily to London, it would be argument for a week, laughter for a month, and a good jest for ever.

Poins. Stand close, I hear them coming. [*They retire.*]

Enter the Thieves again.

Fal. Come, my masters, let us share, and then to horse before day; and the Prince and Poins be not two arrant cowards there's no equity stirring; there's no more valour in that Poins than in a wild duck.

As they are sharing the PRINCE and POINS set upon them.

Prince. Your money!

Poins. Villains!

They all run away, and Falstaff after a blow or two runs away too, leaving the booty behind them.

Prince. Got with much ease. Now merrily to horse:

The thieves are all scatter'd and possess'd with fear
So strongly that they dare not meet each other;

87. ye, faith] *Qq* 0-2; yee yfaith *Qq* 3-5; ye ifaith *F.* 87. S.D. *Exeunt.*] *Qq* 0-3; not in *Qq* 4,5, *F.* Re-enter] *QqF* (*Enter*), *Malone.* disguised] *Cambr.*; not in *QqF.* 92. S.D. *They retire*] *Dyce*; not in *QqF.* Enter the] *Qq*; Enter / *F.* 96. more] *Qq*; moe *F.* 96. S.D.-98. S.D.] *As Dyce*; [*On the left:—*] *Prin.* . . . money. / *Poin.* Villaines. [*bracketed, on the right:—*] *As . . . Poins* / set . . . and / *Falstaffe . . . away* / too, . . . them. / *Qq* (*subst.*); [*S.D.s undivided after line 98*] *F.* 98. S.D. and . . . too] *Qq*; not in *F.* 99-105.] *As Pope*; prose, *QqF.* 100. are all] *Qq* 0,1; are *Qq* 2-5, *F.* scatter'd] *F* (*scatt'rd*); scattered *Qq.*

87. *grandjurors*] Only men of some wealth or standing could serve on a grand jury. Nashe writes "Wealthy saide I? nay I'le be sworne hee was a grande iurie man in respect of me" (*Lenten Stuffe*; McKerrow, iii. 155).

jure ye] A widely popular form of comic retort.

90. *argument*] something to talk about.

95. *no equity stirring*] "no such thing as correct judgment in the world" (Kittredge).

99-105.] *QqF* print this as prose, but it is markedly decasyllabic and Pope and most later edd. arrange it as verse, assimilating it to those other scene-ends when Hal asserts his status by rising to metre (e.g. i. ii, iii. iii, v. iii, v. iv).

Each takes his fellow for an officer!
 Away, good Ned—Falstaff sweats to death,
 And lards the lean earth as he walks along.
 Were't not for laughing I should pity him.
Poins. How the fat rogue roared.

105
Exeunt.

[SCENE III.—*Warkworth. The Castle.*]

Enter HOTSPUR solus, reading a letter.

[*Hot.*] “But, for mine own part, my lord, I could be well
 contented to be there, in respect of the love I bear
 your house.” He could be contented: why is he not
 then? In respect of the love he bears our house: he
 shows in this, he loves his own barn better than he
 loves our house. Let me see some more. “The pur-
 pose you undertake is dangerous”—Why, that’s
 certain; ’tis dangerous to take a cold, to sleep, to
 drink; but I tell you, my lord fool, out of this nettle,
 danger, we pluck this flower, safety. “The purpose
 you undertake is dangerous, the friends you have
 named uncertain, the time itself unsorted, and your
 whole plot too light, for the counterpoise of so great
 an opposition.” Say you so, say you so? I say unto

103. sweats] *Qq*0–2,*F*; swears *Qq*3–5. 106. the fat] *Q*0; the *Qq*1–5,*F*.

Scene III

SCENE III.] *F* (*Scæna Tertia.*); not in *Qq*. *Location.*] *Capell* (*subst.*). 1. *Hot.*]
Capell; not in *QqF*. 4. respect] *Q*6,*F*; the respect *Qq*1–5.

102. *Each . . . officer*] An echo of the
 proverb “The thief does fear each bush
 an officer” (Tilley, T112). Wilson
 (N.C.S.) cites it from Nashe (*Unfortun-
 ate Traveller*; McKerrow, ii. 319)—
 “A theefe . . . mistakes euerie bush for
 a true man”.

104. *lards*] *bastes*.

Scene III

Location.] Warkworth, in North-
 umberland, was the principal seat of
 the Percys. *Capell* first fixed the scene

here. Scholars have discussed the
 identity of the letter-writer, which,
 however, since Shakespeare has not
 named him, is hardly more worth
 determining than is the size of Lady
 Macbeth’s family. Nameless, he is all
 the more representative of the fickle
 “diuerse noblemen” mentioned by
 Hol. (cf. App. III, p. 171).

9–10. *out . . . safety*] Echoing the pro-
 verb “Danger and delight grow both
 upon one stalk [stock]” (Tilley, D28).

12. *unsorted*] ill-chosen.

you again, you are a shallow cowardly hind, and you lie: what a lack-brain is this! By the Lord, our plot is a good plot, as ever was laid, our friends true and constant: a good plot, good friends, and full of expectation: an excellent plot, very good friends; what a frosty-spirited rogue is this! Why, my Lord of York commends the plot, and the general course of the action. 'Zounds, and I were now by this rascal I could brain him with his lady's fan. Is there not my father, my uncle, and myself? Lord Edmund Mortimer, my Lord of York, and Owen Glendower? Is there not besides the Douglas? Have I not all their letters to meet me in arms by the ninth of the next month, and are they not some of them set forward already? What a pagan rascal is this, an infidel! Ha! You shall see now in very sincerity of fear and cold heart will he to the King, and lay open all our proceedings! O, I could divide myself, and go to buffets, for moving such a dish of skim milk with so honourable an action! Hang him, let him tell the King, we are prepared: I will set forward tonight.

Enter LADY [PERCY].

How now, Kate? I must leave you within these two hours.

Lady. O my good lord, why are you thus alone?

For what offence have I this fortnight been

16. By the Lord] *Qq*; I protest *F*. 17. a good] *Qq*; as good a *F*. friends] *Qq* 1-3; friende *Qq* 4, 5, *F* (*subst.*). 22. 'Zounds] *Qq*; By this hand *F*. and] *Qq*; if *F*. 29. this, an] *Q* 1; this, and *Qq* 2-5; this? An *F*. 33. skim] *Qq*; skim'd *F*. 34. King, we] *Qq*; King we *F*. 35. forward] *Qq*; forwards *F*. 35. S.D. *Lady Percy*] *Rowe*; his *Lady* *QqF*.

29. *pagan*] unbelieving.

32. *divide . . . buffets*] split myself in two and set the halves to cuffing each other.

36. *Kate*] *Hol.* calls her "Elleanor"; her real name was Elizabeth. Shakespeare seems fond of "Kate": cf. Henry's courtship in *H* 5; and the heroine of *Shr.*; and Kate who had "a tongue with a tang" (*Tp.*, II. ii. 52).

38. *O my good lord*] Critics remark that this scene resembles that between Brutus and Portia (*Cæs.*, II. i. 233 ff.). But more notable still is the differentiation Shakespeare could manage, as always, in treating similar material; there is all the difference in the world between the vivid comic spirit of this scene and the troubled sadness of the other.

A banish'd woman from my Harry's bed? 40
 Tell me, sweet lord, what is't that takes from thee
 Thy stomach, pleasure, and thy golden sleep?
 Why dost thou bend thine eyes upon the earth,
 And start so often when thou sit'st alone?
 Why hast thou lost the fresh blood in thy cheeks, 45
 And given my treasures and my rights of thee
 To thick-ey'd musing, and curst melancholy?
 In thy faint slumbers I by thee have watch'd,
 And heard thee murmur tales of iron wars,
 Speak terms of manage to thy bounding steed, 50
 Cry "Courage! To the field!" And thou hast talk'd
 Of sallies, and retires, of trenches, tents,
 Of palisadoes, frontiers, parapets,
 Of basilisks, of cannon, culverin,
 Of prisoners' ransom, and of soldiers slain, 55
 And all the currents of a heady fight.
 Thy spirit within thee hath been so at war,
 And thus hath so bestirr'd thee in thy sleep,
 That beads of sweat have stood upon thy brow
 Like bubbles in a late-disturbed stream, 60
 And in thy face strange motions have appear'd,
 Such as we see when men restrain their breath
 On some great sudden hest. O, what portents are
 these?

48. thy] *Qq1-3*; my *Qq4,5,F*. thee have] *Qq1-3,F*; thee *Qq4,5*. 49. thee
 murmur] *Qq2-5,F*; the murmur, *Q1*. 52. of trenches, tents] *Q1* (of trenches
 tents), *Qq2-3*; trenches, tents *Qq4,5,F*. 55. ransom] *QqF* (ransome); ran-
 som'd *Dyce 2, conj. Capell*. 56. currents] *Qq1-3*; current, *Qq4,5*; current *F*.
 59. beads] *Q1*; beds *Qq2-5,F*. have] *Qq1-3*; hath *Qq4,5,F*. 63. hest] *Q1*;
 haste *Qq2,3*; hast *Qq4,5,F*.

47. *thick-ey'd . . . curst*] dull-sighted, ill-tempered.

50. *manage*] manège, horsemanship.

53. *palisadoes*] a defence of iron-pointed stakes in the ground.

frontiers] Cf. i. iii. 18, note.

54. *basilisks . . . culverin*] Of ordnance, the basilisk was the largest kind (named from the fabulous reptile which blasted by its breath or gaze, hatched by a serpent from a cock's egg), the cannon a comprehensive

category, and the culverin (Fr. "couleuvrine", after "couleuvre", an adder) the smallest.

55. *prisoners' ransom*] *QqF* "prisoners ransome". Capell's conjectural "ransom'd" (the common "e/d" misprint) would make this a parallel to "soldiers slain".

63. *hest*] behest, command. Or perhaps "resolve"; *OED* quotes Stanyhurst, *Æneis*, ii. 64—"In one heast hee stieflye remayned".

Some heavy business hath my lord in hand,
And I must know it, else he loves me not.

65

Hot. What ho!

[*Enter a Servant.*]

Is Gilliams with the packet gone?

Serv. He is, my lord, an hour ago.

Hot. Hath Butler brought those horses from the sheriff?

Serv. One horse, my lord, he brought even now.

Hot. What horse? A roan, a crop-ear is it not?

70

Serv. It is, my lord.

Hot. That roan shall be my throne.

Well, I will back him straight: O Esperance!

Bid Butler lead him forth into the park. [*Exit Servant.*]

Lady. But hear you, my lord.

Hot. What say'st thou, my lady?

75

Lady. What is it carries you away?

Hot. Why, my horse, my love, my horse.

Lady. Out, you mad-headed ape!

A weasel hath not such a deal of spleen

As you are toss'd with. In faith,

80

I'll know your business, Harry, that I will;

I fear my brother Mortimer doth stir

66. S.D.] *Capell*; (after line 65) *Dering MS*; (after line 66) *Rowe*; not in *QqF*. 67. ago] *QqI*, 2; agoe *Qq3-5, F*; Roane *QqI*, 2. 71-3. That . . . park] *As Pope*; *prose, QqF*. 72. O] *QqI-4*; not in *Q5, F*. 73. S.D.] *Dering MS, Hammer*; not in *QqF*. 78-84.] *As Capell* (reading Now, in sooth, in sooth, for In faith,); *prose, QqF*. 80. In faith] *Qq*; In sooth *F*.

68. horses] Cf. i. i. 60, 63, note.

70. *A roan*] Madden (252) notes Shakespeare's fondness for roan horses. Blundevill (*Four Chiefest Offices of Horsemanship*, 1580) says that the perfect horse which "doth participate of all the foure elements equallie and in due proportion" is often "a faire rone" (Madden, 251). Hal knows of Hotspur's preference in horses—cf. ii. iv. 104-5.

72. *Esperance*] "Esperance" or "Esperance ma comforte" was the Percy motto; cf. v. ii. 96.

76. *carries you away*] (a) takes you

from home; (b) excites, "transports" you.

78-89.] *Prose* in *QqF*. Edd. from Pope on arrange as verse.

79. *weasel . . . spleen*] Cf. *Cym.*, iii. iv. 162—"As quarrelous as the weasel"; and *Songs . . . of the Fifteenth Century* (ed. Thomas Wright, Percy Soc., xxiii, 5) —"Ther wer 3 angry, 3 angry ther wer: A wasp, a wesyll, and a woman". The spleen was thought to be the source of irritable emotions, and Hotspur is "govern'd" by his; cf. v. ii. 19.

82. *my brother Mortimer*] Cf. i. iii. 79, 144, notes.

About his title, and hath sent for you
To line his enterprise. But if you go—

Hot. So far afoot I shall be weary, love.

85

Lady. Come, come, you paraquito, answer me
Directly unto this question that I ask;
In faith, I'll break thy little finger, Harry,
And if thou wilt not tell me all things true.

Hot. Away,

90

Away, you trifler! Love! I love thee not,
I care not for thee, Kate; this is no world
To play with mamnets, and to tilt with lips;
We must have bloody noses, and crack'd crowns,
And pass them current too. God's me! my horse!
What say'st thou, Kate? What wouldst thou have
with me?

95

Lady. Do you not love me? Do you not indeed?
Well, do not then, for since you love me not

86–9.] *As Pope; prose, QqF.* 87. ask] *Q1*; shall aske *Qq2–5, F.* 88. In faith] *Qq*; Indeede *F.* 89. And if] *Qq*; if *F.* me all things] *Qq*; me *F.* 90–1. Away, / Away] *As Capell*; Away, away *QqF.* 97. you . . . you] *Qq*; ye . . . ye *F.*

84. *line*] strengthen (as lining strengthens a garment); cf. *John*, iv. iii. 24–5—"We will not line his [John's] thin bestained cloak / With our pure honours".

88. *break . . . finger*] To wring the little finger was (is?) a lovers' endearment. W. Cornish (*XX So[n]ges*, 1530) gives a lady's song with the refrain: "Bewar my lytyl fynger syr I yow desyre bewar my lytyl fynger. . . Ye wryng my hand to sore"; and G. Fenton (*Tragicall Discourses*, 1567, Tudor Trans., ii. 102) has "No sortes of kysses or follyes in love were forgotten, . . . no pinchng by the lytle finger"; cf. "paddling palms and pinching fingers" (*Wint.*, i. ii. 116). Anders (*Sh.'s Books*, 1904) and Wilson (N.C.S.) refer to a sentence about Lady Percy given in the *New York Nation* (11 Mar. 1875; repr. in *New Sh. Soc. Trans.*, 1875/6, 124) and there erroneously attributed to Polydore Vergil, xxvi. 2,

which may indicate some unidentified source for this detail: "Saeva in familiares, petulans etiam erga maritum, cujus secreta se exquaesituram minitabat, vel frangendo digitorum ossicula, si veritatem pandere constantius recusaret".

91. *Love!*] In his abrupt way Hotspur suddenly reverts to Lady Percy's words in l. 65.

93. *mamnets*] dolls, from "maw-met", an idol of Mahomet whom Saracens supposedly worshipped. Stubbes, *Anat. of Abuses* (ed. Furnivall, i. 75), writes "when they haue all these goodly robes vpon them, women seeme to be . . . not Women of flesh & blod, but rather puppits or maw-mets of rags & clowtes compact together".

94–5. *crack'd crowns . . . current*] A popular quibble, on the currency of cracked coins.

95. *God's me*] "God save me" (*OED*).

I will not love myself. Do you not love me?

Nay, tell me if you speak in jest or no. 100

Hot. Come, wilt thou see me ride?

And when I am a-horseback I will swear

I love thee infinitely. But hark you, Kate,

I must not have you henceforth question me

Whither I go, nor reason whereabout: 105

Whither I must, I must; and, to conclude,

This evening must I leave you, gentle Kate.

I know you wise, but yet no farther wise

Than Harry Percy's wife; constant you are,

But yet a woman; and for secrecy 110

No lady closer, for I well believe

Thou wilt not utter what thou dost not know;

And so far will I trust thee, gentle Kate.

Lady. How? so far?

Hot. Not an inch further. But hark you, Kate, 115

Whither I go, thither shall you go too:

Today will I set forth, tomorrow you.

Will this content you, Kate?

Lady. It must, of force. *Exeunt.*

100. you speak] *Qq*; thou speak'st *F*. 105, 106. Whither] *Qq*; Whether *F*.
 107. you] *Qq*; thee *F*. 108. farther] *Qq*; further *F*. 111. well] *Qq* 1-3; wil
Q 4; will *Q* 5, *F*. 113. far will] *Qq* 1-4; farewill *Q* 5; farre wilt *F*.

112. *Thou . . . know*] A venerable jest, traceable as far as the elder Seneca (*Controv.*, II. xiii. 12)—“Nec tam magnum consilium . . . commisi muliebri garrulitati, quae id solum potest tacere quod nescit”. Tilley, W649, gives several instances of the proverb “A woman conceals what she knows not”, including a version of the

Seneca (above) which Nashe wrongly attributes to Valerius's *Epistle to Rufinus* and translates “who will commit any thing to a womans tatling trust, who conceales nothing but that shee knowes not?” (*Anat. of Absurditie*; McKerrow, i. 14). Hotspur's very caution emphasizes his masculinity.

118. *of force*] of necessity.

[SCENE IV.—*Eastcheap. The Boar's Head Tavern.*]*Enter* PRINCE and POINS.

Prince. Ned, prithee come out of that fat room, and lend me thy hand to laugh a little.

Poins. Where hast been, Hal?

Prince. With three or four loggerheads, amongst three or
fourscore hogsheads. I have sounded the very base- 5
string of humility. Sirrah, I am sworn brother to a
leash of drawers, and can call them all by their
christen names, as Tom, Dick, and Francis. They
take it already upon their salvation, that though I be
but Prince of Wales, yet I am the king of courtesy, 10
and tell me flatly I am no proud Jack like Falstaff,

Scene IV

SCENE IV.] *F* (*Scena Quarta.*); not in *Qq*. Location.] *Pope* (*The Tavern in Eastcheap.*), *Theobald* (*subst.*). 4. amongst three] *Qq*; amongst 3. *F*. 7. them all] *Qq*; them *F*. 8. christen names] *Qq* (*Q5* Christian names); names *F*. 9. salvation] *Qq*; confidence *F*. 11. and tell] *Qq*; telling *F*. no] *Qq* 1-3, *F*; not *Qq* 4, 5.

Location.] The place is not, of course, specified in *QqF* S.D.s. In *F.V.* the Prince's companions frequent "the olde Tauerne in Eastcheape" (i. 89). Though Shakespeare mentions Eastcheap from time to time, he does not name the Boar's Head; but he implies it at *2H4*, ii. ii. 159, when Hal asks, "Doth the old boar feed in the old frank?" and Bardolph answers, "At the old place, my lord, in Eastcheap". Wilson (N.C.S.) suggests other hints in references to Fal. as "brawn" or "boar pig" (*1H4*, ii. iv. 108; *2H4*, i. i. 19, ii. iv. 250). "This famous hostelry . . . was on the N. side of Gt. Eastcheap . . . where the statue of Wm. IV now stands" (Sugden). Sugden traces its possible ancestry back to the tavern of Glutton's debauch in *Piers Plowman*, B, v. 306 ff., and refers to Lydgate too. For its 17th-c. association with Fal., Chambers (*El. St.*, ii. 443) cites E. Gayton, *Pleasant Notes upon Don Quixot*, 1654, 277—"Sir John of Famous Memory; not he of the Boares-head in Eastcheap".

1. *fat*] This could certainly = "vat" (cf. *Ant.*, ii. vii. 122—"In thy fats our cares be drown'd"; Bunyan, *P. Prog.*—"Every fat must stand on its own bottom" [*World's Classics* ed., 38]), but it could also = "stuff", and since it is Hal himself who has been among the hogsheads this sense better suits Poins's whereabouts.

4-5. *With . . . hogsheads*] Drawers would invite favoured guests to share the sociable atmosphere of the cellar. Gallants are counselled in Dekker's *Guls Horn-booke* "to accept of the courtesie of the Celler when tis offered you by the drawers" (Grosart, ii. 260).

7. *leash of drawers*] trio of tapsters. Leash = set of three (espec. of hounds, foxes, etc.).

8. *christen names*] Dekker, *Guls Horn-booke* (Grosart, ii. 256), says "Your first complement shall be to grow most inwardly acquainted with the drawers, to learne their names, as *Iack*, and *Will*, and *Tom*".

11. *Jack*] fellow.

but a Corinthian, a lad of mettle, a good boy (by the Lord, so they call me!), and when I am King of England I shall command all the good lads in Eastcheap. They call drinking deep "dyeing scarlet", and when you breathe in your watering they cry "Hem!" and bid you "Play it off!" To conclude, I am so good a proficient in one quarter of an hour that I can drink with any tinker in his own language during my life. I tell thee, Ned, thou hast lost much honour that thou wert not with me in this action; but, sweet Ned—to sweeten which name of Ned I give thee this pennyworth of sugar, clapped even now into my hand by

12-13. (by . . . me!)] *Qq*; not in *F*. 16. they] *Qq*; then they *F*.

12. *Corinthian*] a boon companion; cf. II. i. 68, note. Corinth was noted for gay dissipation.

15. *dyeing scarlet*] The most evident reference is to toppers' complexions; cf. Eliot's prayer (on the interruption of the French wine-trade) "that we may safelie fetch that deifying liquor, which dieth quickly our flegmaticke faces into a pure sanguine complexion" (*Ortho-epia Gallica*, sig. A3). That urine was a reagent for fixing dyes seems possibly relevant also; Mr J. C. Maxwell refers me to Middleton, *Widow*, iv. ii. 7-9, where Occulto says, of an old mason troubled with the stone, "He's swoln most piteously: / Has urine in him now was brewed last March", and Latrocinio replies, "Twill be rich gear for dyers". The same ingredient is said to be used in the Hebrides (cf. Wilson, *N.C.S.*, 145). Rabelais tells of outrageous dogs which "made a stream with their urine wherein a duck might have very well swimmied, and it is the same current that now runs at St Victor, in which Gobelin dieth scarier" (Bk II, ch. xxii: Urquhart's trans.).

16. *breathe . . . watering*] stop for breath in your drinking—a sign of imperfect prowess.

Hem] = "Clear your throat and down with it" Wilson, *N.C.S.*. At

2*H4*, III. ii. 234-5, Shallow recalls his revels—"Our watchword was, 'Hem, boys!'" In Eliot's *Ortho-epia Gallica*, pt. II. 41, the drinkers cry "Hem, ha-hem!" while quaffing.

17. *Play it off*] Get on with it; cf. Rowlands, *Letting of Humours Blood* (1600), cited Var. 1821—"A pox of piecemeal drinking William says, / Play it away, we'll have no stops and stays".

18-19. *drink . . . language*] Tinkers were noted tipplers and had their own cant. "Gypsies . . . drink more like Swine than human Creatures, entertaining one another all the Time with Songs in the *Canting Dialect*" (Bailey). In Overbury's *Characters* the Tinker is found "where the best Ale is . . . His tongue is very voluble, which, with Canting, proves him a Linguist".

21. *action*] engagement.

22-3. *pennyworth of sugar*] Sugar to sweeten sack was sold by the tapsters in small packets. Cf. Dekker, *Guls Horn-booke* (Grosart, II. 258-9)—"Enquire what Gallants sup in the next roome, and, if they be any of your acquaintance, do not you (after the City fashion) send them in a pottle of wine; and your name, sweetned in two pittiful papers of Suger, with some filthy Apology cramd into the mouth of a drawer".

an undersinker, one that never spake other English
 in his life than "Eight shillings and sixpence", and 25
 "You are welcome", with this shrill addition, "Anon,
 anon, sir! Score a pint of bastard in the Half-moon",
 or so. But Ned, to drive away the time till Falstaff
 come:—I prithee do thou stand in some by-room,
 while I question my puny drawer to what end he 30
 gave me the sugar, and do thou never leave calling
 "Francis!", that his tale to me may be nothing but
 "Anon". Step aside, and I'll show thee a precedent.

[*Poins retires.*]

Poins. [*Within*] Francis!

Prince. Thou art perfect.

35

Poins. [*Within*] Francis!

Enter [FRANCIS, *a*] *Drawer.*

Francis. Anon, anon, sir. Look down into the Pomgarnet,
 Ralph.

Prince. Come hither, Francis.

Francis. My lord?

40

Prince. How long hast thou to serve, Francis?

Francis. Forsooth, five years, and as much as to—

Poins. [*Within*] Francis!

Francis. Anon, anon, sir.

Prince. Five year! By'r lady, a long lease for the clinking 45

28. the time] *Qq1-3*; time *Qq4,5,F.* 31. do thou] *Qq1-3*; doe *Qq4,5,F.* 33.
 precedent] *F* (President), *Pope*; present *Qq.* 33. S.D.] *Theobald*; not in *QqF.*
 34, 36. S.D. *Within*] *Dyce*; not in *QqF.* 36. *Poins.*] *Qq4,5,F*; *Prin.* / *Qq1-3* (subst.).
 S.D. *Francis, a*] *Rowe* (subst.); not in *QqF.* 43, 51, 55, 62, 76. S.D.] *Capell*; not
 in *QqF.* 45. year] *Qq1,2*; yeeres *Qq3-5,F* (subst.).

24. undersinker] under-tapster: to
 skink is to draw wine.

26-7. *Anon, anon, sir*] Coming, sir.
Nashe provides a parallel—"his tap-
 ster ouerhearing him, cried, anone,
 anone sir, by and by" (*Unfortunate*
Traveller; *McKerrow*, ii. 212).

27. bastard] A sweet Spanish wine.
OED cites *Surflet & Markham, Country*
Farm, 1616—"Bastards . . . seeme to me
 to be so called, because . . . oftentimes
 adulterated and falsified with honey".

Half-moon] Inn-rooms had, and
 often still have, fancy names—cf.
Pomgarnet (l. 37).

30. puny] *OED*, "3. Raw, inexperi-
 encenced". "Puisne" or "puny" was a
 term for Oxford freshmen and new
 students at Inns of Court.

33. show . . . precedent] give you a fore-
 taste. On *Qq*'s reading cf. *Intro.*, p.
 lxxiv.

42. five years] Apprenticeships lasted
 seven years.

of pewter; but Francis, darest thou be so valiant as to play the coward with thy indenture, and show it a fair pair of heels, and run from it?

Francis. O Lord, sir, I'll be sworn upon all the books in England, I could find in my heart— 50

Poins. [*Within*] Francis!

Francis. Anon, sir.

Prince. How old art thou, Francis?

Francis. Let me see, about Michaelmas next I shall be—

Poins. [*Within*] Francis! 55

Francis. Anon, sir—pray stay a little, my lord.

Prince. Nay but hark you, Francis, for the sugar thou gavest me, 'twas a pennyworth, was't not?

Francis. O Lord, I would it had been two!

Prince. I will give thee for it a thousand pound—ask me 60 when thou wilt, and thou shalt have it.

Poins. [*Within*] Francis!

Francis. Anon, anon.

Prince. Anon, Francis? No, Francis, but tomorrow, Francis; or, Francis, a-Thursday; or indeed, Francis, 65 when thou wilt. But Francis!

Francis. My lord?

Prince. Wilt thou rob this leathern-jerkin, crystal-button, not-pated, agate-ring, puke-stocking, caddis-garter, smooth-tongue Spanish pouch? 70

49. all the] *Qq*1-3,*F*; all *Qq*4,5. 52. Anon] *Qq*; Anon, anon *F*. 56. pray] *Q*1; pray you *Qq*2-5,*F*. 59. Lord] *Qq*; Lord sir *F*. 65. a-] *Qq*1,2 (a); on *Qq*3-5,*F*. 70. Spanish pouch?] *Qq*; Spanish pouch. *F*; Spanish-pouch,—*Capell*, most edd.

47-8. *show . . . heels*] Proverbial; "He shows a fair pair of heels" (Tilley, P31).

49. *books*] Bibles, or prayer-books. Pulton, *Abstract of Penal Statutes*, 1577, fol. 155, says "When a free manne shall doe fealtie to his Lorde, hee shall holde his right hande uppon a booke, and shall saye thus . . ."

68. *rob*] i.e. by breaking your indenture.

leathern-jerkin, crystal-button] Greene's pawn-broker wears "a black taffata doublet and a spruce leather ierkin,

with Christall buttons" (*Quippe for an Vpstart Courtier*; Grosart, xi. 242); cf. *Four Letters Confuted* (by Nashe?; Grosart, ii. 221)—"a Broker, in a spruse leather ierkin". About the tenth year of Queen Elizabeth, says Howes (Stow's *Annales*, 1631 ed., 1039), "many young Citizens and others, began to weare Christall buttons upon their doublets, coats and Ierkins".

69. *not-pated*] crop-headed. Chaucer's Yeoman had "a not-heed" (*Prol. Cant. T.*, 109). "The custom of wearing

Francis. O Lord, sir, who do you mean?

Prince. Why then your brown bastard is your only drink:
for look you, Francis, your white canvas doublet will
sully. In Barbary, sir, it cannot come to so much.

Francis. What, sir?

75

Poins. [*Within*] Francis!

Prince. Away, you rogue, dost thou not hear them call?

*Here they both call him; the Drawer stands
amazed, not knowing which way to go.*

Enter Vintner.

Vintner. What, stand'st thou still and hear'st such a calling? Look to the guests within. [*Exit Francis.*] My lord, old Sir John with half-a-dozen more are at the door—shall I let them in? 80

Prince. Let them alone awhile, and then open the door.
[*Exit Vintner.*] Poins!

74. In Barbary] *Qq* 1-3, 4 *corr.*, 5, *F*; Barbary *Q* 4 *uncorr.* 77. thou not] *Qq*; thou *F*. 79. S.D.] *Johnson* (*Exit Drawer.*), *Hanmer* 2; not in *QqF*. 83. S.D. *Exit Vintner*] *Theobald*; not in *QqF*.

the hair short was more common among the lower and middle classes, and the Puritans got the nickname of roundheads because they for the most part belonged to these ranks" (Wright).

agate-ring] Carved agates were mounted as seals; cf. *Rom.*, i. iv. 56-7—"an agate-stone / On the fore-finger of an alderman".

puke-stocking] wearing heavy dark woollen stockings. "Puke" was a dark grey or blue-black woollen cloth.

caddis-] worsted-tape.

70. *Spanish pouch*] A Spanish-leather pouch was part of a vintner's outfit. Of a country innkeeper Dekker says "A leatherne pouch hung at his side" (*Wonderfull Yeare*; Grosart, i. 138). Spanish leather was considered tougher than English. *Qq*'s "Spanish pouch?" seems better than Capell's (and later edds.) "Spanish-pouch, —" since doubtless Francis, however agitated, does not interrupt the Prince.

72-4. *Why. . . much*] "The Prince is talking incoherent nonsense to mystify Francis. One is tempted to make sense of it, and perhaps Hal has some thought or other in the back of his mind: 'You'd better stick to your trade and learn to serve wine. If you rob your master you'll become a fugitive. A white doublet like that you are wearing will not keep clean long'" (Kittredge). This is perhaps the best one can do: the passage is, in fact (to quote an 18th-c. commentator), "totally in the humbug style".

it=sugar, grown in Barbary; cf. "your Barbary Sugars" (Thos. Heywood [*Shepherd*], i. 252).

78-9. *What. . . within*] Wilson (N.C.S.) cites a Nashe parallel (*Unfortunate Traveller*; McKerrow, ii. 214) about an innkeeper who "ran hastily to his Tapster, and all to belaboured him about the eares, for letting Gentlemen call so long and not looke in to them".

[*Re-*]enter POINS.

Poins. Anon, anon, sir.

Prince. Sirrah, Falstaff and the rest of the thieves are at the door; shall we be merry? 85

Poins. As merry as crickets, my lad; but hark ye, what cunning match have you made with this jest of the drawer: come, what's the issue?

Prince. I am now of all humours that have showed themselves humours since the old days of goodman Adam to the pupil age of this present twelve o'clock at midnight. 90

[*Re-enter* FRANCIS.]

What's o'clock, Francis?

Francis. Anon, anon, sir. [*Exit.*] 95

Prince. That ever this fellow should have fewer words than a parrot, and yet the son of a woman! His industry is up-stairs and down-stairs, his eloquence the parcel of a reckoning. I am not yet of Percy's mind, the Hotspur of the north, he that kills me some six or seven dozen of Scots at a breakfast, washes his 100

S.D. *Re-enter Poins*] *F* (*Enter Poinès*), *Capell*; *Enter Poinès Qq* (*after line 84*). 92, 94. o'] *QqF* (a), *Theobald*. 93. S.D.] *Malone* (*Re-enter Francis, with wine*); *Re-enter Drawer, with Bottles.* / *Capell*; *not in QqF*. 95. S.D.] *Collier*; *not in QqF*.

87-9. *what cunning . . . issue*] what's the game? what's the point of all this?

90. *I . . . humours*] "I am in the mood to indulge any fancy that any man has ever had since the creation" (*Kittredge*).

96. *fewer words*] Other dramatists also mock the meagre vocabulary of drawers; e.g. Thomas Heywood, *Faire Maid of the West*, III. iv—"You rogue, how many yeares of your prentiship have you spent in studying this set speech?"—to which the reply is "The first line of my part was, Anon anon, sir: and the first question I answered to, was logger-head, or block-head" (*Pearson*, II. 302). Also T. Nabbes, *Totenham-Court*, III. i (*Bullen, Old Plays*, New ser., I. 133)—"*Tap-*

ster. Y'are welcome, Gentlemen. *James.* Now, my parrat of froth . . ."

97-8. *His industry . . . down-stairs*] Overbury perhaps echoes this: *Characters, A Chamber-Mayde*—"Her industrie is up-staires, and down-staires like a drawer".

99. *parcel . . . reckoning*] items of a bill.

99. *I am . . . mind*] This change of subject is surprising. The connection may lie, as Johnson suggested, in Hal's contrasting his "all humours" with Hotspur's homicidal monomania; or in Francis's busy-ness, or his limitation of ideas; or in all these. This is Hal's first reference to Hotspur and he instinctively recognizes the antithesis between his own sociable nature and his rival's combative militarism.

hands, and says to his wife, "Fie upon this quiet life, I want work". "O my sweet Harry", says she, "how many hast thou killed today?" "Give my roan horse a drench", says he, and answers, "Some fourteen", an hour after; "a trifle, a trifle". I prithee call in Falstaff; I'll play Percy, and that damned brawn shall play Dame Mortimer his wife. *Rivo*! says the drunkard: call in Ribs, call in Tallow.

Enter FALSTAFF, *GADSHILL*, *BARDOLPH*, and *PETO*;
followed by FRANCIS, with wine].

Poins. Welcome, Jack, where hast thou been? 110

Fal. A plague of all cowards, I say, and a vengeance too, marry and amen! Give me a cup of sack, boy. Ere I lead this life long, I'll sew nether-stocks, and mend them and foot them too. A plague of all cowards! Give me a cup of sack, rogue; is there no virtue extant? 115
He drinketh.

Prince. Didst thou never see Titan kiss a dish of butter

109. S.D. *Gadshill, Bardolph, and Peto*;] *Theobald*; not in *QqF*. followed . . . *wine*] *Dyce*; not in *QqF*. 114. them and foot them] *Qq*; them *F*. 116. S.D.] *Qq1-4*; not in *Q5,F*. 117-18. butter (pitiful-hearted] *Warburton*; butter, pittiful harted *QqF* (*subst.*).

103. *work*] i.e. real fighting; cf. *Ant.*, iv. vii. 2—"Caesar himself has work" (= is fighting hard).

106. *an hour after*] Hal hits off Hotspur's preoccupied delayed response, as at ii. iii. 91.

107. *I'll play Percy*] Nothing comes of this proposal, but the liking for play-acting which it suggests becomes evident later (ll. 371 ff.).

108-9. *brawn . . . Ribs . . . Tallow*] "The epithets and comparisons which Hal and Poins apply to him, or he himself makes use of, . . . recall the chief stock-in-trade of the victuallers and butchers of Eastcheap, namely meat of all kinds" (Wilson, *Fortunes*, 27). Tallow = dripping.

108. *Rivo*] A bacchanalian cry of uncertain origin, frequent in dramatists. "App. of Spanish origin; perh. Sp. *arriba*, up, upwards" (*OED*); cf.

Marlowe, *Jew of M.*, iv. vi. 10—"Hey *Riuo Castiliano*, a man's a man", where it may mean the Castilian stream, or liquor. Marston, *What You Will*, ii. i, has "weele quaffe or anything: *Rivo*" (*Works*, ed. H. H. Wood, ii. 248), and "Rivo, drinke deepe, give care the mate" (*ibid.*, ii. 252).

113. *nether-stocks*] stockings.

117. *Titan*] the sun; cf. *Cym.*, iii. iv. 164-6—"Exposing it [your cheek] . . . to the greedy touch / Of common-kissing Titan".

117-19. *Didst . . . sun's*] A much-discussed passage. The sense is: "Look at that combination—that round rosy visage and the vanishing liquor it peers over, like Titan the sun with a dish of butter melting before his amorous addresses (this, though, is a very soft-hearted Titan—he wouldn't hurt a fly, would he?)". Theobald read "pitiful-

(pitiful-hearted Titan!), that melted at the sweet tale of the sun's? If thou didst, then behold that compound.

120

Fal. You rogue, here's lime in this sack too: there is nothing but roguery to be found in villainous man, yet a coward is worse than a cup of sack with lime in it. A villainous coward! Go thy ways, old Jack, die when thou wilt—if manhood, good manhood, be not forgot upon the face of the earth, then am I a shotten herring: there lives not three good men unhanged in England, and one of them is fat, and grows old, God help the while, a bad world I say.

125

118. Titan!)] *Warburton*; Titan *QqF*; Titan, *Pope*; Butter, *Theobald*; creature, *Cowl & Morgan*. 119. sun's] *Cambr.*; sonnes *Qq1,2*; sunne *Qq3-5,F*. 123. than] *Qq1-4,5 corr.*, *F* (then); the *Q5 uncorr.* lime in it] *Qq*; in't *F uncorr.*; lime *F corr.*

hearted Butter", to avoid the apparent indication in *QqF* ("pittifull harted Titan that melted") that Titan melted at the sun's (i.e. Titan's own) tale. Theobald's is a cogent reading, since by it Titan kisses the butter which then soft-heartedly melts at his blandishments. The compositor (indeed, the author) might have repeated "Titan" when he should have repeated "butter". Yet "pitiful-hearted" seems a rather pointless epithet here with "butter", whereas with "Titan" it is surely Hal's sarcastic innuendo on Fal.'s "heroism", as well as his sun-like visage and vast girth. *Cowl* substituted "creature" for "Titan" (l. 118), thinking "pitiful-hearted creatures" in *Marmion's Antiquary*, III. i, to be an echo. But *Warburton's* brackets and exclamation mark (as above) provide a sound meaning.

121. lime] Used for doctoring wine to make it dry and sparkling. *Eliot's Ortho-epia Gallica*, II. 40, is forthright on the subject—"Worse [i.e. than watering down the wine] do the vintners of London, who put in lime, brimstone, honie, allume, and other more beastly things to be spoken, and nothing is more hurtfull to mens bodies, whome men ought to chastise pub-

likely as theeues and murtherers: for thence proceed infinit maladies, and specially the goutes".

121-2. nothing . . . man] Quoted by *Meres, Palladis Tamia*, 1598; cf. *Intro.*, p. xii.

126-7. a shotten herring] as lank as a herring that has shot its roe; a frequent simile. E.g. *Greene, Never Too Late* (*Grosart*, viii. 187)—"thou hadst a late . . . a lovely fat paire of cheekes, and now thou lookest like a shotten herring". "The objects *Fal.* chooses as a contrast to his person, objects excessively thin, wizened, or meagre, are . . . often taken from the food-shops. There is, for instance, the shotten herring, the soused gurnet, the bunch of radish, the rabbit-sucker, or poulter's hare, and, wittiest of all perhaps, the carbonado—the rasher of bacon, we should say" (*Wilson, Fortunes*, 31).

127. there . . . men] Elizabethan usage allows a singular verb before a plural subject. The ambiguity in "good"—(a) valiant; (b) virtuous—allows *Fal.* to modulate characteristically from infrequency of valour to infrequency of virtue.

129. God . . . while] God help these times.

I would I were a weaver; I could sing psalms, or 130
anything. A plague of all cowards, I say still.

Prince. How now, wool-sack, what mutter you?

Fal. A king's son! If I do not beat thee out of thy king-
dom with a dagger of lath, and drive all thy subjects
afore thee like a flock of wild geese, I'll never wear 135
hair on my face more. You, Prince of Wales!

Prince. Why, you whoreson round man, what's the
matter?

Fal. Are not you a coward? Answer me to that—and
Poins there? 140

Poins. 'Zounds, ye fat paunch, and ye call me coward
by the Lord I'll stab thee.

Fal. I call thee coward? I'll see thee damned ere I call
thee coward, but I would give a thousand pound I

130-1. psalms, or anything] *Qq*; all manner of songs *F.* 139. not you] *Q1*;
you not *Qq2-5, F.* 141. *Poins.*] *Qq1-4*; *Prin.* / *Q5, F.* 'Zounds, ye fat] *Qq*;
Ye fatch *F.* 142. by the Lord] *Qq*; not in *F.* 144. thee coward] *Qq*; the
Coward *F.*

130. *I would . . . psalms*] Weavers sang at their work and many were Puritans given to psalmody; cf. the clown's reference (*Wint.*, iv. ii. 48) to the Puritan who "sings psalms to hornpipes". Shakespeare alludes elsewhere to weavers' love of singing—"a catch that will draw three souls out of one weaver" (*Tw. N.*, ii. iii. 62-3). D'Avenant (*Wits*, 1636, i. i. 84-7) has "She's more devout / Than a weaver of Banbury, that hopes / T'entice Heaven, by singing, to make him lord / Of twenty looms".

133-4. *beat . . . lath*] "The old Vice . . . / Who with dagger of lath, / In his rage and his wrath, / Cries, 'Ah, ah!' to the devil" and offers to "pare thy nails, dad" (*Tw. N.*, iv. ii. 138-44) was reputedly a favourite interlude-figure. Harsnet remarks (*Declaration of Popish Impostures*, 1603, 114-15) that "It was a pretty part in the old Church-plays, when the nimble Vice would skip vp nimbly like a Iacke an Apes into the deuils necke, and ride the deuil a course, and belabour him with his wooden dagger, til he made him

roare". *Fal.* differs from the "nimble" Vice, but the reference is part of the morality-associations which indicate to the audience how to take him. In extant plays, however, the Vices do not assault the Devil (L. W. Cushman, *The Devil & the Vice*, 1900, 69, suggests Punch-and-Judy shows as an exception). Dr T. W. Craik points out to me that the chief comic character (whether Vice or Fool—e.g. Moros in William Wager's *The Longer Thou Livest*) often bore a wooden dagger and fought his low-comic associates; a possible Devil-beating may have occurred, e.g., at the end of Fulwell's *Like Will to Like* when the Vice "rideth away on the Devil's back" (at his invitation) and remarks "Now for a pair of spurs I would give a good groat! / To try whether this jade do amble or trot" (Hazlitt's *Dodsley*, iii. 356). "This roaring devil i' the old play, that every one may pare his nails with a wooden dagger" (*H5*, iv. iv. 76-8) suggests (as does the *Tw. N.* verse, above) some actual incident, apparently entirely familiar to an Elizabethan audience.

could run as fast as thou canst. You are straight
 enough in the shoulders, you care not who sees your
 back: call you that backing of your friends? A
 plague upon such backing, give me them that will
 face me! Give me a cup of sack: I am a rogue if I
 drunk today. 145

Prince. O villain! Thy lips are scarce wiped since thou
 drunk'st last. 150

Fal. All is one for that. (*He drinketh.*) A plague of all
 cowards, still say I.

Prince. What's the matter? 155

Fal. What's the matter? There be four of us here have
 ta'en a thousand pound this day morning.

Prince. Where is it, Jack, where is it?

Fal. Where is it? Taken from us it is: a hundred upon
 poor four of us. 160

Prince. What, a hundred, man?

Fal. I am a rogue if I were not at half-sword with a
 dozen of them two hours together. I have scaped by
 miracle. I am eight times thrust through the doub-
 let, four through the hose, my buckler cut through 165
 and through, my sword hacked like a handsaw—
ecce signum! I never dealt better since I was a man:
 all would not do. A plague of all cowards! Let them

153. All is] *Qq1,2*; All's *Qq3-5,F*. 153. S.D.] *Qq1-4*; *He drinks.* / *Q5,F*.
 156. There . . . here] *Qq1,2*; here be foure of vs *Qq3-5,F*. 157. this day]
Qq1,2; this *Qq3-5,F*.

153. All is] Cf. collation; and see i.
 iii. 122, note, and Intro., p. lxx.

157. a thousand pound] Since Fal. fled
 before the sharing was complete, this
 sum derives rather from *F.V.*—"We
 haue a thousand pound about vs"
 (i. 87). At ii. i. 54 and ii. iv. 513 the
 booty is put at 300 marks (£200).

this day morning] this morning.

162. half-sword] very close quar-
 ters.

165-6. buckler . . . sword] Fal.'s claim
 to sturdy old-fashioned manhood (ll.
 125-9) extends also to his choice of
 weapons: on the outmoded nature of
 these see i. iii. 227, note. The point

implied here is made in Henry Porter's
Two Angry Women of Abington, 1599
 (Mal. Soc., 1912, ll. 1339-44)—"I see
 by this dearth of good swords, and
 dearth of swoord and buckler fight,
 begins to grow out [sic], I am sorrie for
 it, I shall neuer see good manhood
 againe, if it be once gone, this poking
 fight of rapier and dagger will come vp
 then, then a man, a tall man and a
 good sword and buckler man, will be
 spitted like a cat or a conney".

167. ecce signum] behold the
 sign: a popular tag in Elizabethan
 literature, of uncertain origin; cf. Til-
 ley, S443, and Cowl & Morgan.

speak—if they speak more or less than truth, they
 are villains, and the sons of darkness.

170

Prince. Speak, sirs, how was it?

Gads. We four set upon some dozen—

Fal. Sixteen at least, my lord.

Gads. And bound them.

Peto. No, no, they were not bound.

175

Fal. You rogue, they were bound, every man of them,
 or I am a Jew else: an Ebrew Jew.

Gads. As we were sharing, some six or seven fresh men
 set upon us—

Fal. And unbound the rest, and then come in the other. 180

Prince. What, fought you with them all?

Fal. All? I know not what you call all, but if I fought not
 with fifty of them I am a bunch of radish: if there
 were not two or three and fifty upon poor old Jack,
 then am I no two-legg'd creature.

185

171. *Prince.*] *F*, *Dering MS*; *Gad.* / *Qq.* 172, 178. *Gads.*] *F* (*Gad.*); *Ross.* / *Qq*;
Bard. / *Dering MS*, *Collier MS*, *Collier.* 173-4. *lord.* / *Gads.* And] *F* (*reading*
Gad.); *Lord.* / *Ross.* And *Qq*; *lord.* / *Bard.* And *Collier MS*, *Collier*; *lord*,
and *Dering MS.* 175. *Peto*] *QqF*; *Bard.* / *Dering MS.* 177. an] *Qq*1,5,*F*; and
*Qq*2-4. 178. *Gads.*] See l. 172, collation. six or seven] *QqF* (*Qq*3,4 6. or 7.).
181. you] *Q*1; ye *Qq*2-5,*F* (*subst.*). 182. you] *Q*1; ye *Qq*2-5,*F* (*subst.*).

170. *sons of darkness*] More of *Fal.*'s
Biblical idiom; cf. 1 *Thessalonians*, v. 5
—"Ye are all the chyldren of lyght...
we are not of the nyght, neither of
darknesse".

171. *Prince.*] The speech is given in
Qq to *Gad.*, and ll. 172, 174, and 178 to
Ross. (cf. i. ii. 158, note). *F* redistrib-
utes as here and most edd. follow.
One expects the burning question to
come from *Hal*, who otherwise would
be taking a back seat, not from a minor
participant who knows the situation
already. *Wilson* (N.C.S.) suggests
plausibly that the MS read "*Prin.*",
"*Ross.*", "*Ross.*", "*Ross.*", and that to
replace the "*Ross.*"es a single "*Gad.*"
was written in, which the printer mis-
placed. On *F*'s correction cf. Intro.,
p. lxxiv.

177. an *Ebrew Jew*] "Humorously
emphatic: 'A Jew of Jews'" (*Heming-*

way, New Var.). "Jew" as a term of
opprobrium was not limited to avar-
rice; cf. "If I do not take pity of her, I
am a villain; if I do not love her, I am
a Jew" (*Ado.* II. iii. 283-5).

180. *the other*] Often plural. It was
Hol.'s phrase "the other on his part"
(= the others on his side) which
Daniel and *Shakespeare* seem to have
taken as "the other one, for his part",
so making *Hal* out to be *Hotspur*'s
vanquisher (cf. App. III, p. 176).

183. *a bunch of radish*] "A symbol of
leanness. *Elyot*, *Castle of Health*, 1539,
35, writes 'Radyshe roottes haue the
vertu to extenuate or make thin' "
(*Wilson*, N.C.S.).

184. *three and fifty*] This strikingly
verisimilar figure seems a reminiscence
of "fiftie three gainst one" in *Gervase*
Markham's Most Honorable Tragedie of
Sir Richard Grinuile, 1595, or at least of

Prince. Pray God you have not murdered some of them.

Fal. Nay, that's past praying for, I have peppered two of them. Two I am sure I have paid, two rogues in buckram suits. I tell thee what, Hal, if I tell thee a lie, spit in my face, call me horse. Thou knowest my old ward—here I lay, and thus I bore my point. Four rogues in buckram let drive at me—

Prince. What, four? Thou saidst but two even now.

Fal. Four, Hal, I told thee four.

Poins. Ay, ay, he said four. 195

Fal. These four came all afront, and mainly thrust at me; I made me no more ado, but took all their seven points in my target, thus!

Prince. Seven? Why, there were but four even now.

Fal. In buckram? 200

Poins. Ay, four, in buckram suits.

Fal. Seven, by these hilts, or I am a villain else.

186. *Prince.*] *Qq1-4* (subst.); *Poins.* *Q5,F* (subst.). God] *Qq*; Heauen *F*. murdered] *Q1* (murdred); murdered *Qq2-5,F*. 191. ward] *Qq1-4*; word *Q5,F*. bore] *Qq1,2,3* corr., 4,5,*F*; boare *Q3* uncorr. 193. What, four?] *Qq2-5,F*; What foure? *Q1*. 197. made me] *Qq1,2*; made *Qq3-5,F*.

popular interest in Grenville's fight (G. R. Stewart, *PQ*, 1935, xiv. 274-5). Raleigh (*The Fight about the Isles of Azores*, 1591; ed. Arber, 1871, 22), gives the number, "fiftie and three saile", and Markham (ed. Arber, 1871) harps on it—"fiftie three strong ships" (64), "fiftie three great ships" (81), "fiftie three saile" (41, 57), "fiftie three Tygers" (66), and especially "fiftie three gainst one" (65). *Fal.*'s fight assumes the proportions of a national epic.

188. *paid*] settled with, killed.

190. *horse*] This, like "cut" (a curtal horse) or "ass", was contemptuous, and "Call me horse [or cut]" was a popular tag: "if thou hast her not i'the end, call me cut," says Sir Toby Belch (*Tw. N.*, II. iii. 205); and Heywood, *If You Know Not Mr. Shepherd*, I. 206, has "And I do not show you the right rick . . . Ile giue you leaue to call me Cut".

191. *ward*] guard, posture of defence.

here . . . point] this is the guard I took, and thus I pointed my sword.

196. *afront*] abreast.

mainly] with might and main.

198. *target*] Here identified with the buckler (l. 165), though strictly the target was broader than the buckler and was held on the arm, whereas the buckler was grasped in the centre (Planché, *Costume of Sh.'s King Henry the Fourth*, 27).

202. *hilts*] The hilt being divided in three parts—pommel, handle, and shell (Sir Wm Hope, *Compleat Fencing Master*, 1691, 2-3)—could be spoken of as plural; cf. *R3*, I. iv. 160-1—"Take him over the costard with the hilts of thy sword". To swear upon one's sword (a kind of cross), as Hamlet swears his friends to secrecy "upon my sword" (*Ham.*, I. v. 147), was an old form of oath.

Prince. Prithee let him alone, we shall have more anon.

Fal. Dost thou hear me, Hal?

Prince. Ay, and mark thee too, Jack. 205

Fal. Do so, for it is worth the listening to. These nine in buckram that I told thee of—

Prince. So, two more already.

Fal. Their points being broken—

Poins. Down fell their hose. 210

Fal. Began to give me ground; but I followed me close, came in, foot and hand, and, with a thought, seven of the eleven I paid.

Prince. O monstrous! Eleven buckram men grown out of two! 215

Fal. But as the devil would have it, three misbegotten knaves in Kendal green came at my back and let drive at me, for it was so dark, Hal, that thou couldst not see thy hand.

Prince. These lies are like their father that begets them, 220 gross as a mountain, open, palpable. Why, thou clay-brained guts, thou knotty-pated fool, thou whoreson obscene greasy tallow-catch,—

205. too, Jack] *Qq2-5,F (subst.)*; to iacke *Q1*. 210. their] *Q1*; his *Qq2-5,F*. 220. their] *Q1*; the *Qq2-5,F*. 223. catch,—] *QqF (catch.)*, *Pope*; chest. *Dering MS (orig. written catch. and altered)*; ketch,—*Hanmer*; keech,—*Var. 1778, conj. Johnson*; cake,—*Cowl & Morgan*.

209-10. *points . . . hose*] "The double meaning of points must be remembered, which signifies the sharp end of a weapon and the lace [fastening hose to doublet] of a garment" (Johnson).

212. *with a thought*] quick as thought.

217. *Kendal green*] coarsish cloth worn by lower-class people, woodmen, servants, country folk, and perhaps rogues and vagabonds as a disguise: cf. Robert Armin—"Truth, in plaine attire, is the easier knowne: let fixion [fiction] maske in Kendall greene" (*Nest of Ninnies*, ed. Collier, xvi). "Fal.'s imaginary 'knaves' had dressed true to form, either as robber woodmen or as low-class thieves" (Linthicum, 79).

222. *knotty-pated*] block-headed. *OED* cites Ascham's *Scholemaster*—"A witte . . . that is not ouer dulle, knottie and lumpishe".

223. *tallow-catch*] Most simply explained as a dripping pan under roasting meat ("tallow" is animal fat). Of emendations (cf. collation) the best is "keech" (the lump of fat rolled up by the butcher for candle-making). The butcher's wife in *2H4*, II. i. 104, is named "goodwife Keech", and the butcher's son, Wolsey, in *H8*, I. i. 55-7, is a "keech" whose "bulk" keeps the sun's rays from the earth. The superb appropriateness of this to Fal. tempts one to take "tallow-catch", with Kittredge, as "apparently a variant form of *tallow-keech*".

Fal. What, art thou mad? art thou mad? Is not the truth the truth? 225

Prince. Why, how couldst thou know these men in Kendal green when it was so dark thou couldst not see thy hand? Come, tell us your reason. What sayest thou to this?

Poins. Come, your reason, Jack, your reason. 230

Fal. What, upon compulsion? 'Zounds, and I were at the strappado, or all the racks in the world, I would not tell you on compulsion. Give you a reason on compulsion? If reasons were as plentiful as blackberries, I would give no man a reason upon compulsion, I. 235

Prince. I'll be no longer guilty of this sin. This sanguine coward, this bed-presser, this horse-back-breaker, this huge hill of flesh,—

Fal. 'Sblood, you starveling, you eel-skin, you dried 240

231. 'Zounds, and I were] *Qq*; No: were I *F.* 234. plentiful] *Q1*; plentie *Qq2-5, F* (*subst.*). 240. 'Sblood] *Qq*; Away *F.* eel-skin] *Hanmer*; elsskin *Qq1-2* (elfskin); elfskin *Qq3-5*; Elfe-skin *F.*

232. *strappado*] Steevens quotes Randle Holme's *Academy of Armory and Blazon*, 1688, iii. 310: "The *Half Strappado*, is to have the Mans hands tyed cross behind his Back, and so by them to be drawn up to a considerable height, and so let down again; this in the least of it, cannot but pull either the Shoulders or Elbows or both out of Joynt.—The *Whole Strappado*, is when the person is drawn up to his height, and then suddenly to let him fall half way with a jerk, which not only breaketh his Arms to pieces, but also shaketh all his Joynts out of Joint; which Punishment is better to be hanged, than for a Man to undergo". It was, according to Minsheu, "Italis et Hispanis familiare".

234-5. *reasons* . . . *blackberries*] A frequent pun, "reason" and "raisin" being often pronounced alike.

237-8. *sanguine coward*] An oxymoron, cowards being supposedly pale and thin whereas the full-blooded man was sanguine, ruddy, corpulent,

and given to valour. Oriel MS 76, quoted by Skeat (Chaucer, *Prol. Cant. T.*, 333) defines the sanguine man as "Largus, amans, hilaris, ridens, rubeique coloris, Cantans, carnosus, satis audax atque benignus". *Fal.*'s disquisition on sherris (*2H4*, iv. iii. 92 ff.) draws the distinction between "demure boys" of over-cool blood, with a male green-sickness, who are fools and cowards, and the sack-enriched blood which produces courage.

240. *eel-skin*] *Hanmer*'s emendation. The point in these base comparisons is Hal's lankiness. The *Life of Henry V* (c. 1513, ed. Kingsford, 1911, 16) says "This Prince Henrie exceeded the meane stature of men: he was beawtious of visage, his necke was longe, his bodie slender and leane, his boanes smale", and Stow takes this over almost verbatim (*Chron.*, 1580, 582). Hol. calls him "rather leane than grose, somewhat long necked" (iii. 134). In *John*, i. i. 141, the Bastard refers to Robert Faulconbridge's skinny arms as

neat's-tongue, you bull's-pizzle, you stock-fish—O for breath to utter what is like thee!—you tailor's-yard, you sheath, you bow-case, you vile standing tuck!

Prince. Well, breathe awhile, and then to it again, and when thou hast tired thyself in base comparisons hear me speak but this. 245

Poins. Mark, Jack.

Prince. We two saw you four set on four, and bound them and were masters of their wealth—mark now how a plain tale shall put you down. Then did we two set on you four, and, with a word, out-faced you from your prize, and have it, yea, and can show it you here in the house: and Falstaff you carried your 250

241. you bull's-pizzle] *Qq1,2*; buls-pizzel *Qq3-5,F* (*subst.*). 242. utter what . . . thee,] *Q1*; vtter, what . . . thee? *Qq2-5* (*subst.*); vtter. What . . . thee? *F.* 245. to it] *Qq*; to't *F.* 246. tired] *Qq1-4,F*; tried *Q5.* 247. this] *Qq1-3*; thus *Qq4,5,F.* 254. you here] *Qq*; you *F.*

"eel-skins stuff'd"; in *2H4*, III. ii. 353-4, Fal. says of the "starved justice" Shallow that "you might have thrust him and all his apparel into an eel-skin"; and Nathan Field, in *A Woman is a Weathercock*, I. ii. 146-7 (*Works*, ed. Peery, 81), in what seems an echo of this passage, has "that little, old dri'de Neats tongue, that Eele-skin". Did these parallels not point so aptly to this particular emendation there would be a strong case for "elshin" or "elsin", an awl (as suggested by Evans (*Supp.*), the first commentator to observe the reading of *Qq1,2* (cf. collation), which edd. had taken as "elfskin"). E. M. Wright (*Rustic Speech and Folk-Lore*, 1913, 166) lists "to sup sowans [oat-meal and water] with an elshin [a shoemaker's awl]" as a country phrase for trying the impossible. *OED*'s citations for "elsin" are, however, only from trade sources or northern dialect contexts; and though the image would suit Hal's tall spindliness, Fal.'s outburst down to "stock-fish" concentrates rather on his skinniness. Had the word occurred after "tuck",

the reading "elsin" would have been almost irresistible.

241. *neat's*] ox's.

pizzle] The dried bull's pizzle was used as a whip: the idea of elongated shrivelled dryness is brought out in all these metaphors.

stock-fish] dried cod.

243. *bow-case*] A long (usually leather) holder for unstrung bows. The lean Penurio in Beau. & Fl.'s *Women Pleased*, III. ii (*Works*, vii. 268), is a "starv'd rascal . . . precious bow-case".

243-4. *standing tuck*] stiff, upended rapier. "Standing" is a quibble; a blade was said to "stand" when it lost its resiliency.

249. *set . . . bound*] Such alteration in mood is not uncommon; cf. IV. i. 106-7. Wright cites North, *Plutarch, Julius Caesar*—"He sawe a private souldier of his thrust in among the Captaines, and fought so valliantlie. . ."

252. *with a word*] Edd. explain as "in a word, in short". But Hal seems rather to mean that a brief shout was enough to rout the highwaymen.

guts away as nimble, with as quick dexterity, and
 roared for mercy, and still run and roared, as ever I
 heard bull-calf. What a slave art thou to hack thy
 sword as thou hast done, and then say it was in
 fight! What trick, what device, what starting-hole
 canst thou now find out, to hide thee from this open
 and apparent shame?

Poins. Come, let's hear, Jack, what trick hast thou now?

Fal. By the Lord, I knew ye as well as he that made ye.
 Why, hear you, my masters, was it for me to kill the
 heir-apparent? should I turn upon the true prince?
 Why, thou knowest I am as valiant as Hercules: but
 beware instinct—the lion will not touch the true
 prince; instinct is a great matter. I was now a
 coward on instinct: I shall think the better of my-
 self, and thee, during my life—I for a valiant lion,
 and thou for a true prince. But by the Lord, lads, I
 am glad you have the money. Hostess, clap to the
 doors! Watch tonight, pray tomorrow!—Gallants,

256. run] *Qq*; ranne *F.* roared, as] *Q1* (roard, as); roare, as *Qq2-5*; roar'd, as
F. 263. By the Lord] *Qq*; not in *F.* 264. you] *Qq*; ye *F.* 268. was now]
Q1; was *Qq2-5, F.* 271. by the Lord] *Qq*; not in *F.*

259. *starting-hole*] bolt-hole, hiding place. Stow reports Hotspur as saying before Shrewsbury "neither can we, though we would, seeke any starting-hole: stand to it manfully therefore" (*Annales*, 1592, 523).

261. *apparent*] manifest.

267-8. *the lion . . . prince*] This belief is traceable back to Pliny, and Koelbing gives many examples (*Engl. Studien*, xvi, 1892, 454 ff.). In the *Myrrour for Magistrates* (Lord Hastings, ll. 282-3), "Lyons . . . feare the sacred lawes / Of prynces bloud"; in Spenser the lion recognizes Una (*F.Q.*, i. iii. 5-6); in Munday's trans. (1588) of *Palmerin d'Oliua* (pt II, ch. v), "The Lyons comming about him, smelling on his clothes would not touch him; but (as it were knowing the bloud royall) lay downe at his feet and licked him"; and Topsell's *Historie of Foure-footed beastes* (1658 ed., 370) tells of a lion in Eng-

land "which by evident token was able to distinguish betwixt the King, Nobles, and vulgar sort of people". In "true prince" some commentators have seen a dig at Hal's dubious right to succeed, but *Fal.* always accepts him as undoubted heir.

269-70. *I shall think . . . life*] A popular idiom; cf. Middleton, *A Trick to Catch the Old One*, iv. iii ad fin.—"I shall think the better of myself as long as I live".

273. *Watch . . . pray*] *Fal.* again quoting Scripture for his purpose; cf. *Matt.*, xxvi. 41, "Watche, and praye, that ye enter not into temptation". The Genevan version (1560) has "Watch & pray" as a page-heading above *Luke*, xxii. *Fal.* quibbles on "watch" (= (a) keep vigil; (b) carouse—cf. John Heywood, *Thyestes*, 1560, III. i. 143, "nightes paste foorth in watche and wine"), and makes the

lads, boys, hearts of gold, all the titles of good fellowship come to you! What, shall we be merry, 275
shall we have a play extempore?

Prince. Content, and the argument shall be thy running away.

Fal. Ah, no more of that, Hal, and thou lovest me.

Enter Hostess.

Host. O Jesu, my lord the Prince! 280

Prince. How now, my lady the hostess, what say'st thou to me?

Host. Marry, my lord, there is a nobleman of the court at door would speak with you: he says he comes from your father. 285

Prince. Give him as much as will make him a royal man, and send him back again to my mother.

Fal. What manner of man is he?

Host. An old man.

Fal. What doth gravity out of his bed at midnight? 290
Shall I give him his answer?

Prince. Prithce do, Jack.

274. titles of good] *Qq*; good Titles of *F*. 280. O Jesu] *Qq*; not in *F*. 283. lord] *Q1* (Lo.), *Qq2-5* (L.), *F*. nobleman] *QqF* (noble man *Qq1,4,5,F*; noble-man *Qq2,3*).

usual "pray-prey" joke. The sanctimonious words pun respectively on the "Bring in" and "Lay by" (I. ii. 36) by which purses are spent and got.

274. *hearts of gold*] A popular tag: in *H5*, iv. i. 44, Pistol proclaims "The king's a bawcock, and a heart of gold".

276. *a play extempore*] Extempore plays were features of tavern life; cf. ll. 107-8 and 371 ff. Thomas Heywood's *2Ed.4* (Shepherd, i. 93) describes a tipsy impromptu: "Then comes a slave, one of these drunken sots, / In with a tavern-reckoning for a supplication, / Disguised with a cushion on his head, / A drawers apron for a heralds coate, / And tells the Count, the King of England craves / One of his worthy honours dog-ken-

nels, / To be his lodging for a day or two, / With some such other tavern-foolery."

283, 286. *nobleman . . . royal man*] A pun dear to Tudor hearts. A noble was worth 6s. 8d., a royal 10s. Stubbes, *Anat. of Abuses* (ed. Furnivall, pt II, 85), classifies sermons, with reference to the preachers' fees, as "roiall sermons, angell sermons, and noble sermons" (an angel, though once the same as a noble [cf. *OED*, "Angel. 6."], coming to be of variable value between the other two).

290. *gravity*] *Fal.* invents a morality character representing aged respectability. In some moral interludes (e.g. *Youth, Hickscorner*), the Vice scores in the early stages off aged Virtue.

Fal. Faith, and I'll send him packing.

Exit.

Prince. Now, sirs: by'r lady, you fought fair, so did you,
Peto, so did you, Bardolph; you are lions too, you 295
ran away upon instinct, you will not touch the true
prince, no, fie!

Bard. Faith, I ran when I saw others run.

Prince. Faith, tell me now in earnest, how came Fal-
staff's sword so hacked? 300

Peto. Why, he hacked it with his dagger, and said he
would swear truth out of England but he would
make you believe it was done in fight, and per-
suaded us to do the like.

Bard. Yea, and to tickle our noses with spear-grass, to 305
make them bleed, and then to beslobber our gar-
ments with it, and swear it was the blood of true
men. I did that I did not this seven year before, I
blushed to hear his monstrous devices.

Prince. O villain, thou stolest a cup of sack eighteen years 310
ago, and wert taken with the manner, and ever
since thou hast blushed extempore. Thou hadst
fire and sword on thy side, and yet thou ran'st away
—what instinct hadst thou for it?

294. by'r lady] *Qq* (birlady), *Pope*; not in *F*. 295. Bardolph] *Rowe*; Bardol
QqF. lions too,] *Q1* corr. (lions to, *Devonshire-Huntington copy*), *Qq2-5,F*;
lions, to *Q1* uncorr. (*Brit. Mus. and Trin. Coll. Cambr. copies*). 299. Faith] *Qq*;
not in *F*. 305. *Bard.*] *Q1* (*Bar.*), *F*; *Car.* | *Qq2-5*. 308. year] *Qq1-3*;
yeeres *Qq4,5,F*.

302. swear . . . *England*] Middleton's
Family of Love, i. iii (*Works*, ed. Dyce,
1840, ii. 121-2) refers to gallants who
so overdid their swearing by "their
gentility" that "they had almost
sworn away all the ancient gentry out
of the land". *Fal.* will put truth to rout
in any contest of asseveration.

305. tickle . . . -grass] An echo of
F.V. (xix. 17-19), where Dericke ex-
plains how he feigned wounds in the
French wars—"Euery day when I
went into the field, / I would take a
straw and thrust it into my nose. / And
make my nose bleed". The precise
identification of spear-grass is both un-

certain and unimportant; Ellacombe
(*Plant Lore of Sh.*, 295) says that in
eastern counties couch-grass is still
called spear-grass.

311. taken with the manner] Under
"Mainour, alias Manour . . . (or
Maner)" Minsheu has "taken with
the manner, that is, having the thing
stolne about him". "A term of Anglo-
French law, orig. 'mainoure' (= Fr.
manœuvre, lit. hand-work), which ac-
quired the concrete sense of 'thing
stolen' " (Onions). Costard, courting
Jaquenetta, is "taken with the man-
ner" (*LLL.*, i. i. 203).

313. *fire*] i.e. Bardolph's ruddiness.

Bard. My lord, do you see these meteors? do you behold these exhalations? 315

Prince. I do.

Bard. What think you they portend?

Prince. Hot livers, and cold purses.

Bard. Choler, my lord, if rightly taken. 320

Prince. No, if rightly taken, halter.

[*Re-*]enter FALSTAFF.

Here comes lean Jack, here comes bare-bone. How now, my sweet creature of bombast, how long is't ago, Jack, since thou sawest thine own knee?

Fal. My own knee? When I was about thy years, Hal, I was not an eagle's talon in the waist, I could have crept into any alderman's thumb-ring: a plague of sighing and grief, it blows a man up like a bladder. There's villainous news abroad: here was Sir John Bracy from your father; you must to the court in the morning. That same mad fellow of the north, 325 330

321. S.D.] *F* (*Enter Falstaffe*), *Theobald*; *Qq* (*after line 320*). 326. talon] *QqF* (talent), *Q7* (tallon). 330. Bracy] *Qq1,2*; *Bracy Q3*; *Braby Qq4,5,F.* to] *Qq1-4*; go to *Q5,F* (*subst.*). 331. That] *Qq1-4*; The *Q5,F*.

316. *exhalations*] fiery meteors; cf. i. i. 11, note.

319. *Hot . . . purses*] The antithetical results of potations. Charmian in *Ant.*, i. ii. 25, says "I had rather heat my liver with drinking", and Wilson (N.C.S.) points to "hot liuered dronkards" in Nashe's *Unfortunate Traveller* (McKerrow, ii. 247).

320. *Choler . . . taken*] "A choleric (bilious) temperament, if properly interpreted" (Kittredge). The choleric man, whose excess of bile showed in his red face, was supposedly irascible.

321. *No . . . halter*] "Prince Hal's pun is a masterpiece. In a speech only five words long he puns on three words" (Kittredge)—i.e. "rightly" (justly), "taken" (arrested), "halter" (collar, noose).

323. *bombast*] cotton stuffing; Stubbes, *Anat. of Abuses* (ed. Furnivall, pt 1, 55), speaks of monstrous doub-

lets "stuffed with foure, fiue or six pound of Bombast at the least". But the metaphorical sense is present too; cf. *Oth.*, i. i. 13-14—"bombast circumstance / Horribly stuff'd with epithets of war"—and Greene's sarcasm that Shakespeare "supposes he is as well able to bombast out a blanke verse as the best of you" (*Groatsworth of Wit*, ed. G. B. Harrison, 45).

327. *alderman's thumb-ring*] Worn in Shakespeare's time by aldermen and substantial citizens; cf. Brome (*Shepherd*, vol. iii), *Northern Lasse*, ii. i (p. 23)—"A good man i'th' City is . . . one that . . . wears . . . a thumb-Ring with his Grandsirs Sheep-mark, or Grannams butter-print on't, to seal Baggs, Acquittances and Counterpanes" (i.e. "counterparts" of an indenture).

330. *Bracy*] Neither Bracy nor Braby (cf. collation) has been traced in the chronicles.

Percy, and he of Wales that gave Amamon the bastinado, and made Lucifer cuckold, and swore the devil his true liegeman upon the cross of a Welsh hook—what a plague call you him? 335

Poins. O, Glendower.

Fal. Owen, Owen, the same; and his son-in-law Mortimer, and old Northumberland, and that sprightly Scot of Scots, Douglas, that runs a-horseback up a hill perpendicular— 340

Prince. He that rides at high speed, and with his pistol kills a sparrow flying.

Fal. You have hit it.

Prince. So did he never the sparrow.

Fal. Well, that rascal hath good mettle in him, he will not run. 345

Prince. Why, what a rascal art thou then, to praise him so for running!

Fal. A-horseback, ye cuckoo, but afoot he will not budge a foot. 350

Prince. Yes, Jack, upon instinct.

Fal. I grant ye, upon instinct: well, he is there too, and one Mordake, and a thousand blue-caps more. Worcester is stolen away tonight; thy father's beard is turned white with the news; you may buy land now as cheap as stinking mackerel. 355

336. O,] *Qq2-5,F*; O *Q1*; Owen *Dering MS.* 338. that] *Qq1-2*; the *Qq3-5,F*. sprightly] *Qq1,2,F*; sprightie *Q3*; sprightly *Q4*; sprightly *Q5.* 341. his] *Qq1,2*; a *Qq3-5,F.* 349. afoot] *Qq2,3*; a foote *Qq1,4,5,F.* 354. tonight] *Qq1-4*; by night *Q5,F.*

332. *Amamon*] A principal devil. Reginald Scot's *Discov. of Witchcraft*, 1584, xv. iii, mentions "Amaymon, king of the east", and again (xv. xxix) "king Baell, or Amoimon, which are spirits reigning in the furthest regions of the east".

332-3. *bastinado*] cudgelling (strictly, on the soles of the feet).

333. *cuckold*] i.e. made the horns grow on his head.

334-5. *cross . . . Welsh hook*] A kind of Irish bull: the devil swore allegiance, says Fal., on the cross not of the sword,

as customary, but of the crossless Welsh bill-hook.

345-6. *good mettle . . . run*] *Q1* "mettall"; "mettle" and "metal" are "differentiated spellings of the same word" (Onions). Puns: good "metal" does not easily "run", or melt.

347-8. *to praise . . . running*] i.e. if not to run be praiseworthy, you are a rascal to praise him (l. 339) for running.

349. *ye cuckoo*] you witless echoer.

353. *blue-caps*] Scots in their "blue bonnets".

Prince. Why then, it is like if there come a hot June, and this civil buffeting hold, we shall buy maidenheads as they buy hob-nails, by the hundreds.

Fal. By the mass, lad, thou sayest true, it is like we shall have good trading that way. But tell me, Hal, art not thou horrible afeard? Thou being heir apparent, could the world pick thee out three such enemies again, as that fiend Douglas, that spirit Percy, and that devil Glendower? Art thou not horribly afraid? Doth not thy blood thrill at it? 360 365

Prince. Not a whit, i'faith, I lack some of thy instinct.

Fal. Well, thou wilt be horribly chid tomorrow when thou comest to thy father; if thou love me practise an answer. 370

Prince. Do thou stand for my father and examine me upon the particulars of my life.

Fal. Shall I? Content! This chair shall be my state, this dagger my sceptre, and this cushion my crown.

Prince. Thy state is taken for a joint-stool, thy golden sceptre for a leaden dagger, and thy precious rich crown for a pitiful bald crown. 375

Fal. Well, and the fire of grace be not quite out of thee, now shalt thou be moved. Give me a cup of sack to make my eyes look red, that it may be thought I 380

357. Why then] *Qq1,2*; Then *Qq3-5,F*. it is] *Qq1,2*; tis *Qq3-5,F* (*subst.*). June] *Qq1-3*; sun *Qq4,5,F* (*subst.*). 362. horrible] *Qq1,2,4,5,F*; horribly *Q3*. 365. thou not] *Qq1,2*; not thou *Qq3-5,F*. horribly] *Qq1-3*; horrible *Qq4,5,F*. 367. i'faith] *Qq*; not in *F*. 368. horribly] *Qq1-3* (*Q1* horrible); horrible *Qq4,5,F*. 369. love] *Qq1,2*; doe loue *Qq3-5,F*. 375. stool] *Qq1-4,F* (*stoole*); *Stole Q5*. 380. my] *Qq1,2*; mine *Qq3-5,F*.

357-8. *hot . . . buffeting*] The connection between these is, perhaps, "Given the heat of summer, and the excitements of civil war, the girls won't resist us at all".

364. *spirit*] i.e. of mischief; "spirit. 3. A supernatural being . . . frequently conceived of as troublesome, terrifying, or hostile to mankind" (*OED*).

366. *thrill*] shiver with cold; cf. *Meas.*, III. i. 121—"thrilling region of thick-ribbed ice".

373. *state*] chair of state, a throne on

a dais beneath a canopy. On extempore plays see l. 276, note.

375. *taken for*] seen to be.

joint-stool] "A stool made by a joiner of parts joined and fitted together, as distinguished from one of more clumsy workmanship" (*OED*).

376. *leaden dagger*] A theatrical property, "type of ineffectual weapon" (*OED*); cf. Beau. & Fl., *Little French Lawyer*, II. ii (*Works*, III. 396)—"There's twelve pence, go buy you two leaden Daggers".

have wept, for I must speak in passion, and I will do it in King Cambyzes' vein.

Prince. Well, here is my leg.

Fal. And here is my speech. Stand aside, nobility.

Host. O Jesu, this is excellent sport, i'faith.

385

Fal. Weep not, sweet Queen, for trickling tears are vain.

Host. O the Father, how he holds his countenance!

Fal. For God's sake, lords, convey my tristful Queen,
For tears do stop the floodgates of her eyes.

Host. O Jesu, he doth it as like one of these harlotry 390
players as ever I see!

Fal. Peace, good pint-pot, peace, good tickle-brain.—
Harry, I do not only marvel where thou spendest
thy time, but also how thou art accompanied. For

385. O Jesu] *Qq*; not in *F*.
390. Jesu] *Qq*; rare *F*.

388. tristful] *Dering MS, Rowe*; trustfull *QqF*.

381. *in passion*] with deep emotion.

382. *King Cambyzes' vein*] i.e. that of Thomas Preston's *Lamentable Tragedie, mixed full of pleasant mirth, containing the Life of Cambises, King of Persia*, 1569. Johnson surmised that Shakespeare knew it only by hearsay, since he did not imitate its tempting rhymed fourteener measure (the "very tragical mirth" of *Pyramus and Thisbe* seems, however, to parody its title—*MND*, v. i. 57); Wilson (N.C.S.) thinks that such imitation existed in an earlier version of *1H4*, but in revision was discarded for up-to-date echoes of *Lyly* or *Greene*. But the style parodied in ll. 386, 388–9, is so much the staple of the time that unmistakable identification is impossible. The idiom is as much like *Preston* as anybody, and, as for the metre, "King Cambyzes' vein" seems to have implied the ludicrous rant of such plays rather than any particular specimen, as it does in *Buckingham's Rehearsal*, 1672, Prologue—"There, strutting Heroes, with a grim-fac'd train, / Shall brave the Gods, in King Cambyzes' vein". Even the evident *Lyly* parody (ll. 393 ff.) might be included under such a generalized "Cambyzes" label. See App. V.

383. *leg*] bow.

386–9. *Weep . . . eyes*] *Preston's Cambises* has a S.D. "At this tale told, let the Queen weep", followed by "Queen. These words to hear makes stilling tears issue from crystal eyes. / King. What doest thou mean, my spouse, to weep for loss of any prize?" (*Hazlitt's Dodsley*, iv. 236). Other echoes suggested are from *Greene's Alphonsus*, l. 1825—"Then, daintie damsell, stint these trickling teares"; *Myrroure for Magistrates* (ed. Campbell, 271, l. 96)—"Full manye a tricklyng teare theyr mouthes did drynke"; and *Soliman and Perseda*, iv. i. 94–5—"mine eyes] are stopt with flouds of flowing teares".

387. *holds his countenance*] keeps a straight (or solemn?) face.

390. *harlotry*] scurvy, knavish; sometimes, as here, used rather appreciatively.

392. *pint-pot . . . tickle-brain*] Names suggesting the hostess's occupation. "Tickle-brain" was slang for a kind of strong liquor; *Davenport, New Tricke to Cheat the Divell*, iii. i (Bullen, *Old Plays*, New ser., iii. 232), has "A Cup of Nipsitate, briske and neate; / The Drawers call it Tickle-braine".

though the camomile, the more it is trodden on the 395
 faster it grows, yet youth, the more it is wasted the
 sooner it wears. That thou art my son I have partly
 thy mother's word, partly my own opinion, but
 chiefly a villainous trick of thine eye, and a foolish
 hanging of thy nether lip, that doth warrant me. If 400
 then thou be son to me, here lies the point—why,
 being son to me, art thou so pointed at? Shall the
 blessed sun of heaven prove a micher, and eat

395. trodden on] *Qq1-3* (troden on); trodē on *Q4*; troden *Q5,F*. 396. yet] *Qq3-5,F*; so *Qq1,2*. 397. That thou] *Qq1,2*; thou *Qq3-5,F*. 398. my own] *Qq1,2*; my *Qq3-5,F*. 400. thy] *Qq1-3,5,F*; the *Q4*. 401. lies] *Qq1-2*; lieth *Qq3-5,F* (*subst.*). 403. sun] *Q1* (*sunne*); sonne *Qq2-5,F*.

395-7. *camomile . . . wears*] Cf. Lyly, *Euphuies, Anatomy of Wyt* (Bond, i. 196) —“Though the Camomill, the more it is trodden and pressed downe, the more it spreadeth yet the violet the oftner it is handled and touched, the sooner it withereth and decayeth”. Gerard's *Herball* (1633 ed., 754-5) says “The common Cammomill hath many weak and feeble branches trailing vpon the ground, taking hold on the top of the earth as it runneth, whereby it greatly increaseth”. Tilley, C34, gives several examples of this simile, including three before Lyly. Among the euphuistic traits Fal. parodies are the use of similes from natural history, the affectation of recondite learning, trite quotations, rhetorical questions, and verbal antitheses and alliterations.

396. *yet youth*] Unauthoritative though *Q3* is, the sense, as well as the Lyly parallel, requires this emendation.

399. *trick*] characteristic.

399-400. *foolish . . . lip*] “foolish” probably in the sense of “wanton”, “roguish”; cf. Beau. & Fl., *Philaster*, iv. i (*Works*, i. 117)—“a foolish twinkling with the eye”. A hanging lower lip was a mark of beauty and wantonness: cf. John Day, *Law-Tricks* (Mal. Soc., 1949/1950, ll. 1005-6)—“*Emilia*]: Marke but the glance of his eye. *Iulio*]: The hanging of his neither

[sic] lip”; and Brome (*Shepherd*, iii. 476), *Queens Exchange*, ii. i—“the hanging of the nether lip, / Which the best Physiognomists do tell us / Shews women apt to lust, and strong incontinence”. The features Fal. mentions have no warrant in the chronicles.

402. *pointed at*] i.e. derisively. In *2H6*, ii. iv. 46-7, the Duchess of Gloucester is “a pointing-stock / To every idle rascal follower”.

402-9. *Shall . . . defile*] In *NQ*, vol. 199, 19, Arnold Davenport points out that this passage parallels Lyly's *Campaspe* (Bond, ii. 329-30), where Hephestion, in rhetorical questions, rebukes Alexander for forgetting his royal station and falling in love with a captive girl. He begins “What! is the sonne of *Phillip*, king of Macedon, become the subiect of *Campaspe*, the captiue of *Thebes*?”, and observes “Bewty is like the blackberry, which seemeth red, when it is not ripe”. In reply, Alexander compares his fallen condition with that of the sun in eclipse. The rhetorical manner, the reproof to fallen royalty, and the king's-son-heaven's-sun-blackberry elements suggest a probable connection.

403-4. *micher . . . blackberries*] To mitch, mich, or mooch is “to play truant, espec. . . in order to gather blackberries” (Wright, *Engl. Dial. Dict.*). Miching and blackberrying have long been and still are associated.

blackberries? A question not to be asked. Shall the
 son of England prove a thief, and take purses? A 405
 question to be asked. There is a thing, Harry, which
 thou hast often heard of, and it is known to many
 in our land by the name of pitch. This pitch (as
 ancient writers do report) doth defile, so doth the
 company thou keepest: for, Harry, now I do not 410
 speak to thee in drink, but in tears; not in pleasure,
 but in passion; not in words only, but in woes also.
 And yet there is a virtuous man whom I have often
 noted in thy company, but I know not his name.

Prince. What manner of man, and it like your Majesty? 415

Fal. A goodly portly man, i'faith, and a corpulent; of a
 cheerful look, a pleasing eye, and a most noble cari-
 riage; and, as I think, his age some fifty, or by'r lady
 inclining to threescore; and now I remember me,
 his name is Falstaff. If that man should be lewdly 420
 given, he deceiveth me; for, Harry, I see virtue in
 his looks. If then the tree may be known by the fruit,
 as the fruit by the tree, then peremptorily I speak it,
 there is virtue in that Falstaff; him keep with, the
 rest banish. And tell me now, thou naughty varlet, 425
 tell me where hast thou been this month?

410. Harry, now] *Q1* corr. (*Devonshire-Huntington copy*), *Qq2-5, F*; Harry now, *Q1*
uncorr. (*Brit. Mus. and Trin. Coll. Cambr. copies*). 421. deceiveth] *Qq1, 2*;
 deceives *Qq3-5, F*.

J. E. Cross offers a modern French
 parallel—"faire l'école buissonnière"
 ('On the Meaning of "A-Blakebery-
 ed"', *RES*, New ser., II, 1951, 373).

405. *son*] The sun/son quibble has
 here a deeper resonance, a virtual
 identification, from the traditional
 association of kingship and the sun. In
 these speeches Fal. develops a formal
 rhetorical pattern, in which tradition-
 al symbols, Biblical echoes, and cita-
 tion of authorities combine.

408-9. *pitch . . . defile*] *Ecclus.*, xiii. 1
 —"Who so toucheth pyth, shalbe de-
 fyled withall"; an appropriate part of
 the Lyly parody since Lyly himself
 quotes it in *Euphues to Philautus* (Bond,
 i. 250), and *Letters Writ by Euphues*

(Bond, i. 320). Fal.'s echo is doubly apt.

412. *passion*] Cf. l. 381.

416. *portly*] of stately bearing; cf. i.
 iii. 12-13, note.

corpulent] "full-bodied—not in the
 modern sense of 'extremely stout'"
 (Kittredge).

420. *lewdly*] "2. wickedly, evilly;
 vilely, mischievously . . . 4. lascivi-
 ously" (*OED*).

422-3. *If . . . tree*] A popular tag,
 from *Matt.*, xii. 33—"The tree is
 known by his fruit"; similarly *Luke*,
 vi. 44. As in ll. 408-9, Fal. can cite
 Scripture and Lyly concurrently;
Euphues (Bond, i. 207) has "No, no, y^e
 tree is known by his fruits".

423. *peremptorily*] decisively.

Prince. Dost thou speak like a king? Do thou stand for me, and I'll play my father.

Fal. Depose me? If thou dost it half so gravely, so majestically, both in word and matter, hang me up by the heels for a rabbit-sucker, or a poulter's hare. 430

Prince. Well, here I am set.

Fal. And here I stand. Judge, my masters.

Prince. Now, Harry, whence come you?

Fal. My noble lord, from Eastcheap. 435

Prince. The complaints I hear of thee are grievous.

Fal. 'Sblood, my lord, they are false: nay, I'll tickle ye for a young prince, i'faith.

Prince. Swearest thou, ungracious boy? Henceforth ne'er look on me. Thou art violently carried away from grace, there is a devil haunts thee in the likeness of an old fat man, a tun of man is thy companion. Why dost thou converse with that trunk of humours, that bolting-hutch of beastliness, that swollen parcel of dropsies, that huge bombard of sack, that stuffed cloak-bag of guts, that roasted Manningtree 440 445

437. 'Sblood] *Qq*; Yfaith *F*. 438. i'faith] *Qq*; not in *F*. 442. an old fat] *Qq* 1-4; a fat old *Q5, F*.

431. *rabbit-sucker . . . hare*] baby rabbit . . . hare hanging in a poulterer's shop. "The jest is in comparing himself to something thin and little" (Johnson).

432. *set*] seated.

437-8. *I'll . . . prince*] i.e. "Watch me play a young prince; this will tickle you"; cf. Thomas Heywood, *Maydenhead well lost* (Shepherd, iv. 139)—"*Clowne*: I did but doo't to make you smile: Nay, Ile tickle you for a Doctor".

439. *ungracious*] graceless, profane.

440-1. *violently . . . devil*] This, Wilson (N.C.S.) points out, may echo Nashe, *Pierce Penilesse* (McKerrow, i. 220)—"the Diuell . . . violently carries him away to vanitie, villanie, or monstrous hypocrisie".

443. *humours*] "morbid secretions . . . ; practically equivalent to diseases" (Kittredge).

444. *bolting-hutch*] sifting-bin.

445. *bombard*] a big leather wine vessel, whose portliness is indicated in *Tp.*, II. ii. 20-2—"Yond same black cloud, yond huge one, looks like a foul bombard that would shed his liquor".

446. *cloak-bag*] portmanteau. Similarly used in *Return from Parnassus*, pt 2 (ed. J. B. Leishman, iv. ii. 1656-7)—"you that are a plagie stuffed Cloake-bagge of all iniquitie".

446-7. *roasted . . . ox*] East Anglia was famous for fat oxen, but why Shakespeare picked on Manningtree in Essex is uncertain. The morality-references in Hal's mind ("grace", "devil", "vice", "iniquity", "ruffian", "vanity") may have suggested Manningtree by association, for it was known for morality-play performances. Malone quotes Dekker, *Seuen Deadly Sinnes*, 1606 (Grosart, ii. 73)—"the old Morralls at *Maningtree*

ox with the pudding in his belly, that reverend vice,
that grey iniquity, that father ruffian, that vanity in
years? Wherein is he good, but to taste sack and
drink it? wherein neat and cleanly, but to carve a 450
capon and eat it? wherein cunning, but in craft?
wherein crafty, but in villainy? wherein villainous,
but in all things? wherein worthy, but in nothing?

Fal. I would your Grace would take me with you: whom
means your Grace? 455

Prince. That villainous abominable misleader of youth,
Falstaff, that old white-bearded Satan.

Fal. My lord, the man I know.

Prince. I know thou dost.

[acted] by Trades-men", and *Choise of Valentines* (by Nashe?; McKerrow, subscribers' ed., iii. 404)—"To . . . see a playe of strange moralitie / Shewen by Bachelrie of Maningtree; / Where-to the Contrie franklins flock-meale swarm / And thou and Jone com marching arme in arme". The "strange moralitie" was apparently the reason why in 1611 certain inhabitants complained to the King's commissioners that "at whitsontyde some vayne and ill disposed stage players haue very muche abused the said place" (i.e. the premises of the town chapel), and were promised that there would be a prohibition of "any stage playes or suche lyke vayne or profane exercise" (C. Fell Smith, 'A Note on Manningtree in 1611', *Essex Review*, 1906, xv. 155). Manningham's *Diary*, 1602-3 (Camden Soc., 1868, 130), says "The towne of Manitre in Essex holdes [its fair rights?] by stage playes", and Heywood's *Apology for Actors*, 1612 (Sh. Soc. ed., 61), is to the same effect. This idea is probably erroneous, but it does associate the plays with the fair. Both fairs and performances might well have been accompanied by ox-roastings and be well reputed among hungry troupers.

447. *pudding*] stuffing. "An extension of the orig. meaning of the word

= 'mixture of meat, herbs, &c. stuffed into an animal's stomach or intestine', which survives in 'black pudding' (Onions). Wilson (N.C.S.) cites, from Nashe, "All the rest of his inuention is nothing but an oxe with a pudding in his bellie" (*Christes Teares*; McKerrow, ii. 180).

vice] Cf. ll. 133-4, note.

447-8. *vice . . . iniquity . . . ruffian . . . vanity*] Morality-references. Jonson, *The Devil is an Ass*, i. i. 40-3 (H. & S., vi. 165), has "SAT[AN]: What Vice? . . . Pug. Why any, Fraud; / Or Cou-tousnesse; or Lady Vanity; / Or old Iniquity". "Ruffian" was a cant word for the Devil, e.g. in the Chester miracle plays (cf. *OED*, 'ruffin'). (Wilson, N.C.S.). But also, "ruffian" meant the interlude hooligan. The point of "father ruffian" and "vanity in years", Dr T. W. Craik points out to me, is that the interlude "ruffian" and "vanity" were normally young. Hal taunts Fal., who should by now be aged "gravity", with arrested development at the young-scapegrace stage.

450. *cleanly*] deft, dextrous.

451. *cunning*] skilful.

454. *take . . . you*] "Go no faster than I can follow you" (Johnson).

456. *misleader of youth*] The fundamental morality-role of the Devil and his agents.

Fal. But to say I know more harm in him than in myself 460
 were to say more than I know. That he is old, the
 more the pity, his white hairs do witness it, but that
 he is, saving your reverence, a whoremaster, that I
 utterly deny. If sack and sugar be a fault, God help 465
 the wicked! If to be old and merry be a sin, then
 many an old host that I know is damned: if to be fat
 be to be hated, then Pharaoh's lean kine are to be
 loved. No, my good lord; banish Peto, banish Bar-
 dolph, banish Poins—but for sweet Jack Falstaff,
 kind Jack Falstaff, true Jack Falstaff, valiant Jack 470
 Falstaff, and therefore more valiant, being as he is
 old Jack Falstaff, banish not him thy Harry's com-
 pany, banish not him thy Harry's company, banish
 plump Jack, and banish all the world.

Prince. I do, I will. [A knocking heard. Exeunt 475
Hostess, Francis, and Bardolph.]

[*Re-*]enter BARDOLPH, running.

Bard. O my lord, my lord, the sheriff with a most mons-
 trous watch is at the door.

Fal. Out, ye rogue! Play out the play! I have much to
 say in the behalf of that Falstaff.

[*Re-*]enter the *Hostess*.

Host. O Jesu, my lord, my lord! 480

464. God] *Qq*; Heauen *F*. 467. lean] *Qq2-5, F*; lane *Q1*. 468-9. Bar-
 dolph] *F*; Bardoll *Qq* (*subst.*). 475. S.D.] *Malone*; Enter *Bardoll* running. /
QqF (*subst.*). 476. most] *Qq*; most most *F*. 478. ye] *Q1*; you *Qq2-5, F*.
 479. S.D. *Re-enter*] *QqF* (*Enter*), *Theobald*. 480. Jesu] *Qq*; not in *F*.

467. *Pharaoh's lean kine*] *Gen.*, xli.
 19-21.

469-72. *sweet . . . Jack Falstaff*] A
 probable echo of Nashe, *Haue with you*,
 1596 (McKerrow, iii. 5-6)—“curteous
 Dicke, comicall Dicke, liuely Dicke,
 louely Dicke, learned Dicke, olde
Dicke of Lichfield”.

475. S.D. A knocking . . . Bardolph]
QqF S.D. here simply reads *Enter Bar-*
doll running, and at l. 479 *Enter the hos-*
tesse, having marked no previous exits

for them. Sisson would have them
 leave after l. 392. Wilson (N.C.S.)
 thinks they must have slipped out at
 some unspecified time, since if they
 now leave and return “the stage [is]
 silent for several moments, which is
 absurd”. But the stage-business of
 tumult “off” is hardly “silence” and
 abundantly covers their momentary
 absence. Who has the heart to deprive
 two such devoted Falstaffians of any
 part of their master's performance?

Prince. Heigh, heigh, the devil rides upon a fiddle-stick,
what's the matter?

Host. The sheriff and all the watch are at the door; they
are come to search the house. Shall I let them in?

Fal. Dost thou hear, Hal? Never call a true piece of gold 485
a counterfeit: thou art essentially made without
seeming so.

Prince. And thou a natural coward without instinct.

Fal. I deny your major. If you will deny the sheriff, so; if
not, let him enter. If I become not a cart as well as 490
another man, a plague on my bringing up! I hope
I shall as soon be strangled with a halter as another.

Prince. Go hide thee behind the arras, the rest walk up

481. *Prince.*] *Qq*1-3; *Fal.* / *Qq*4,5,*F* (*subst.*); *Poy.* / *Dering MS.* 486. made]
*Qq*Ff1,2, mad *Ff*3,4, many *edd.*

481. *Heigh . . . fiddle-stick*] i.e. "The Devil's leading this dance". Proverbial; Tilley D263. "The association of the devil with dancing and dance music is a venerable notion, not to be ascribed (as has been thoughtlessly suggested) to a Puritan origin" (Kittredge).

485-7. *Never . . . so*] A much-discussed passage. Many *edd.* follow *Ff*3,4, changing "made" to "mad", but this hardly helps the sense, though by balancing with "coward" (l. 488) "mad" may seem to connect the two speeches. The idea behind *Fal.*'s "flying quibble" (Elton) is that of "genuine worth mistaken for falsity"; both he himself and Hal might be thus misjudged. He says, therefore, "Listen to me, Hal: don't denounce me, a true piece of gold, as a counterfeit (and so peculiarly obnoxious to the law); you yourself are the real thing, though you may not look like it (and the same is true of me)". The prince's reply then is "You are getting into a panic as you did before", whereupon *Fal.* rallies with a quibble and a pun. *Fal.* may possibly, however, mean that Hal is the true piece of gold; "prove true in your friendship, do not play me false, for you are made of true gold, though

you do not look it". Massinger, *Parliament of Love*, III. ii. 150-1, has "I proved true gold, / And current in my friendship".

489. *your major*] *Qq*F "your Maior"; i.e. "your major premiss" (a term in syllogistic logic), quibbling on "major/mayor", pronounced and often spelt alike. Hardin Craig (*Sh. and Formal Logic*, 1929, 385) reconstructs the supposed syllogism thus: "*Major premiss*: Natural cowards are cowards without instinct. *Minor premiss*: *Fal.* is a natural coward. *Conclusion*: *Fal.* is a coward without instinct". But, he comments, what *Fal.* in fact denies in the above is the *minor* premiss, though, eager for his pun, he confuses the two.

490. *If . . . cart*] If I am not a credit to the cart taking me to the gallows.

491. *bringing up*] (a) breeding; (b) summoning before a law court. In the prodigal plays, Dr T. W. Craik suggests to me, the stress was on the prodigal's bad upbringing which led him to the gallows. *Fal.*'s jest is that at the gallows he will bear himself well because his upbringing was good.

493. *arras*] curtain before the inner stage. In actual houses the arras stood away from the walls on wooden frames

above. Now, my masters, for a true face, and good conscience.

495

Fal. Both which I have had, but their date is out, and therefore I'll hide me. [*Exeunt all but the Prince and Peto.*]

Prince. Call in the sheriff.

Enter Sheriff and the Carrier.

Now, master sheriff, what is your will with me?

Sher. First, pardon me, my lord. A hue and cry 500

Hath follow'd certain men unto this house.

Prince. What men?

Sher. One of them is well known, my gracious lord,

A gross fat man.

Car. As fat as butter.

Prince. The man I do assure you is not here, 505

For I myself at this time have employ'd him:

And sheriff, I will engage my word to thee,

That I will by tomorrow dinner-time

Send him to answer thee, or any man,

For anything he shall be charg'd withal; 510

And so let me entreat you leave the house.

497. S.D.] *Collier; Exit. / F; not in Qq.* 499. Now] *Theobald; Prin.* Now *QqF*
(*subst.*). 499-504.] *As Pope; prose, QqF.* 501. follow'd] *Rowe; followed QqF.*

and could provide concealment; cf. Beau. & Fl., *Woman-Hater*, III. iv (*Works*, x. 109)—“Farewell, my fellow Courtiers all, with whom, / I have of yore made many a scrambling meal / In corners, behind Arasses, on stairs”.

497. S.D. *Exeunt . . . Peto*] *Qq* have no S.D. for this, and *F* has merely *Exit*. Who remains with Hal—*Peto*, or *Poins*? *QqF* give *Peto* the speeches at II. 521, 526, 543 (there is no prefix at I. 528) and make Hal use his name at I. 542. But the *Dering MS.*, though it makes *Poins* go out here, gives him *Peto*'s speeches in the remainder of the scene and reads “*Poins*” at I. 542. Johnson preferred *Poins* as Hal's companion and the recipient of an “honourable” place (I. 538), and some edd. follow. At III. iii. 196 the same uncertainty arises. Confusion might have occurred if the *MS* speech-prefixes

were *Po.*, which occurs for *Poins* in *Qo*. But it still remains true that “*Peto*” occurs in I. 542, and anyone substituting “*Poins*” there ignores the fact that Hal's form of address is normally not “*Poins*” but “*Ned*” (e.g. I. ii. 108; II. ii. 71, 103; II. iv. 1, 20-2, 28). He uses “*Poins*” once (II. iv. 83), only in summoning him from off-stage, and “*Ned Poins*” once (II. ii. 58), only to third parties. *Poins* himself is usually more familiar than I. 543's “good my lord” (e.g. “*Hal*”, “sweet *Hal*”, “my good sweet honey Prince”, “sirrah”, “my lad”). So *Peto* seems the likelier companion here, and there is no need to amend *QqF*.

500. *hue and cry*] In *F.V.*, “the Towne of Detfort is risen / With hue and crie after your man / Which . . . robd a poore Carrier” (i. 19-22).

Sher. I will, my lord: there are two gentlemen
Have in this robbery lost three hundred marks.

Prince. It may be so: if he have robb'd these men
He shall be answerable; and so, farewell. 515

Sher. Good night, my noble lord.

Prince. I think it is good morrow, is it not?

Sher. Indeed, my lord, I think it be two o'clock.

Exit[, with Carrier.]

Prince. This oily rascal is known as well as Paul's: go call
him forth. 520

Peto. Falstaff!—Fast asleep behind the arras, and snort-
ing like a horse.

Prince. Hark how hard he fetches breath—search his
pockets. (*He searcheth his pockets, and findeth certain
papers.*) What hast thou found? 525

Peto. Nothing but papers, my lord.

Prince. Let's see what they be, read them.

[<i>Peto.</i>] [<i>Reads</i>] Item a capon	2s. 2d.	
Item sauce	4d.	
Item sack two gallons	5s. 8d.	530
Item anchovies and sack after supper	2s. 6d.	
Item bread	ob.	

[*Prince.*] O monstrous! but one halfpennyworth of bread
to this intolerable deal of sack? What there is else
keep close, we'll read it at more advantage. There 535
let him sleep till day; I'll to the court in the morn-
ing. We must all to the wars, and thy place shall be
honourable. I'll procure this fat rogue a charge of

513. three hundred] *Qq* (300.), *F.* 518. S.D. with Carrier] *Hanmer* (subst.);
not in *QqF*. 521, 526, 543. *Peto*] *QqF*; *Poins* / *Dering MS*, Var. 1773, conj. *John-*
son. 524. S.D. pockets] *Qq* 4,5,*F*; pocket *Qq* 1-3. 525. papers.) What] *Hanmer*;
papers. / *Pr.* What *QqF* (subst.). 527. see . . . be,] *Q* 1; see what they be: *Qq* 2,3;
see what be they: *Qq* 4,5; see, what be they? *F.* 528. *Peto.*] *F*; not in *Qq*; *Poins.* /
Dering MS, Var. 1773, conj. *Johnson.* 528. S.D.] *Capell*; not in *QqF*. 533.
Prince.] *F*; not in *Qq*.

531. anchovies] Eaten to provoke
thirst: "twelve penyworth of An-
choves, 18d" is a tavern-item for four
sea-captains in Thomas Heywood's
Faire Maid of the West, II. i (Shepherd,
ii. 280).

532. ob.] obolus, half-penny.

534. intolerable] "1.†c. extreme, ex-
ceedingly great" (*OED*).

538-9. charge of foot] Cf. III. iii. 185.
"A company of infantry commanded
by a captain and including subordi-
nates from the recruit to the lieu-
tenant" (*Jorgensen*).

foot, and I know his death will be a march of twelve
 score. The money shall be paid back again with 540
 advantage. Be with me betimes in the morning;
 and so, good morrow, Peto.

Peto. Good morrow, good my lord.

Exeunt.

539. march] *Qq1-3*; match *Qq4,5,F*.
 1773, *conj.* Johnson.

542. Peto] *QqF*; Poins *Dering MS, Var.*

539-40. *twelve score*] sc. "paces".

541. *advantage*] interest.

[ACT III]

[SCENE I.—*Bangor. The Archdeacon's House.*]

Enter HOTSPUR, WORCESTER, LORD MORTIMER,
OWEN GLENDOWER.

Mort. These promises are fair, the parties sure,
And our induction full of prosperous hope.

Hot. Lord Mortimer, and cousin Glendower, will you
sit down?

And uncle Worcester. A plague upon it!
I have forgot the map.

Glend. No, here it is: 5
Sit, cousin Percy, sit, good cousin Hotspur;
For by that name as oft as Lancaster doth speak of you
His cheek looks pale, and with a rising sigh
He wisheth you in heaven.

ACT III

Scene 1

ACT III SCENE I.] *F* (*Actus Tertius. Scena Prima.*); *not in Qq.* *Location.*] *Theobald*
(*The Archdeacon of Bangor's House in Wales*). 3-9. Lord . . . heaven] *As F* (*subst.*;
line 3 reading Lord . . . Glendower, / Will . . . downe?); *prose, Qq.* 8. cheek looks]
Qq; Cheekes looke *F.* sigh] *Qq* 1,5,*F*; sight *Qq* 2-4.

Location.] Since *QqF* specify no locality, none need really be provided; but if the scene must have a local habitation and a name this, which *Theobald* derived from *Hol.* (cf. *App. III*, p. 170), is the best.

2. *induction*] opening scene, before the main action of a play.

3-10.] *Qq* print as prose, and presumably the original "copy" looked like prose. But the scene should be conceived in verse from the beginning, and Dr Harold Brooks suggests how the error arose. Shakespeare seems at times to have written 1½ lines as 1,

especially where hemistiches were involved: if he wrote line 3 thus, and carried on in 1½ lines (ending down? / *map.* / *Hotspur*; / *of you* / *heaven.* / *spoke of.*), the compositor would see the passage as prose. The present ll. 3 and 7 are perhaps portions of this "free" composition where Shakespeare himself lost track of his line-lengths. Since they cannot be reduced to decasyllables without producing surplus words which improperly halt the rhythm they have been left in their overgrown condition; the movement is lithe enough.

- Hot.* And you in hell,
As oft as he hears Owen Glendower spoke of. 10
- Glend.* I cannot blame him; at my nativity
The front of heaven was full of fiery shapes,
Of burning cressets, and at my birth
The frame and huge foundation of the earth
Shak'd like a coward.
- Hot.* Why, so it would have done 15
At the same season if your mother's cat
Had but kitten'd, though yourself had never been born.
- Glend.* I say the earth did shake when I was born.
- Hot.* And I say the earth was not of my mind,
If you suppose as fearing you it shook. 20
- Glend.* The heavens were all on fire, the earth did tremble—
- Hot.* O, then the earth shook to see the heavens on fire,
And not in fear of your nativity.
Diseased nature oftentimes breaks forth
In strange eruptions, oft the teeming earth 25
Is with a kind of colic pinch'd and vex'd
By the imprisoning of unruly wind

9-10. And . . . of.] *As Collier; prose, QqF.* 14. and huge] *Q1; and Qq2-5,F.*
15. Shak'd] *Q5,F; Shaked Qq1-4.* 15-17. Why . . . born] *As Pope; prose, QqF.* 21. tremble—] *Qq1,2 (tremble,); tremble. Qq3-5,F.* 22. O . . . fire] *Qq (reading Oh); Oh . . . shooke / To . . . fire F.* 25. oft] *Qq1-3; of Q4; and Q5,F.*

11. *my nativity*] For portents on Mortimer's birth (which might be confused with Glendower's), see App. III, p. 169. Shakespeare's portents, however, are different, and may owe something to the "blasing starre" which in 1402 foretold Glendower's defeat of Lord Grey (Hol., iii. 19).

13. *cressets*] stars like fire-baskets, or beacons.

25. *eruptions*] outbreaks, "with notion of a 'breaking out' of latent disease or of peccant humours" (*OED*).

25-30. *oft . . . towers*] This explanation goes back at least to classical antiquity, e.g. Aristotle, *Meteorologica*, II. 7-8, Pliny, *Nat. Hist.*, II. lxxxi, and Plutarch, *Opinions of Philosophers*, Bk III. xv (in *Morales of Plutarch*, trans.

Holland, 1603). Gabriel Harvey's *Pleasant . . . Discourse of the Earthquake in Aprill Last*, 1580 (Grosart, i. 52), says "The Materiall Cause of Earthquakes (as . . . is sufficiently prooued by Aristotle in ye second Booke of his *Meteors*) is no doubt great abundance of wynde, or stoare of grosse and drye vapors, and spirites fast shut up, & as a man would saye, emprysoned in the Caues, and Dungeons of the Earth: which winde or vapors, seeking to be set at libertie . . . violently rush out . . . which forcible Eruption, and strong breath, causeth an Earthquake". As late as the 18th c. Young writes "As yawns an earthquake, when imprison'd air / Struggles for vent" (*Last Day*, i. 286-7).

Within her womb, which for enlargement striving
Shakes the old beldam earth, and topples down
Steeple and moss-grown towers. At your birth 30
Our grandam earth, having this distemp'rature,
In passion shook.

Glend. Cousin, of many men
I do not bear these crossings; give me leave
To tell you once again that at my birth
The front of heaven was full of fiery shapes, 35
The goats ran from the mountains, and the herds
Were strangely clamorous to the frightened fields.
These signs have mark'd me extraordinary,
And all the courses of my life do show
I am not in the roll of common men. 40
Where is he living, clipp'd in with the sea
That chides the banks of England, Scotland, Wales,
Which calls me pupil or hath read to me?
And bring him out that is but woman's son
Can trace me in the tedious ways of art, 45
And hold me pace in deep experiments.

Hot. I think there's no man speaks better Welsh:
I'll to dinner.

Mort. Peace, cousin Percy, you will make him mad.

29. topples] *Qq1-4*; toples *Q5*; tombles *F*. 33. crossings] *Qq1,2,5,F*; crossing *Qq3,4*. 41. he] *Qq1-3*; the *Qq4,5,F*. 42. Wales] *Qq1-4*; and Wales *Q5,F*. 44. son] sonne, *Q1 corr.* (*Brit. Mus. copy*), *Qq2-5,F*; sonne? *Q1 uncorr.* (*Trin. Coll. Cambr. and Devonshire-Huntington copies*).

29. *beldam*] grandmother, grandam (l. 31).

31. *distemp'rature*] constitutional disorder, earthly or celestial; Nashe satirizes the author of "an absurd *Astrologically Discourse* of the terrible Coniunction of *Saturne* and *Iupiter*, wherein (as if hee had lately cast the Heauens water, or beene at the anatomizing of the Skies entrailes . . .) hee prophecieth of such strange wonders to ensue from stars destemperature" (*Pierce Penilless*; McKerrow, i. 196).

32. *passion*] spasm of suffering.

42. *chides*] A characteristically living image for the chafing sea. "The more we study . . . the clearer it becomes that

there is one quality . . . which overpoweringly attracts [Shakespeare] throughout, and that quality is *movement*: nature and natural objects in motion" (Spurgeon, 50).

43. *read to*] lectured, tutored.

45. *trace me*] follow my tracks.

47. *speaks better Welsh*] (a) "talks his own tongue better (and that's all he's good at)"; (b) (as it were) "talks more double Dutch"—Welsh being thought almost unintelligible; cf. l. 115, and Webster, *White Devil*, iii. i. 42—"Why this is welch to Lattin" (*Works*, i. 138); (c) "brags better", the Welsh being much satirized on the stage for boasting.

Glend. I can call spirits from the vasty deep. 50

Hot. Why, so can I, or so can any man,

But will they come when you do call for them?

Glend. Why, I can teach you, cousin, to command the devil.

Hot. And I can teach thee, coz, to shame the devil,

By telling truth; tell truth, and shame the devil. 55

If thou have power to raise him, bring him hither,

And I'll be sworn I have power to shame him hence:

O, while you live, tell truth, and shame the devil!

Mort. Come, come, no more of this unprofitable chat.

Glend. Three times hath Henry Bolingbroke made head 60

Against my power, thrice from the banks of Wye

And sandy-bottom'd Severn have I sent him

Bootless home, and weather-beaten back.

Hot. Home without boots, and in foul weather too!

How scapes he agues, in the devil's name? 65

Glend. Come, here is the map, shall we divide our right

According to our threefold order ta'en?

Mort. The Archdeacon hath divided it

53. you] *Qq1-4*; thee *Q5,F.* command the] *QqF*; command / *The Capell*, many edd. 54. coz] *Qq1-4* (coose); coosen *Q5*; Cousin *F.* 59. come, no] *QqF*; come, / *No Pope*, many edd. 62. sent] *Qq1-3*; hent *Qq4,5,F.* 64. boots, and] *Qq*; Bootes, / *And F.* 66. here is] *Qq*; heere's *F.* map, shall] *Qq*; Mappe: / *Shall F.*

50. *I can call spirits*] *Scot, Discov. of Witchcraft*, 1584, Bk xv, ch. 1, describes conjurors who "deale with no inferiour causes; these fetch divels out of Hell, and angels out of Heaven", and "take upon them also the raising of tempests, and earthquakes, and to doo as much as God himselfe can doe. These are no small fooles, they go not to worke with a baggage tode, or a cat, as witches doo, but with a kind of Majestie, and with authoritie they call up by name, and have at their comandement seventie and nine principall and princelie divels, who have under them, as their ministers, a great multitude of legions of pettie divils".

53. *Why . . . devil*] Most edd. divide this at "command", but given the kind of slur frequent in this scene

("cous'n", "t'command") it makes an acceptable line and a better rhythmic parallel to l. 54.

55. *tell . . . devil*] Proverbial; *Tilley*, T566.

60-3. *Three . . . back*] i.e. in 1400, 1402, and (antedated by Shakespeare) 1405 (*Hol.*, iii. 17, 20, 39). *Hardyng* (358) says, "The kyng Henry thryce to Wales went, / . . . In euery tyme were mystes and tempestes sent, / Of wethers foule that he had neuer power / Glendour to noye". If Shakespeare saw this he perhaps assumed that all three preceded Shrewsbury. For Henry's defeat in 1402 by "art magike" see App. III, p. 168.

63. *Bootless*] Unsuccessful. *Q1*'s "booteless" is perhaps trisyllabic.

66. *here is*] Cf. collation, i. iii. 122, note, and Intro., p. lxix.

Into three limits very equally:
 England, from Trent and Severn hitherto, 70
 By south and east is to my part assign'd:
 All westward, Wales beyond the Severn shore,
 And all the fertile land within that bound,
 To Owen Glendower: and, dear coz, to you
 The remnant northward lying off from Trent. 75
 And our indentures tripartite are drawn,
 Which being sealed interchangeably,
 (A business that this night may execute)
 Tomorrow, cousin Percy, you and I
 And my good Lord of Worcester will set forth 80
 To meet your father and the Scottish power,
 As is appointed us, at Shrewsbury.
 My father Glendower is not ready yet,
 Nor shall we need his help these fourteen days.
 [*To Glend.*] Within that space you may have drawn
 together 85
 Your tenants, friends, and neighbouring gentlemen.

Glend. A shorter time shall send me to you, lords,
 And in my conduct shall your ladies come,
 From whom you now must steal and take no leave,
 For there will be a world of water shed 90
 Upon the parting of your wives and you.

Hot. Methinks my moiety, north from Burton here,
 In quantity equals not one of yours:
 See how this river comes me cranking in,
 And cuts me from the best of all my land 95
 A huge half-moon, a monstrous cantle out.

85. S.D.] *Capell*; not in *QqF*. 96. cantle] *F*; scantle *Qq*.

69. *limits*] "limit *sb.*†3. The tract or region defined by a boundary" (*OED*).

76-7. *indentures tripartite* . . . *interchangeably*] contracts reciprocally sealed between the three parties; each party sealed all three copies and kept one for himself.

83. *father*] father-in-law.

92. *moiety*] share (not necessarily half).

96. *cantle*] *F*; *Qq*'s "scantle" per-

haps caught the "s" from "monstrous". A "scantle" is a small portion; *OED*, "scantle. *sb.*2", quotes Vilvain, *Theorem. Theol.*, vii. 194 (1654)—"The future cannot be confined to so short a scantle". A "cantle" (segment) seems nearer the required meaning. Cf. *Ant.*, iii. viii. 16—"The greater cantle of the world is lost"; and Drayton, *Poly-Olb.*, i. 81—"Rude Neptune cutting in, a cantle forth doth take".

I'll have the current in this place damm'd up,
 And here the smug and silver Trent shall run
 In a new channel fair and evenly;
 It shall not wind with such a deep indent, 100
 To rob me of so rich a bottom here.

Glend. Not wind? It shall, it must—you see it doth.

Mort. Yea,

But mark how he bears his course, and runs me up
 With like advantage on the other side, 105
 Gelding the opposed continent as much
 As on the other side it takes from you.

Wor. Yea, but a little charge will trench him here,
 And on this north side win this cape of land,
 And then he runs straight and even. 110

Hot. I'll have it so, a little charge will do it.

Glend. I'll not have it alter'd.

Hot.

Will not you?

Glend. No, nor you shall not.

Hot.

Who shall say me nay?

Glend. Why, that will I.

Hot. Let me not understand you then, speak it in Welsh. 115

Glend. I can speak English, lord, as well as you,
 For I was train'd up in the English court,
 Where being but young I framed to the harp
 Many an English ditty lovely well,
 And gave the tongue a helpful ornament— 120

97. damm'd] *Qq* 3-5 (damd); damnd *Qq* 1, 2, *F* (*subst.*). 102. wind?] *Qq* 2-5, *F*;
 wind *Q* 1. 103-7.] *As Steevens* (*verse*); Yea, . . . course, / And . . . side, / Gelding
 . . . much, / As . . . you. *F* (*verse*); *prose*, *Qq*.

98. *smug*] smooth, unruffled. Eliot's
Ortho-epia Gallica, ii. 171, translates
 "Elle a la face luisante & Angelique"
 by "she hath a smug and a glistening
 face".

101. *bottom*] river-valley.

103-7.] Prose in *Qq*, garbled verse
 in *F*. It is so clearly metre that all edd.
 print it so, generally making a separate
 line of "Yea" or "Yea, but".

106. *Gelding* . . . *continent*] Cutting a
 vital piece from the opposite bank.
 "Continent" = that which contains.

In *MND*, II. i. 92, the flooded rivers
 "have overborne their continents".

112. *I'll*] Pope and many edd.
 change *QqF*'s "Ile" to "I will". But
 Glendower's Welsh tune can make
 "I'll" quite long enough; cf. "she'll"
 (l. 188), "we'll" (l. 259), and l. 205,
 note.

115. *Welsh*] Cf. l. 47, note (b).

117. *train'd* . . . *court*] See App. III,
 p. 167.

120. *gave* . . . *ornament*] graced the
 words with music.

A virtue that was never seen in you.

Hot. Marry and I am glad of it with all my heart!

I had rather be a kitten and cry "mew"

Than one of these same metre ballad-mongers;

I had rather hear a brazen canstick turn'd, 125

Or a dry wheel grate on the axle-tree,

And that would set my teeth nothing on edge,

Nothing so much as mincing poetry—

'Tis like the forc'd gait of a shuffling nag.

Glend. Come, you shall have Trent turn'd. 130

Hot. I do not care, I'll give thrice so much land

To any well-deserving friend:

But in the way of bargain, mark ye me,

I'll cavil on the ninth part of a hair.

Are the indentures drawn? Shall we be gone? 135

Glend. The moon shines fair, you may away by night:

I'll haste the writer, and withal

Break with your wives of your departure hence.

I am afraid my daughter will run mad,

So much she doteth on her Mortimer. *Exit.* 140

Mort. Fie, cousin Percy, how you cross my father!

Hot. I cannot choose; sometime he angers me

122. Marry and] *QqF*; Marry, / And *Dyce*.

(ballet mongers), *Qq2-5* (ballet-mongers), *F*.

stick *F*. 127. on] *Qq3-4*; an *Qq1,2,5,F*.

You *F*.

124. ballad-mongers] *Q1*

125. canstick] *Qq*; Candle-

stick *F*. 136. fair, you] *Qq*; faire, /

122. *Marry... heart*] One line, *QqF*. Some edd. separate "Marry", but the slur ("Marry'and I'm") is just like Hotspur.

124. *metre ballad-mongers*] "Metre" often implied "doggerel verse"; cf. Peele, *Ed. I* (Mal. Soc., 1911, ll. 556-7) —"lets have a few more of these meeters, he hath great store in his head"; and Campion, *Observations* (*Elizn Crit. Essays*, ed. G. G. Smith, 1904, ii. 329)—"that vulgar and easie kind of Poesie which . . . we abusively call Rime and Meeter". A more reputable sense occurs in Stow (*Annales*, 1592, 547)—"He [Prince Henry] delighted in songs, meters, and musicall

instruments". On the low repute of street ballads cf. ii. ii. 43-4, note.

125. *brazen . . . turn'd*] A vivid image of cacophony. "Canstick" = candlestick. The Lothbury founders, says Stow, "cast candlesticks . . . and doe afterwards turne them . . . to make them smooth and bright with turning and scrating . . . making a lothsome noise to the by-passers" (*Survey*, "Coleman Street Ward").

128. *mincing*] tripping on affected poetic feet.

142. *he angers me*] This anger is fully vindicated when "prophecies" keep Glendower away from Shrewsbury, iv. iv. 18.

With telling me of the moldwarp and the ant,
 Of the dreamer Merlin and his prophecies,
 And of a dragon and a finless fish, 145
 A clip-wing'd griffin and a moulten raven,
 A couching lion and a ramping cat,
 And such a deal of skimble-skamble stuff
 As puts me from my faith. I tell you what—
 He held me last night at least nine hours 150
 In reckoning up the several devils' names
 That were his lackeys: I cried "Hum", and "Well, go to!"
 But mark'd him not a word. O, he is as tedious
 As a tired horse, a railing wife,
 Worse than a smoky house. I had rather live 155
 With cheese and garlic in a windmill, far,

143. of] *Qq1-4, F*; of of *Q5*. 150. last] *QqF*; up last *T. Johnson*; the last *Pope*; but last *Steevens*. 152. lackeys: I] *Qq*; Lacqueyes: / I *F*. 153. he is] *QqF*; he's *Pope*, many *edd*. 155. I had] *QqF*; I'd *Pope*; I'd *Theobald*.

143-7. *moldwarp* . . . *cat*] "moldwarp" = mole. For Hol.'s comment on this credulity see App. III, p. 171. For an echo of *A Myrroure for Magistrates* see p. xxxvii. *Archaeologia*, xx, 1824, 250-71, discussing Merlin prophecies from antiquity, cites some current under Richard II and Henry IV in which Henry figures as the mole cursed by the mouth of God (cf. *Lev.*, xi. 29-30—"These also shall be unclean . . . the mole . . .") and the others as the dragon, lion, and wild boar. The dragon, lion, and boar (really, the white wolf) were the crests respectively of Glendower, Percy, and Mortimer (G. R. French, *Sh.'s Genealogy*, 1869, 64). There seem, however, no references to the ant, fish, griffin, raven, or cat; these may derive orally from Shakespeare's Welsh acquaintances (cf. Intro., p. xxvi).

144. *dreamer Merlin*] Cf. Intro., p. xxxvii.

147. *couching* . . . *ramping*] Burlesque of the heraldic "couchant" (lying) and "rampant" (rearing).

148. *skimble-skamble*] Apparently "coined by Shakespeare for Hotspur's use. *OED* defines it as *nonsensical* and

records no prior use of it" (Hemingway, New Var.).

149. *puts* . . . *faith*] makes me a sceptic, even about Christianity.

150. *He* . . . *hours*] Scot's *Discov. of Witchcraft*, 1584, Bk xv, ch. 2, fills eight folio pages with a list of devils' names. Reading it, as Steevens remarks, one sympathizes with Hotspur.

151. *several*] various.

154-5. *a railing* . . . *house*] Traditional, from *Prov.*, xxvii. 15—"A brawling woman and the roofo of the house dropping in a raynie day, may well be compared together". Tilley, H781 and S574, gives many examples of the "smoky house" variant, found also in Chaucer, Wyf of Bathe's *Prol.*, 278-80—"smoke / And chiding wives maken men to flee / Out of hir owen hous". In *Piers Plowman*, B, xvii. 315-26, "a wikked wyf", a leaky roof, and a smoky house are said to make home untenable.

156. *cheese* . . . *windmill*] The least agreeable diet and residence. "Cheese and onions" were proverbially poor fare; Thomas Heywood, *Captives* (Mal. Soc., 1953, ll. 2383-4), has "the poore can still / with cheese and onions [fill

Than feed on cates and have him talk to me
In any summer house in Christendom.

Mort. In faith, he is a worthy gentleman,
Exceedingly well read, and profited 160
In strange concealments, valiant as a lion,
And wondrous affable, and as bountiful
As mines of India. Shall I tell you, cousin?
He holds your temper in a high respect
And curbs himself even of his natural scope 165
When you come 'cross his humour, faith he does:
I warrant you that man is not alive
Might so have tempted him as you have done
Without the taste of danger and reproof:
But do not use it oft, let me entreat you. 170

Wor. In faith, my lord, you are too wilful-blame,
And since your coming hither have done enough
To put him quite besides his patience;
You must needs learn, lord, to amend this fault.
Though sometimes it show greatness, courage, blood,

159. is] *Qq*1,2; was *Qq*3-5,*F*. 160. Exceedingly] *Qq*1,2; Exceeding *Qq*3-5,*F*.
161-3.] *As Qq*; In . . . Concealments: / Valiant . . . affable, / And . . . India. /
Shall . . . Cousin, / *F*. 166. come 'cross] *Qq* (come *crosse*); doe *crosse F*.
173. besides] *Qq*1,3-5,*F*; beside *Q*2.

the belly]", and Davenport, *New Trick to cheat the Devil*, 1. ii (Bullen, *Old Plays*, New ser., iii. 208), "Rather then feast where they shall domineere . . . Ile feede on Cheese, and Onions". Windmills were noisy and often unsteady; cf. Jonson, *Silent W.*, v. iii. 61-3 (H. & S., v. 258)—"My very house turnes round with the tumult! I dwell in a windmill!" "Have us out of thy windmil here", a guest in a noisy tavern protests (Brome [Shepherd, vol. II], *Covent Garden Weeded* [p. 35]).

157. *cates*] delicacies.

158. *summer house*] "Beauregard: m. A Summer-house, or Graunge; a house for pleasure and recreation" (Cotgrave). It was a luxury; Dekker and Webster's *West-ward Hoe*, 1. i. 188-90 (Bowers, ii. 324) has "Your prodigality, your dicing . . . your building a Summer house hath vndone vs".

160-1. *profited . . . concealments*] proficient in secret arts.

171. *are . . . blame*] are blamable for too much self-will. "The dat. infin. *to blame* is much used as the predicate after *be*. In the 16-17th c. the *to* was misunderstood as *too*, and *blame* taken as adj." (*OED*, "Blame, *vb*. 6"). Cf. *Lr.*, 1. ii. 45 (*F* text)—"The Contents [of Edgar's supposed letter] . . . Are too blame". 2*H*4, II. iv. 395, reads in *Q* "I feele me much too blame", where *F* has "to blame".

175. *Though . . . blood*] "blood" = "mettle, spirit". Elyot, *Governour*, III. xv, has a similar observation—"In height and greatnesse of courage is moste soneste ingendred obstinacie. . . Undoughtedly this is an horrible and perylouse vice, and very familiar with them whiche be of moste noble courage". For contemporary comment on

—And that's the dearest grace it renders you— 176

Yet oftentimes it doth present harsh rage,
Defect of manners, want of government,
Pride, haughtiness, opinion, and disdain,
The least of which haunting a nobleman 180
Loseth men's hearts and leaves behind a stain
Upon the beauty of all parts besides,
Beguiling them of commendation.

Hot. Well, I am school'd—good manners be your speed!
Here come our wives, and let us take our leave. 185

[*Re-*]enter GLENDOWER with the ladies.

Mort. This is the deadly spite that angers me,
My wife can speak no English, I no Welsh.

Glend. My daughter weeps, she'll not part with you,
She'll be a soldier too, she'll to the wars.

Mort. Good father, tell her that she and my aunt Percy 190
Shall follow in your conduct speedily.

*Glendower speaks to her in Welsh, and she
answers him in the same.*

180. nobleman] *QqF* (*Qq1-4* noble man). 184.] *As Qq*; Well . . . school'd; /
Good- . . . speede; / *F*. 185. come our] *Qq1,2*; come your *Qq3-5,F*. S.D.
Re-enter] *QqF* (*Enter*), *Capell*. 188. she'll] *QqF*; she will *T. Johnson, Pope*.

valour and discretion see v. iv. 119,
note.

176. *dearest*] noblest; see iv. iv. 31,
note.

184. *good . . . speed*] Sardonic; "let us
hope good manners will win you the
day".

185. *and*] "And" could connect an
affirmation and a command; cf. v. iv.
33—"I will assay thee, and defend
thyself" (*Qq*: changed in *F* to "so");
and *Ado*, i. ii. 20—"I will send for
him; and question him yourself"; also
R2, v. iii. 144—"Your mother well
hath pray'd, and prove you true."
Chaucer has the same usage in *Tr. &
Cris.*, i. 693.

188. *she'll*] Pope and most edd.
change *QqF*'s "sheele" to "she will".
The protraction, however, may be
Glendower's Welsh inflection (see

notes on ll. 112, 205, 259), even
though in l. 189 the word is mono-
syllabic, as "difference" has three syl-
lables in l. 212 and two in l. 213, or
"cowards" one and two syllables in
"Cowards father cowards, and base
things sire base" (*Cym.*, iv. ii. 25).

190. *my aunt Percy*] More Mortimer
confusion; cf. notes on i. iii. 79, 83-4,
144. Considered as Glendower's son-
in-law the speaker was Lady Percy's
brother, not nephew (cf. ii. iii. 82); con-
sidered, however, as heir to the throne
he was her nephew, not brother, and
not Glendower's son-in-law.

191. S.D. Glendower . . . same]
Dramatists often introduced Welsh
songs or speeches (Max Förster, *Die
Kymr. Einlagen bei Sh.*, 1924, 356);
Glendower and Lady Percy were
doubtless played by Welsh actors.

Glend. She is desperate here, a peevish, self-willed harlotry, one that no persuasion can do good upon.

The lady speaks in Welsh.

Mort. I understand thy looks, that pretty Welsh
Which thou pourest down from these swelling heavens
I am too perfect in, and but for shame 196
In such a parley should I answer thee.

The lady [speaks] again in Welsh.

I understand thy kisses, and thou mine,
And that's a feeling disputation,
But I will never be a truant, love, 200
Till I have learnt thy language, for thy tongue
Makes Welsh as sweet as ditties highly penn'd,
Sung by a fair queen in a summer's bow'r
With ravishing division to her lute.

Glend. Nay, if you melt, then will she run mad. 205

The lady speaks again in Welsh.

Mort. O, I am ignorance itself in this!

Glend. She bids you on the wanton rushes lay you down,
And rest your gentle head upon her lap,
And she will sing the song that pleaseth you,

192-3.] *As Cambr. (prose)*; She . . . here, / A . . . vpon. *Qq* (*first phrase verse, rest prose*); Shee . . . heere: / A . . . Harlotry, / One . . . vpon. *F* (*verse*). 195. pourest] *Qq* (powrest); powr'st *F*. 197. *S.D. speaks*] *Malone*; not in *QqF*. 198. I] *Theobald*; *Mor.* I *QqF*. 202. sweet] *Qq1-4, F*; sweets *Q5*. 205. you] *Qq1-3*; thou *Qq4,5, F*. 207.] *As Qq*; She bids you, / On . . . downe, *F*. 209. song] *Qq1-3,5, F*; sung *Q4*.

192-3. *harlotry*] Here, as often (e.g. II. iv. 390), an unsexual term of indignity; cf. *Rom.*, iv. ii. 14—"a peevish self-will'd harlotry it is".

194-5. *that . . . heavens*] that language of yours (your tears) streaming from your brimming eyes.

199. *feeling disputation*] contest, contention, in the speechless exchange of feelings.

202. *highly penn'd*] *As in Ado*, v. ii. 6-7, where Benedick proposes a sonnet "in so high a style . . . that no man living shall come over it".

204. *division*] "A brilliant passage, of short notes, which is founded essentially on a much simpler passage of

longer notes" (*Naylor, Sh. and Music*, 28).

205. *Nay*] For the protraction cf. notes on ll. 112 and 188. Hemingway (New Var.) cites Coleridge (*Lectures and Notes of 1818*, sec. iii)—"This 'nay' so to be dwelt on in speaking, as to be equivalent to a dissyllable . . . is characteristic of the solemn [Ed.: or the Welsh?] Glendower".

207. *wanton*] Either lush, luxuriant, as in *MND*, II. i. 99—"the wanton green"; or luxurious, comfortable, as in *2H4*, I. i. 147-9, where Northumberland's "sickly quoin" is "a guard too wanton for the head / Which princes . . . aim to hit".

And on your eyelids crown the god of sleep, 210
 Charming your blood with pleasing heaviness,
 Making such difference 'twixt wake and sleep
 As is the difference betwixt day and night,
 The hour before the heavenly-harness'd team
 Begins his golden progress in the east. 215

Mort. With all my heart I'll sit and hear her sing,
 By that time will our book I think be drawn.

Glend. Do so, and those musicians that shall play to you
 Hang in the air a thousand leagues from hence,
 And straight they shall be here: sit, and attend. 220

Hot. Come, Kate, thou art perfect in lying down:
 Come, quick, quick, that I may lay my head in thy lap.

Lady P. Go, ye giddy goose. *The music plays.*

Hot. Now I perceive the devil understands Welsh,
 And 'tis no marvel he is so humorous, 225
 By'r lady, he is a good musician.

Lady P. Then should you be nothing but musical,
 For you are altogether govern'd by humours.
 Lie still, ye thief, and hear the lady sing in Welsh.

Hot. I had rather hear Lady my brach howl in Irish. 230

212. 'twixt] *Qq* 1-3; betwixt *Qq* 4,5,*F*. 218.] *As Qq*; Doe so: / And . . . you, / *F*.
 219. hence] *Qq* 1-3; thence *Qq* 4,5,*F*. 221-2.] *As QqF* (*verse*); *prose, Pope, most*
edd. 224-6.] *As QqF* (*verse*); *prose, Pope, some edd.* 225. marvel he is] *QqF*;
 marvel, he is *Theobald*; marvel, he's *Capell*. 226. he is] *Qq*; hee's *F*. 227-
 9.] *As QqF* (*verse*); *prose, Pope, most edd.* 227. should] *Qq* 1-3; would *Qq* 4,5,*F*.
 230. hear Lady my] *Q* 1 (heare lady my), *Qq* 2-3 (heare, lady, my), *Q* 4 (heare
 Lady, my), *Q* 5 (heare *Lady*, my), *F* (heare (*Lady*) my).

210. *crown . . . sleep*] i.e. give him
 "sovereign dominion" (Malone).

217. *book*] deed, here of partition.

218. *Do . . . you*] One line in *Qq*;
 divided at "so" in *F* and many edd.
 The problem is quite trivial, but *Qq*
 maintain Glendower's flow and enable
 "to you" to be a delicate extrametrical
 cadence.

221-2.] *As* also in ll. 227-9 I keep
QqF's lineation, though the rhythms
 (as often in this scene) wander in the
 no-man's land between prose and
 verse, and most edd. enlist them for the
 former.

225. 'tis . . . *humorous*] *Qq*'s comma
 after "humorous" allows the syntax to

work both backward ("No wonder he's
 so capricious—he's a Welsh linguist")
 and, as Lady Percy takes it, forward
 ("No wonder he's so capricious—he's
 a musician").

230. *Lady my brach . . . Irish*] A. Flem-
 ing, *Of English Dogs*, 1576, says "We
 Englishmen call bitches, belonging to
 the hunting kind of dogs, by the term
 [viz. *Brache*]" (Arber, *Engl. Garner*,
 iii. 237). "Irish" may refer to the
 supposed uncouthness of Erse or
 the supposed similarity of its sounds
 to canine ululation. In *ATL*, v. ii.
 121, Rosalind compares the lovers'
 protestations to "the howling of Irish
 wolves".

Lady P. Wouldst thou have thy head broken?

Hot. No.

Lady P. Then be still.

Hot. Neither, 'tis a woman's fault.

Lady P. Now God help thee!

235

Hot. To the Welsh lady's bed.

Lady P. What's that?

Hot. Peace, she sings. *Here the lady sings a Welsh song.*

Come, Kate, I'll have your song too.

Lady P. Not mine, in good sooth.

240

Hot. Not yours, in good sooth! Heart, you swear like a comfit-maker's wife—"Not you, in good sooth!", and "As true as I live!", and "As God shall mend me!", and "As sure as day!"—

And givest such sarcenet surety for thy oaths

245

As if thou never walk'st further than Finsbury.

Swear me, Kate, like a lady as thou art,

A good mouth-filling oath, and leave "In sooth",

And such protest of pepper-gingerbread,

231. thou have] *Qq* 1,2; haue *Qq* 3-5, *F.* 239. Come] *Rowe*; *Hot.* Come *Qq* *F.* Kate] *Qq* 1,2; not in *Qq* 3-5, *F.* 241-4.] *As Qq* (*prose*); Not . . . sooth? / You . . . Wife: / Not . . . liue; / And . . . day: / *F* (*verse*). 241. Heart, you] *Qq*; You *F.*

233. *still*] Stillness is not, according to popular wit, among woman's faults. Either Hotspur is ironical or, aware of his own masculine restlessness, he says, "It would be a fault of effeminacy in me to lie still and lack spirit".

241-4. *you swear . . . day*] Cf. R. Brathwaite, *Strappado for the Divell* (ed. Ebsworth, 1878, 40)—"A ciuill matron, lipping with forsooth, / As one that had not heart to sweare an oath". "Comfit-maker"=confectioner. "Puritans condemned swearing, and many citizens were Puritans" (Wilson, N.C.S.); see Fal. on the "rascally year-forsooth knave" (2*H*4, i. ii. 40). These protestations belong to the "city-words" which, in Brome's *Covent Garden Weeded* (Shepherd, vol. II), III. i (p. 40), "gaine you credit, and bring you into good and civil estimation". Gentlemen scorned them and writers

made fun of them; cf. Lyly, *Pappe with a Hatchet* (Bond, iii. 340)—"Martin will not sweare, but with indeede, in sooth, & in truth hee'le cog the die of deceit"; and Jonson, *Poetaster*, iv. i. 33-4 (H. & S., iv. 263)—"your citie mannerly word (forsooth) vse it not too often".

245. *sarcenet*] thin silk, light and insubstantial. Cf. Jonson, *Alchemist*, II. ii. 89-90 (H. & S., v. 320)—"taffata-sarsnet, soft, and light / As cobwebs".

246. *Finsbury*] Finsbury Fields, north of Moorfields, were a favourite resort of citizens.

247. *a lady*] i.e. an aristocrat; cf. Elyot, *Governour*, I. xxvi—"they wyll say he that swereth depe, swereth like a lorde".

249. *pepper-gingerbread*] R.I.'s *English Huswife*, 1615, 73, gives "a pennyworth of pepper" as an ingredient of

To velvet-guards, and Sunday citizens. 250

Come, sing.

Lady P. I will not sing.

Hot. 'Tis the next way to turn tailor, or be redbreast teacher. And the indentures be drawn I'll away within these two hours; and so come in when ye will. 255
Exit.

Glend. Come, come, Lord Mortimer, you are as slow As hot Lord Percy is on fire to go:
By this our book is drawn—we'll but seal,
And then to horse immediately.

Mort. With all my heart. 260
Exeunt.

[SCENE II.—*London. The Palace.*]

Enter the KING, PRINCE OF WALES, and others.

King. Lords, give us leave; the Prince of Wales and I Must have some private conference: but be near at hand, For we shall presently have need of you. *Exeunt Lords.*

257. as slow] *Qq* 1-4, *F*; slow *Q* 5. 258. hot] *F*; Hot. *Qq* 1-3; Hot, *Q* 4; Hot / *Q* 5.

Scene II

SCENE II.] *F* (*Scena Secunda.*); not in *Qq*. Location.] *Capell* (*subst.*). S.D. others] *Qq* 1-3, *F*; other *Qq* 4, 5. 1-2.] As *Qq*; Lords . . . leaue: / The . . . I, / Must . . . conference: / But . . . hand, / *F*.

"coarse Ginger-bread". Pepper-gingerbread oaths, doubtless, like crumbly confections, make a fleeting tang in the mouth.

250. *velvet-guards . . . Sunday citizens*] citizens in their Sunday finery; "guards" = trimmings. Cf. Dekker, *Seven Deadly Sinnes* (Grosart, ii. 24)—"O veluet garded Theeues! O yea-and-by-nay [sic] Cheaters! O Ciuill, ô Graue and Right Worshipful Couzeners!" Fynes Moryson's *Itinerary*, 1617, pt iii, iv. 179, says "At publike meetings the Aldermen of London weare Scarlet gownes, and their wives a close gowne of skarlet laid with gards of

black velvet", i.e. black velvet facings.

253-4. 'Tis . . . teacher] "All right, don't sing! Singing's the quickest way to turn into a tailor or song-bird teacher." Tailors sang at work, like weavers (cf. ii. iv. 130); robins were esteemed for their song. Nicholas Cox, in *The Gentleman's Recreation* (*A short Account of Singing-Birds*), 1686, pt iii. 167, says: "It is the opinion of some, that this little King of Birds [the Robin-Redbreast] for sweetness of Note comes not much short of the *Nightingale*".

259. *we'll*] Cf. notes on ll. 112, 188, 205.

I know not whether God will have it so
 For some displeasing service I have done, 5
 That in his secret doom out of my blood
 He'll breed revengement and a scourge for me;
 But thou dost in thy passages of life
 Make me believe that thou art only mark'd
 For the hot vengeance and the rod of heaven, 10
 To punish my mistreadings. Tell me else
 Could such inordinate and low desires,
 Such poor, such bare, such lewd, such mean attempts,
 Such barren pleasures, rude society,
 As thou art match'd withal, and grafted to, 15
 Accompany the greatness of thy blood,
 And hold their level with thy princely heart?

Prince. So please your Majesty, I would I could
 Quit all offences with as clear excuse
 As well as I am doubtless I can purge 20
 Myself of many I am charg'd withal:
 Yet such extenuation let me beg
 As, in reproof of many tales devis'd,
 Which oft the ear of greatness needs must hear,
 By smiling pickthanks, and base newsmongers, 25
 I may for some things true, wherein my youth
 Hath faulty wander'd and irregular,
 Find pardon on my true submission.

4. God] *Qq*; Heauen *F*. 8. thy] *Q1, F*; the *Qq2-5*. 15. to] *Qq*; too *F*.

4-11. *I know . . . mistreadings*] In *R2*, v. iii. 1-3, Bolingbroke already looks on Hal's dissoluteness as ominous—"Can no man tell me of my unworthy son? . . . If any plague hang over us, 'tis he". His merely covert sense of guilt here is psychologically interesting.

8. *passages*] courses.

9-11. *mark'd . . . mistreadings*] Logically the sense is "To punish my sins Heaven's vengeance will fall on you" or alternatively "To punish my sins Heaven has sent you to afflict me". But Shakespeare's flexible syntax allows both senses, in a general formula "Heaven is punishing me through you".

12. *inordinate*] unworthy of your rank.

13. *bare . . . lewd . . . attempts*] wretched . . . base . . . exploits. For "bare" cf. i. iii. 107.

17. *hold . . . level*] put themselves on a level.

22-8. *Yet . . . submission*] "Let me beg so much extenuation that upon confutation of many false charges I may be pardoned some that are true" (Johnson).

23. *reproof*] disproof.

25. *pickthanks*] A clear echo of Hol., when "pickthanks had sowne diuision" between father and son; cf. App. III, p. 179.

King. God pardon thee! Yet let me wonder, Harry,
 At thy affections, which do hold a wing 30
 Quite from the flight of all thy ancestors.
 Thy place in Council thou hast rudely lost,
 Which by thy younger brother is supply'd,
 And art almost an alien to the hearts
 Of all the court and princes of my blood: 35
 The hope and expectation of thy time
 Is ruin'd, and the soul of every man
 Prophetically do forethink thy fall.
 Had I so lavish of my presence been,
 So common-hackney'd in the eyes of men, 40
 So stale and cheap to vulgar company,
 Opinion, that did help me to the crown,
 Had still kept loyal to possession,
 And left me in reputeless banishment,
 A fellow of no mark nor likelihood. 45
 By being seldom seen, I could not stir
 But like a comet I was wonder'd at,
 That men would tell their children, "This is he!"
 Others would say, "Where, which is Bolingbroke?"
 And then I stole all courtesy from heaven, 50
 And dress'd myself in such humility
 That I did pluck allegiance from men's hearts,

29.] *As Qq*; Heauen . . . thee: / Yet . . . *Harry*, / *F*.

30. *affections*] propensities.

32-3. *Thy place . . . supply'd*] Shakespeare saves Hal's reputation by omitting (save for the vague "rudely") reference to the famous quarrel with the Lord Chief Justice as related in Elyot's *Governour* (II. vi), Hall (with the addition of the physical assault), Hol., Stow, and *F.V.* The story is probably apocryphal but was an article of popular faith.

38. *do*] The plural follows the plurality implied in "every man".

39.] See App. VI.

40. *common-hackney'd*] A word retaining the concrete force of its original sense, of a workaday horse.

43. *possession*] Both abstract and con-

crete (= "possessor"); cf. I. iii. 86, note.

50. *I stole . . . heaven*] I assumed a courteous demeanour as of Heaven itself. Henry is describing that "courtship to the common people" which Richard accounts politically significant in *R2*, I. iv. 23-36. On II. 50-2 Spurgeon remarks "One of [Shakespeare's] outstanding characteristics is the way in which by introducing verbs of movement [e.g. 'stole', 'dress'd', 'pluck'] about things which are motionless, or rather which are abstractions and cannot have physical movement, he gives life to the whole phrase" (Spurgeon, 51).

Loud shouts and salutations from their mouths,
 Even in the presence of the crowned King.
 Thus did I keep my person fresh and new, 55
 My presence, like a robe pontifical,
 Ne'er seen but wonder'd at, and so my state,
 Seldom, but sumptuous, show'd like a feast,
 And wan by rareness such solemnity.
 The skipping King, he ambled up and down, 60
 With shallow jesters, and rash bavin wits,
 Soon kindled and soon burnt, carded his state,
 Mingled his royalty with cap'ring fools,

54. the presence] *Qq1,3-5,F*; presence *Q2*. 55. did I] *Qq1-4*; I did *Q5,F*.
 58. Seldom, but] *Qq*; Seldome but *F*. show'd] *Q1*; shewed *Qq2-5,F*. 59.
 wan] *Qq*; wonne *F*. 61. bavin] *QqF*; braine *Dering MS*. 63. cap'ring] *Q1*
 (capring); carping *Qq2-5,F*.

55-7. *my person . . . wonder'd at*] Tilley, M20, quotes the proverb "A maid oft seen, a gown oft worn / Are disesteemed and held in scorn".

56. *pontifical*] of bishop or archbishop.

58. *Seldom*] Adjectival, as still in Scots (e.g. "the seldom time"), and in sonnet lii. 4—"seldom pleasure". This sonnet, on the enhanced value of unhackneyed pleasures, may be echoed here as it is at i. ii. 202.

59. *wan*] Frequent form of preterite.

60 ff. *The skipping King . . .*] There is nothing like this behaviour in *R2*, but there is in *Woodstock* (Mal. Soc., 1929, ll. 1204 ff.), when Richard and his companions "ride through London only to be gaz'd at", fantastically dressed. Hol. does not record this incident but he does comment "He kept the greatest port, and maintained the most plentiful house, that euer any king in England did either before his time or since. For there resorted dailie to his court aboue ten thousand persons that had meat and drinke there allowed them" (ii. 868); Shakespeare echoes this in *R2*, iv. i. 281-3. Remarking on Shakespeare's mature style, Madeleine Doran observes

"Notice the rapid succession of images, the quick suggestion rather than elaboration in such compact and elliptical lines as 'To laugh at gibing boys' and 'Enfeoff'd himself to popularity', the fusion of one image with another; the skipping and capering with the quick burning of faggots ('rash bavin') and with the adulteration suggested by carding; the enfeoffment with the idea of surfeit (itself boldly linked with eyes); it in turn with the common sight of the cuckoo in June, and with the drowsiness of men in constant sunshine, and this latter image shifting ground with 'cloudy men'" ('Imagery in *R2* and in *H4*', *MLR*, xxxvii, 1942, 115).

61. *rash bavin*] "rash" = briefly inflammable; "bavin" = kindling, faggot. Tilley, B107, illustrates the proverb "The Bavin burns bright but it is but a blaze".

62. *carded his state*] degraded his dignity by indiscriminate mingling. "To card" = mix together and (often) adulterate. Greene's *Quipe for an Vpstart Courtier* (Grosart, xi. 275) denounces a dishonest tapster with "You . . . carde your beere (if you see your guests begin to be drunke) halfe smal & halfe strong".

Had his great name profaned with their scorns,
 And gave his countenance against his name 65
 To laugh at gibing boys, and stand the push
 Of every beardless vain comparative,
 Grew a companion to the common streets,
 Enfeoff'd himself to popularity,
 That, being daily swallow'd by men's eyes, 70
 They surfeited with honey, and began
 To loathe the taste of sweetness, whereof a little
 More than a little is by much too much.
 So, when he had occasion to be seen,
 He was but as the cuckoo is in June, 75
 Heard, not regarded; seen, but with such eyes
 As, sick and blunted with community,
 Afford no extraordinary gaze,
 Such as is bent on sun-like majesty
 When it shines seldom in admiring eyes, 80
 But rather drows'd and hung their eyelids down,
 Slept in his face, and render'd such aspect
 As cloudy men use to their adversaries,
 Being with his presence glutted, gorg'd, and full.
 And in that very line, Harry, standest thou, 85
 For thou hast lost thy princely privilege
 With vile participation. Not an eye

70. swallow'd] *Pope*; swallowed *QqF*. 71-2. began / To loathe the] *As T. Johnson, Pope*; began to loath / The *QqF* (*subst.*). 83. to] *Qq1,2*; to doe to *Qq3-5,F*.

65. *against his name*] Both (a) contrary to his kingly title, and (b) to the detriment of his authority.

66. *stand the push*] submit to the impudence.

67. *comparative*] dealer in insults (cf. i. ii. 78). The word could also mean "rival, compeer" (cf. Beau. & Fl., *Four Plays in One, Triumph of Love* (Works, x. 324)—"Gerard ever was / His full comparative"), and both senses may well be present.

69. *Enfeoff'd*] Surrendered himself—a legal term meaning surrender of property to complete possession.

71-3. *They . . . too much*] Noble cites

Prov., xxv. 16—"If thou findest honie, eate so muche as is sufficient for thee: lest thou be ouer full, and parbreake it out agayne".

77. *community*] commonness, familiarity (that breeds contempt).

79. *sun-like*] Symbolic of royalty; cf. Chettle, *England's Mourning Garment* (ed. Ingleby, 103)—"Such maiestie had her presence . . . that guiltie mortalitie durst not beholde her but with sun dazeled eyes".

83. *cloudy*] (a) sullen; (b) hostile to "sun-like majesty".

85. *line*] category; cf. i. iii. 166-7, note.

But is a-weary of thy common sight,
 Save mine, which hath desir'd to see thee more,
 Which now doth that I would not have it do, 90
 Make blind itself with foolish tenderness.

Prince. I shall hereafter, my thrice gracious lord,
 Be more myself.

King. For all the world
 As thou art to this hour was Richard then
 When I from France set foot at Ravenspurgh, 95
 And even as I was then is Percy now.
 Now by my sceptre, and my soul to boot,
 He hath more worthy interest to the state
 Than thou the shadow of succession.
 For of no right, nor colour like to right, 100
 He doth fill fields with harness in the realm,
 Turns head against the lion's armed jaws,
 And being no more in debt to years than thou
 Leads ancient lords and reverend bishops on
 To bloody battles, and to bruising arms. 105
 What never-dying honour hath he got
 Against renowned Douglas! whose high deeds,
 Whose hot incursions and great name in arms,
 Holds from all soldiers chief majority
 And military title capital 110
 Through all the kingdoms that acknowledge Christ.
 Thrice hath this Hotspur, Mars in swathling clothes,

89. desir'd] *F*; desired *Qq*. 99. thou the] *Q1*; thou, the *Qq2-5, F*. 107.
 renowned] *Qq4,5, F*; renowned *Qq1-3*. 109. soldiers] *Qq1,2,4,5, F (subst.)*;
 souldier: *Q3*. 110. capital] *Qq2,3*; capitall. *Qq1,5, F*; capitall, *Q4*. 111.
 Christ.] *Qq1-3*; Christ, *Qq4,5, F*. 112. this] *Qq1-4*; the *Q5, F*. Hotspur,
 Mars] *Qq1-4* (Hotspur Mars), *Q5* (*Hotspur Mars*), *F* (*Hotspur Mars*), Warburton.
 swathling] *Qq1-3*; swathing *Qq4,5, F*.

91. *Make . . . tenderness*] This touch,
 as Wilson (N.C.S.) notes, probably
 comes from Hol. ("shedding teares",
 iii. 54); or the original of *F.V.* (vi.
 114, 120, S.D.s "*He weepes*"), though
 this reconciliation scene is quite dif-
 ferent from theirs.

98-9. *He . . . succession*] i.e. He has a
 claim based upon worth, while you
 have merely insubstantial hereditary
 custom to depend on. "Succession" as

an inherited right is a shadow unless
 confirmed by merit, as Richard II had
 found when faced with Bolingbroke.

100. *colour*] semblance.

101. *harness*] i.e. armed men.

103. *no more in debt*] Born in 1364,
 Hotspur was in fact twenty-three
 years Hal's senior.

109. *majority*] pre-eminence.

112. *Thrice*] The main engagements
 Hol. records are Otterburn (19 Aug.

This infant warrior, in his enterprises
 Discomfited great Douglas, ta'en him once,
 Enlarged him, and made a friend of him, 115
 To fill the mouth of deep defiance up,
 And shake the peace and safety of our throne.
 And what say you to this? Percy, Northumberland,
 The Archbishop's Grace of York, Douglas, Mortimer,
 Capitulate against us and are up. 120
 But wherefore do I tell these news to thee?
 Why, Harry, do I tell thee of my foes,
 Which art my nearest and dearest enemy?
 Thou that art like enough, through vassal fear,
 Base inclination, and the start of spleen, 125
 To fight against me under Percy's pay,
 To dog his heels, and curtsy at his frowns,
 To show how much thou art degenerate.
Prince. Do not think so, you shall not find it so;

115. Enlarged] *Qq2-5, F*; Enlargd *Q1*.

123. nearest] *Qq1-4*; neer'st *Q5, F*.

1388; ii. 797), Nesbit (22 June 1402; iii. 20), and Holmedon (14 Sept. 1402; *ibid.*). The first, however, though the then Douglas was slain, was an English defeat, and Hotspur was captured.

114. *ta'en him once*] That Douglas was taken at Holmedon is clear in Hol.'s *Historie of Scotland* (v. 406) though ambiguous in that of England (iii. 21), where, though in fact a prisoner, he might appear to be named not as such but merely as the captured "Mordake"'s father; cf. App. III, p. 169.

116. *To fill . . . up*] Perhaps "to swell the chorus of defiance"; or "cram defiance's appetite full". Cf. Barnabe Barnes, *Devils Charter* (ed. McKerrow, 1904, ll. 2745-6)—"Thus doth one hideous act succeed an other, / Vntill the mouth of mischeife be made vp".

120. *Capitulate*] Draw up articles of agreement.

123. *dearest*] Both (a) "most cherished", and (b) "direst", with the sense of "affecting very intimately"; cf. "my

dearest foe" (*Ham.*, i. ii. 182). This gives simultaneously the bond of affection and distrust between father and son. Most edd. follow *Q5*'s "near'st", but there is no need to eliminate the metrical unevenness.

125. *start of spleen*] fit of ill-temper.

126. *To fight . . . pay*] Since Hotspur died when Hal was 16 this suspicion is antedated, but the germ of it was a proposed usurpation in 1412. Without going into detail Hol. says (iii. 53) that informers' tales "brought no small suspicion into the king's head, least his sonne would presume to vsurpe the crowne". In 1411-12, according to *An Engl. Chron. . . . of Richard II, Henry IV, Henry V, and Henry VI* (ed. J. S. Davies, Camden Soc., 1856, 37), "it was acorded betuene the Prince, king Harries son, and Harri [Beaufort] bisshoppe of Wynchestre, and many othir lordis of this lond, that certayn of thaym sholde speke to the king, and entrete him to resigne the croune to the said Prince Harri . . . but he wolde in no wise".

And God forgive them that so much have sway'd 130
 Your Majesty's good thoughts away from me!
 I will redeem all this on Percy's head,
 And in the closing of some glorious day
 Be bold to tell you that I am your son,
 When I will wear a garment all of blood, 135
 And stain my favours in a bloody mask,
 Which, wash'd away, shall scour my shame with it;
 And that shall be the day, whene'er it lights,
 That this same child of honour and renown,
 This gallant Hotspur, this all-praised knight, 140
 And your unthought-of Harry chance to meet.
 For every honour sitting on his helm,
 Would they were multitudes, and on my head
 My shames redoubled! For the time will come
 That I shall make this northern youth exchange 145
 His glorious deeds for my indignities.
 Percy is but my factor, good my lord,
 To engross up glorious deeds on my behalf,
 And I will call him to so strict account
 That he shall render every glory up, 150
 Yea, even the slightest worship of his time,
 Or I will tear the reckoning from his heart.
 This in the name of God I promise here,
 The which if He be pleas'd I shall perform,
 I do beseech your Majesty may salve 155
 The long-grown wounds of my intemperance:

130. God] *Qq*; Heauen *F*. 142. sitting] *Qq1,2*; fitting *Qq3-5,F*. 148. up] *Qq1,2,F*; my *Qq3-5*. 153. God] *Qq*; Heauen *F*. 154. He . . . perform] *Qq*; I performe, and doe suruiue *F*. pleas'd I] *Qq1,5 (subst.)*; pleas'd, I *Qq2-4 (subst.)*. perform,] *F*; performe *Qq4,5*; performe: *Qq1-3*. 156. intemperance] *Qq*; intemperature *F*.

136. *favours*] features. The sense of "insignia" (the scarf or glove witnessing a mistress's favour; cf. v. iv. 95) is implied too, leading on from "garment", but the uppermost idea is of the blood-masked face to be washed clean, a sign of regeneration.

147. *factor*] agent.

148. *engross up*] amass in gross.

150. *render . . . up*] "The idea is that one who subdues a champion succeeds

to all the honours he has won. Percy, at the moment of death, subscribes to this doctrine [v. iv. 77-9]" (Kittredge).

151. *worship . . . time*] honour of his life.

154. *if He . . . perform*] Having substituted "Heauen" for "God" (l. 153), *F* avoids a hiatus of sense by amending this phrase (see collation).

156. *intemperance*] *F*'s "intempera-

If not, the end of life cancels all bands,
And I will die a hundred thousand deaths
Ere break the smallest parcel of this vow.

King. A hundred thousand rebels die in this— 160
Thou shalt have charge and sovereign trust herein.

Enter BLUNT.

How now, good Blunt? Thy looks are full of speed.

Blunt. So hath the business that I come to speak of.
Lord Mortimer of Scotland hath sent word
That Douglas and the English rebels met 165
The eleventh of this month at Shrewsbury.
A mighty and a fearful head they are,
If promises be kept on every hand,
As ever offer'd foul play in a state.

King. The Earl of Westmoreland set forth today, 170
With him my son, Lord John of Lancaster,
For this advertisement is five days old.
On Wednesday next, Harry, you shall set forward,
On Thursday we ourselves will march.
Our meeting is Bridgnorth, and, Harry, you 175
Shall march through Gloucestershire, by which
account,

158. thousand] *Qq* 1-3,5,*F*; thousands *Q* 4. 161. S.D.] *F*; *Qq* (after *l.* 162).
173. you shall] *Qq* 1,2; thou shalt *Qq* 3-5,*F*. 174-5. march. / Our meeting is]
F; march. Our meeting / Is *Qq*. 175-6. you / Shall march through] *T*.
Johnson, Capell; you shall march / Through *QqF*.

ture", as Wilson (N.C.S.) points out, means both "licentiousness" and "dis-tempered condition of the body" (*OED*). It is in fact the better word, but I do not accept its authority; cf. Intro., pp. lxxiv-lxxv.

157. *bands*] bonds. The sentiment is proverbial: "Death pays all debts" (Tilley, D148).

159. *parcel*] portion, as in the phrase "part and parcel".

163. *So hath the business*] "So also the business . . . hath speed", i.e. requires immediate attention and despatch" (Malone).

164. *Lord . . . Scotland*] Shakespeare assumed that the Scottish Earls of

March were Mortimers like the English. See App. III, p. 173, for reference to "the Scot, the earle of March" (i.e. George Dunbar, Earl of the "March", or borderland, of Scotland).

172. *advertisement*] information.

174-9.] As Wilson suggests (N.C.S.), these lines may indicate imperfect revision in the repetition of the Bridgnorth meeting (ll. 175, 178), "march" (ll. 174, 176), and "business" (ll. 177, 179).

176. *Gloucestershire*] The regular London - Bridgnorth - Shrewsbury road was through Daventry, Coventry, and Birmingham. A second main route, through High Wycombe, More-

Our business valued, some twelve days hence
 Our general forces at Bridgnorth shall meet.
 Our hands are full of business, let's away,
 Advantage feeds him fat while men delay. *Exeunt.* 180

[SCENE III.—*Eastcheap. The Boar's Head Tavern.*]

Enter FALSTAFF and BARDOLPH.

Fal. Bardolph, am I not fallen away vilely since this last action? Do I not bate? Do I not dwindle? Why, my skin hangs about me like an old lady's loose gown. I am withered like an old apple-john. Well, I'll repent, and that suddenly, while I am in some liking; 5
 I shall be out of heart shortly, and then I shall have no strength to repent. And I have not forgotten what

Scene III

SCENE III.] *F* (*Scena Tertia.*); not in *Qq.* *Location.*] *Theobald* (*subst.*). S.D. *Bardolph*] *F*; *Bardol* *Qq* (*subst.*). 1. *Bardolph*] *F* (*Bardolph*); *Bardoll* *Qq* (*subst.*).

ton-in-the-Marsh (traversing northern Gloucestershire), and Worcester, was rather longer and Hal is given a day's start. But Shakespeare apparently forgets the King's order, for in iv. ii Hal meets Fal. on the other route near Coventry (J. V. Crofts, 'Fal.'s March to Bridgnorth', *TLS*, 8 Jan. 1931).

177. *Our business valued*] Absolute clause; = What we have to do being weighed up.

Scene III

1-2. *last action*] i.e. the Gad's Hill exploit, including the near-arrest at the end of ii. iv. "Fal. speaks of it as a military encounter" (Kittredge).

2. *bate*] lose weight.

3. *loose gown*] A shapeless garment for elderly ladies. R. Brathwaite, *Strappado for the Divell* (ed. Ebsworth, 1878, 40-1), describes "A ciuill matron . . . / In Graue attire . . . / Her

outward rayment in a loose-gowne made".

4. *apple-john*] A kind of apple gathered about St John's (Midsummer) Day, 24 June; it keeps well but the skin shrivels. Cf. *2H4*, II. iv. 4-9—"The prince once set a dish of apple-johns before him, and told him there were five more Sir Johns; and, putting off his hat, said, 'I will now take my leave of these six dry, round, old withered knights'".

5. *suddenly*] at once, immediately. *am in some liking*] A quibble: (a) feel like it; (b) still have some flesh on me. "Grasselet . . . Fattish, fattie, somewhat fat, in pretie good liking" (Cotgrave).

6. *out of heart*] A parallel quibble to "in some liking": (a) disinclined; (b) in poor condition—still in this sense applied to unproductive land.

7. *strength*] A third parallel quibble: strength (a) of purpose; (b) of body.

the inside of a church is made of, I am a peppercorn, a brewer's horse: the inside of a church! Company, villainous company, hath been the spoil of me. 10

Bard. Sir John, you are so fretful you cannot live long.

Fal. Why, there is it: come, sing me a bawdy song, make me merry. I was as virtuously given as a gentleman need to be; virtuous enough; swore little; diced not above seven times—a week; went to a bawdy-house not above once in a quarter—of an hour; paid money that I borrowed—three or four times; lived well, and in good compass; and now I live out of all order, out of all compass. 15

Bard. Why, you are so fat, Sir John, that you must needs be out of all compass, out of all reasonable compass, Sir John. 20

Fal. Do thou amend thy face, and I'll amend my life: thou art our admiral, thou bearest the lantern in the poop, but 'tis in the nose of thee: thou art the Knight of the Burning Lamp. 25

15. times—] *Staunton*; times *QqF*. 16. quarter—] *Hanmer*; quarter *QqF*.
17. borrowed—] *Hanmer*; borrowed *Qq*; borrowed, *F*. 19. all compass]
Qq1-4; compass *Q5,F*. 23. my] *Qq*; thy *F*.

8. *peppercorn*] An improbably diminutive comparison, like the shotten herring, bunch of radish, or rabbit sucker (II. iv. 127, 183, 431).

9. *brewer's horse*] An animal notoriously decrepit: cf. Dekker, *If This be not a good Play* (Shepherd, iii. 307)—“as noble-men vse their great horses, when they are past seruice: sell 'em to brewers and make 'em drey-horses”; and *History of the Triall of Cheualry*, 1605 (Bullen, *Old Plays*, iii. 303)—“S'hart, I have been stumbling up and downe all this night like a Brewers horse that has ne're a good eye in his head”.

11. *fretful . . . long*] “*Fretful* (a) given to worry; (b) wearing away” (Wilson, N.C.S.). Noble quotes *Ecclus.*, xxx. 23-4—“As for sorowe & heauinesse, dryue it farre from thee, for heauinesse hath slayne many a man, and bringeth no profit . . . carefullnesse and sorowe bring age before the time”.

12. *there is it*] that's it.

18. *in good compass*] within bounds, an orderly life. *Fal.* tosses Bardolph an unmissable pun.

24. *admiral*] flagship.

24-5. *lantern in the poop*] As Mr J. C. Maxwell points out to me, this association between illumination and Bardolph recurs to *Fal.* in *2H4*, I. ii. 51-4, when he speaks of light shining through a lantern and then suddenly asks “Where's Bardolph?” Dekker, *Wonderfull Yeare*, 1603 (Grosart, i. 138-9), has the same idea—“The Hamburgers offered I know not how many Dollars, for his companie in an East-Indian voyage, to haue stode a nightes in the Poop of their Admirall, onely to saue the charges of candles”.

25-6. *Knight . . . Lamp*] “Parodying Amadis, Knight of the Burning Sword, as does *The Knight of the Burning Pestle*”

Bard. Why, Sir John, my face does you no harm.

Fal. No, I'll be sworn, I make as good use of it as many a man doth of a death's-head, or a *memento mori*. I never see thy face but I think upon hell-fire, and Dives that lived in purple: for there he is in his robes, burning, burning. If thou wert any way given to virtue, I would swear by thy face: my oath should be "By this fire, that's God's angel!" But thou art altogether given over; and wert indeed, but for the light in thy face, the son of utter darkness. When thou ran'st up Gad's Hill in the night to catch my horse, if I did not think thou hadst been an *ignis fatuus*, or a ball of wildfire, there's no purchase in money. O, thou art a perpetual triumph, an everlasting bonfire-light! Thou hast saved me a thousand marks in links and torches, walking with thee in the night be-

34. that's God's angel] *Qq3-5*; that Gods Angell *Qq1,2*; not in *F.* 36. son] *Qq1-4* (sonne *Qq1-3*; son *Q4*); Sunne *Q5,F.* 38. thou] *Qq1,2*; that thou *Qq3-5,F.*

(G. C. Moore Smith, cited by Wilson, N.C.S.).

29. *death's-head*] ring with a skull as a *memento mori*; cf. Beau. & Fl., *Chances*, i. vi (*Works*, iv. 183)—"they keep deaths heads in rings, / To cry *Memento*"; and Brome (Shepherd, vol. iii), *Northern Lasse*, ii. v (p. 36)—"She broke me a Tooth once with a Deaths Head-Ring on her finger, it had like to ha' cost me my life! 't has been a true *memento* to me ever since".

29-31. *I never . . . purple*] *Fal.* refers to the Dives-and-Lazarus parable again at iv. ii. 25-6, and the association between Bardolph, hell-fire, and Dives the "glutton" recurs, Mr J. C. Maxwell reminds me, at *2H4*, i. ii. 35-9. Even on his death-bed *Fal.* jests on the resemblance between Bardolph's nose and the flames of hell (*H5*, ii. iii. 42-4).

34. *By . . . angel*] *F* omits as profane. Proverbial, deriving doubtless from *Exodus*, iii. 2—"And the angell of the Lorde appeared vnto hym in a flambe of fire"; or *Ps.*, civ. 4—"He maketh his angels spiritres: and his

ministers a flaming fire" (similarly *Hebr.*, i. 7; echoed in *Oth.*, v. ii. 8). Kittredge cites *Misogonus*, c. 1570, iii. i. 240—"By this fier that bournez thats gods aungell I sweare a great oth" (Bond, *Early Plays from the Italian*, 1911, 231).

36. *son . . . darkness*] More Scripture, combining the "children . . . of darkness" (cf. ii. iv. 170, note), and the "utter [i.e. outer] darknesse" of *Matt.*, viii. 12, xxii. 13, and xxv. 30.

38. *ignis fatuus*] will o' the wisp.

39. *ball of wildfire*] A flaming ball of gunpowder, for entertainment or naval warfare; also, globular lighting. These senses are what the phrase primarily conveys, though Wilson (N.C.S.) suggests a further quibble on erysipelas (called also "St. Anthony's fire" or "the rose"), a "local inflammatory cutaneous disease . . . in which the skin assumes a deep red colour" (*OED*, "Wildfire. 4").

40. *triumph*] illumination for a festival.

42. *links*] flares.

twixt tavern and tavern: but the sack that thou hast drunk me would have bought me lights as good cheap at the dearest chandler's in Europe. I have maintained that salamander of yours with fire any time this two and thirty years, God reward me for it! 45

Bard. 'Sblood, I would my face were in your belly!

Fal. God-a-mercy! so should I be sure to be heartburnt.

Enter Hostess.

How now, dame Partlet the hen, have you enquired yet who picked my pocket? 50

Host. Why, Sir John, what do you think, Sir John, do you think I keep thieves in my house? I have searched, I have enquired, so has my husband, man by man, boy by boy, servant by servant—the tithe of a hair was never lost in my house before. 55

Fal. Ye lie, hostess: Bardolph was shaved and lost many a hair, and I'll be sworn my pocket was picked: go to, you are a woman, go.

Host. Who, I? No, I defy thee: God's light, I was never called so in mine own house before. 60

Fal. Go to, I know you well enough.

Host. No, Sir John, you do not know me, Sir John, I know

45. at] *Qq1-4*; as *Q5,F.* 47. God] *Qq*; Heauen *F.* 48. 'Sblood] *Qq*; not in *F.* 49. God-a-mercy] *Qq*; not in *F.* 49. S.D.] *F*; *Enter host.* | *Qq1,2* (opposite line 50), *Qq3-5* (after line 51). 54. has] *Qq1,2*; haz *Qq3-5,F.* 55. tithe] *Theobald*; tight *QqF*; right *Dering MS*; weight *Vaughan.* 57. Bardolph] *F* (*Bardolph*); Bardoll *Qq* (*subst.*). 60. No, I] *Qq1-4*; I *Q5,F.* God's light] *Qq*; not in *F.*

44-5. *good cheap*] cheaply.

46. *salamander*] A species of lizard supposedly able to live in fire since, says Pliny (*Nat. Hist.*, x. lxxxvi), it is so cold-blooded as to be unaffected.

48. *I would . . . belly*] Cf. Tilley, B299—"I wish it were in your belly for me"; a proverbial retort to dispose of anything irritating.

49. *be heartburnt*] have indigestion.

50. *dame Partlet*] A traditional name for a hen (cf. Chaucer, *Nonne Pr. T.*) and so for a fussy or scolding woman; *Fal.* refers to her clucking agitation.

In *Wint.*, ii. iii. 75, Leontes calls the sharp-tongued Paulina "dame Partlet".

55. *tithe*] *QqF*'s "tight", Hemingway (New Var.) suggests, may be "a typical Quickly-Malapropism". "Tith" occurs as a variant of "tight" several times (e.g. in Beau. & Fl.; cf. Skeat & Mayhew, *Glossary of Tudor . . . Words*). But the reverse variant does not seem to occur, and in any case the ear would make little of it on the stage. Sisson suggests that "tithe" may in the copy have been misspelt "tihte".

you, Sir John, you owe me money, Sir John, and now
you pick a quarrel to beguile me of it. I bought you 65
a dozen of shirts to your back.

Fal. Dowlas, filthy dowlas. I have given them away to
bakers' wives; they have made bolters of them.

Host. Now as I am a true woman, holland of eight shil-
lings an ell! You owe money here besides, Sir John, 70
for your diet, and by-drinkings, and money lent you,
four and twenty pound.

Fal. He had his part of it, let him pay.

Host. He? Alas, he is poor, he hath nothing.

Fal. How? Poor? Look upon his face. What call you 75
rich? Let them coin his nose, let them coin his cheeks,
I'll not pay a denier. What, will you make a younker

68. they] *Qq*; and they *F.* 69. as] *Qqr-4, F*; at *Q5.* 69-70. eight shillings]
Qq (viii s.), *F.* 72. four and twenty] *Qq* (xxiii.), *F.* pound] *Qq*; pounds *F.*

65-6. *I bought . . . shirts*] Other hos-
tesses seem to have been similarly vic-
timized; in Dekker & Webster,
North-ward Hoe, iv. iii. 80-2 (Bowers,
ii. 459), a bawd says "I . . . lend
Gentlemen holland shirts, and they
sweat 'em out at tennis; and no resti-
tution, and no restitution".

67. *Dowlas*] coarse linen named
from Doulas in Brittany. According to
Strype, *Eccl. Mem.* (Bk II, "Repository
of Divers Letters", QQ), the justices of
Cornwall priced it in 1550 at nine-
pence a yard.

68. *bolters*] cloths for sifting meal.

69. *holland*] fine lawn. Brome (Shep-
herd, vol. ii), *New Academy*, iii. i
(p. 47), contrasts two modes of life—
"from the hurden smock . . . and hem-
pen sheets, to weare and sleepe in
Holland". Provoked by *Fal.*'s dis-
paragement (l. 67), the Hostess goes to
the other extreme; the price was from
one shilling a yard for cheap quality
(an ell = a yard and a quarter) to four
for fine, though the finest might be
considerably more (Linthicum, 98).

71. *by-drinkings*] drinks between
meals.

76. *rich*] The joke is on Bardolph's
rubicund ("rich") face. Bailey gives

"Rich-Face, a red Face"; and Lodge,
A Looking Glasse (Mal. Soc., 1932,
ll. 1712-13), has "you and I haue bene
tossing many a good cup of Ale, your
nose is growne verie rich". His nose,
Bardolph says in *H5*, II. iii. 46, is "all
the riches" he got in *Fal.*'s service.

77. *denier*] "a small copper coyne
valued at the tenth part of an English
pennie" (Cotgrave).

younker] prodigal, and greenhorn.
For the latter sense, of youthful gulli-
bility, see *3H6*, II. i. 24—"Trimm'd
like a younker prancing to his love";
and Beau. & Fl., *Elder Brother*, III. v
(*Works*, II. 31)—"I fear he'll make an
Ass of me, a younger". The "prodigal"
sense links up, Dr T. W. Craik informs
me, with interlude incidents when the
prodigal not only loses his money by
gaming but has his pockets picked at
his inn, probably by strumpets; e.g. R.
Simpson, *School of Sh.*, II, *The Comedy of
the Prodigal Son*. Jan Steen and other
Dutch painters depict such incidents,
which may have had traditional cur-
rency. In *Mer. V.* the "scarfed bark"
puts forth "like a younker or a pro-
digal", only to return "Lean, rent,
and beggar'd by the strumpet wind"
(II. vi. 14-19).

of me? Shall I not take mine ease in mine inn but I shall have my pocket picked? I have lost a seal-ring of my grandfather's worth forty mark. 80

Host. O Jesu, I have heard the Prince tell him, I know not how oft, that that ring was copper.

Fal. How? the Prince is a Jack, a sneak-up. 'Sblood, and he were here I would cudgel him like a dog if he would say so. 85

Enter the PRINCE marching, [with PETO,] and Falstaff meets him, playing upon his truncheon like a fife.

How now, lad? Is the wind in that door, i'faith, must we all march?

Bard. Yea, two and two, Newgate fashion.

Host. My lord, I pray you hear me.

Prince. What say'st thou, Mistress Quickly? How doth thy husband? I love him well, he is an honest man. 90

Host. Good my lord, hear me.

Fal. Prithee let her alone, and list to me.

Prince. What say'st thou, Jack?

Fal. The other night I fell asleep here, behind the arras, 95

81. O Jesu] *Qq*; not in *F.* 83. sneak-up] *Qq1,2* (sneakeup); sneak-cup *Qq3-5, F.* 'Sblood] *Qq*; not in *F.* and] *Qq*; and if *F.* 84. I would] *Qq1-4,5* corr., *F.* would *Q5* uncorr. 85. S.D. with Peto] *Theobald* (subst.); not in *QqF.* upon] *Qq1,2*; on / *Qq3-5, F.* 86. How] *Dyce*; *Falst.* How *QqF.* i'faith] *Qq*; not in *F.* 90. doth] *Qq1,4*; doeth *Qq2,3*; dow *Q5*; does *F.*

78. take . . . inn] A popular tag: Tilley, E42.

79. seal-ring] Often sentimentally valued as an heirloom: cf. Overbury, *Characters, An Elder Brother*—"His pedigree and his fathers seale-ring, are the stilts of his crazed disposition"; and C. Cotton, *The Scoffer Scoft* (1734 ed., p. 160)—"a Man would think that he had lost / The half of his Estate almost, / At least his Grandfathers Seal-Ring, / Or some most dear-beloved Thing".

83. Jack] knave.

sneak-up] See collation. Though the second "e" of *Q1* can be misread "c" (so indeed can the first, and others elsewhere with a blocked loop) the

word is certainly "sneakeup" and the meaning "a cowardly, creeping, insidious rascal" (Johnson).

85. S.D. with Peto] *QqF* omit. Several edd. follow Johnson in thinking Peto more suitable than Peto in l. 196 (cf. also II. iv. 497, note) and substitute him there and here. But change is unnecessary.

truncheon] *Fal.* deftly transforms the flourished "cudgel" of l. 84 into a musical instrument.

86. door] quarter (*OED*, "Door. 6†c"). *Fal.*'s phrase was a popular tag; Tilley, W419.

88. Newgate fashion] "As prisoners are conveyed to Newgate, fastened two and two together" (Johnson).

and had my pocket picked: this house is turned bawdy-house, they pick pockets.

Prince. What didst thou lose, Jack?

Fal. Wilt thou believe me, Hal, three or four bonds of forty pound apiece, and a seal-ring of my grandfather's. 100

Prince. A trifle, some eightpenny matter.

Host. So I told him, my lord, and I said I heard your Grace say so: and, my lord, he speaks most vilely of you, like a foul-mouthed man as he is, and said he 105 would cudgel you.

Prince. What! he did not?

Host. There's neither faith, truth, nor womanhood in me else.

Fal. There's no more faith in thee than in a stewed 110 prune, nor no more truth in thee than in a drawn fox—and for womanhood, Maid Marian may be the deputy's wife of the ward to thee. Go, you thing, go!

110. in a] *Q1*; a *Qq2-5, F.* 113. thing] *Qq*; nothing *F.*

102. *eightpenny*] trifling.

110-11. *There's . . . stewed prune*] i.e. "You're as faithless as if you made your living out of a brothel." Stewed prunes were often associated with brothel-keeping; Steevens cites Lodge, *Wit's Misery*, 1596—"you shall know her [a bawd's] dwelling by a dish of stewed prunes in the window". W. Clowes, *Treatise on Lues Venerea*, 1596, recommends them as a preventative of disease. In *2H4*, II. iv. 154-7, Doll scarifies Pistol for "tearing a poor whore's ruff in a bawdy-house" and says "he lives upon mouldy stewed prunes and dried cakes". So "a stewed prune" or "dish of stewed prunes" became a term for a bawd; cf. Dekker, *2 Honest Whore*, IV. iii. 36 (Bowers, II. 197)—"two dishes of stew'd prunes, a Bawde and a Pander".

111-12. *drawn fox*] hunted fox, drawn from cover; less appropriately explained as a disembowelled fox, dead fox dragged to leave a false trail, and a drawn sword.

112. *Maid Marian*] i.e. "Maid Marian would be a model of respectability compared with you". This was a May-game and morris-dance character, often played by a man, attacked by Puritans for impropriety, and a byword for grotesque attire and impudence. Kittredge cites *Misogonus*, II. iv. 75-6 (Bond, *Early Plays from the Italian*, 1911, 206)—"This a smurkyng wenche indeede, this a fare Mayde Marion, She is none of thes coy dames". Thomas Heywood, *Iron Age* (Shepherd, III. 302), has "Should I venter / To damme my selfe for painting, fanne my face / With a dyde Ostritch plume, plaster my wrinkles / With some old Ladies Trowell I might passe / Perhaps for some maide-marrian". Kemp's reference to a country wench he danced with is, however, a friendly one—"my merry Maydemarian" (*Nine Daies Wonder*, Camden Soc., 1840, 10).

113. *deputy's . . . ward*] The deputy of the ward was its most responsible citi-

Host. Say, what thing, what thing? 115

Fal. What thing? Why, a thing to thank God on.

Host. I am no thing to thank God on, I would thou shouldst know it, I am an honest man's wife, and setting thy knighthood aside, thou art a knave to call me so. 120

Fal. Setting thy womanhood aside, thou art a beast to say otherwise.

Host. Say, what beast, thou knave, thou?

Fal. What beast? Why, an otter.

Prince. An otter, Sir John? Why an otter? 125

Fal. Why? She's neither fish nor flesh, a man knows not where to have her.

Host. Thou art an unjust man in saying so, thou or any man knows where to have me, thou knave, thou.

Prince. Thou say'st true, hostess, and he slanders thee most grossly. 130

Host. So he doth you, my lord, and said this other day you ought him a thousand pound.

Prince. Sirrah, do I owe you a thousand pound?

Fal. A thousand pound, Hal? A million, thy love is worth a million, thou owest me thy love. 135

Host. Nay, my lord, he called you Jack, and said he would cudgel you.

Fal. Did I, Bardolph?

Bard. Indeed, Sir John, you said so. 140

Fal. Yea, if he said my ring was copper.

Prince. I say 'tis copper, darest thou be as good as thy word now?

Fal. Why, Hal, thou knowest as thou art but man I dare,

116, 117. God] *Qq*; heauen *F.* 117. no thing] *Q5, F*; nothing *Qq1-4.* 128.
art an] *Qq*; art *F.* 139. Bardolph] *F* (*Bardolph*); Bardol *Qq* (*subst.*). 144.
man] *Qq1, 2*; a man *Qq3-5, F.*

zen; his wife would naturally be irreproachable.

116. *thing . . . on*] "i.e. She is as God made her" (Wilson, N.C.S.).

126. *She's . . . flesh*] = She's an incomprehensible creature. Proverbial; Tilley, F319. The question whether the otter be beast or fish, says Izaak Walton, "hath been debated among

many great clerks: and they seem to differ about it: yet most agree that his tail is fish" (*Compleat Angler*, i. ii).

127. *where . . . her*] how to take her.

129. *where . . . me*] "how to get the better of me" is what the Hostess means, but she blunders on an equivocal.

133. *ought*] owed; archaic use.

but as thou art prince, I fear thee as I fear the roaring of the lion's whelp. 145

Prince. And why not as the lion?

Fal. The King himself is to be feared as the lion: dost thou think I'll fear thee as I fear thy father? Nay, and I do, I pray God my girdle break. 150

Prince. O, if it should, how would thy guts fall about thy knees! But sirrah, there's no room for faith, truth, nor honesty in this bosom of thine; it is all filled up with guts and midriff. Charge an honest woman with picking thy pocket? Why, thou whoreson impudent embossed rascal, if there were anything in thy pocket but tavern reckonings, memorandums of bawdy-houses, and one poor pennyworth of sugar-candy to make thee long-winded, if thy pocket were enriched with any other injuries but these, I am a villain: and yet you will stand to it, you will not pocket up wrong! Art thou not ashamed? 155 160

Fal. Dost thou hear, Hal? Thou knowest in the state of innocency Adam fell, and what should poor Jack Falstaff do in the days of villainy? Thou seest I have more flesh than another man, and therefore more 165

145. prince] *Qq*; a Prince *F*. 150. and] *Qq*; if *F*. I pray God] *Qq*; let *F*.

148. *The King . . . lion*] A standard symbol of kingship; with an echo of *Prov.*, xix. 12—"The kynges displeasure is lyke the roaryng of a Lion"; and *ibid.*, xx. 2—"The feare of the king is as the roaring of a Lion".

150. *pray . . . break*] "Ungirt unblest" was proverbial: Tilley, U10. Browne, discussing it in *Pseudodoxia Epidemica*, v. xxii. 13, says that the girdle signifies "Truth, Resolution, and Readiness unto action, which are parts and virtues required in the service of God". *Fal.*'s version was frequent too; e.g. S. Rowlands, *Well met Gossip*; or 'Tis merrie when Gossips meet, 1602—"If I make one pray God my girdle break" (1656 ed., sig. C3); and W. Rowley, *Match at Midnight*, i. i (Hazlitt's *Dodsley*, xiii. 10)—

"Would my girdle may break if I do".

156. *embossed rascal*] Probable quibbles on both words. "Embossed" is (a) swollen (cf. *Lr.*, ii. iv. 227—"embossed carbuncle"); (b) slaving like a hunted deer; Madden (54) quotes *The Noble Arte of Venerie*, 1575—"When he [the hart] is foamy at the mouth, we saye that he is embost". "Rascal" is (a) rogue; (b) "the young, lean, or inferior deer" (*OED*, "Rascal. †4.")—and so splendidly sarcastic in this context.

159. *long-winded*] Fighting cocks were given sugar to prolong their breath (Wright).

160. *injuries*] things whose loss you complain of as injuries.

167-8. *more flesh . . . frailty*] "Flesh is frail" is proverbial, deriving from

frailty. You confess then, you picked my pocket?

Prince. It appears so by the story.

Fal. Hostess, I forgive thee, go make ready breakfast, 170
love thy husband, look to thy servants, cherish thy
guests, thou shalt find me tractable to any honest
reason, thou seest I am pacified still, nay prithee be
gone. (*Exit Hostess.*) Now, Hal, to the news at court:
for the robbery, lad, how is that answered? 175

Prince. O my sweet beef, I must still be good angel to
thee—the money is paid back again.

Fal. O, I do not like that paying back, 'tis a double
labour.

Prince. I am good friends with my father and may do 180
anything.

Fal. Rob me the exchequer the first thing thou dost, and
do it with unwashed hands too.

Bard. Do, my lord.

Prince. I have procured thee, Jack, a charge of foot. 185

Fal. I would it had been of horse. Where shall I find one
that can steal well? O for a fine thief of the age of
two and twenty or thereabouts: I am heinously un-
provided. Well, God be thanked for these rebels,
they offend none but the virtuous; I laud them, I 190
praise them.

Prince. Bardolph!

Bard. My lord?

170-4. Hostess . . . gone.] *As Qq (prose)*; Hostesse . . . thee / Go . . . Husband, /
Looke . . . Guests: / Thou . . . reason: / Thou . . . still. / Nay . . . gone. / *F (verse)*.
171. cherish] *Qq*; and cherish *F*. 172. guests] *Q1 (ghesse)*, *Qq2-4 (ghests)*,
Q5 (Ghestes), *F (Guests)*. 173. prithee] *Qq1-4*; I prethee *Q5, F*. 174-5.
court: for] *Theobald*; court for *QqF*. 176-7.] *As Qq (prose)*; O . . . Beefe / I . . .
thee. / The . . . againe. / *F (verse)*. 176. beef] *Qq1-4 (beoffe)*, *Q5 (beeffe)*, *F*
(Beefe). 187. of the age of] *Qq*; of *F*. 188. two and twenty] *Qq (xxii.)*, *F*
thereabouts] *Qq1-3*; ther about *Qq4,5*; thereabout *F*. 192. Bardolph] *F*
(*Bardolph*); Bardoll *Qq*.

Matt., xxvi. 41, and *Mark*, xiv. 38—
“The fleshe is weake”: cf. Tilley, F363.

173. *pacified still*] always easily paci-
fied.

176. *beef*] ox; a suitably meaty
image.

183. *with . . . hands*] without a
moment's delay—don't pause for any

scruples of propriety. A proverbial
tag; Tilley, H125.

185. *a charge of foot*] Cf. II. iv. 538-9,
note.

189-90. *God . . . virtuous*] As Wilson
observes (*Fortunes*, 84), Fal.'s attitude
to war is blatantly, and indeed blas-
phemously, predatory.

Prince. Go bear this letter to Lord John of Lancaster,
To my brother John, this to my Lord of Westmoreland.

[*Exit Bardolph.*]

Go, Peto, to horse, to horse, for thou and I 196

Have thirty miles to ride yet ere dinner-time. [*Exit Peto.*]

Jack, meet me tomorrow in the Temple hall

At two o'clock in the afternoon:

There shalt thou know thy charge, and there receive 200
Money and order for their furniture.

The land is burning, Percy stands on high,

And either we or they must lower lie. [*Exit.*]

Fal. Rare words! Brave world! Hostess, my breakfast, come!

O, I could wish this tavern were my drum. [*Exit.*] 205

194-201.] *As QqF (verse); prose, T. Johnson 2, Pope, some edd.* 195. S.D.] *Dyce; not in QqF.* 196. Peto] *QqF; Poins Dering MS, var. 1773, conj. Johnson.* to horse, to horse] *Qq1,2; to horse Qq3-5,F.* 197. to ride yet] *Qq1-4,F; yet to ride Q5.* 197. S.D.] *Cambr.; Exit Pointz. / Dyce; not in QqF.* 199. o'] *Qq2-5,F (a), Theobald; of Q1.* 203. we or they] *Qq1-3; they or we Qq4,5,F.* 203. S.D.] *Dyce; not in QqF.* 204.] *As Qq; Rare . . . world. / Hostesse . . . come: / F.* 205. S.D.] *Capell; Exeunt. / Qq2-5; Exeunt omnes. / F; not in Q1.*

194-9.] Edd. have tried to smooth these lines, here given as in *QqF*, or have printed them as prose. However printed, on the stage they will sound like exhilarated urgency.

196. *Peto*] Since at iv. ii. 9 *Peto* is not with *Hal* but with *Fal.*, *Johnson* suggested *Poins* here, and some edd. follow; cf. ii. iv. 497 and iii. iii. 85, notes. But the two occasions are quite different, and no change is needed.

201. *furniture*] equipment.

205. *O . . . drum*] I wish this tavern were always my rallying-point. To *Wilson's* suggestion (*N.C.S.*) of a quibble on "tavern" and "taborn" or "tabern" (= tabor, a small drum), there is the objection that "taborn" or "tabern" was "chiefly north. Eng. and Scots" (*OED*, "taborn"). The normal English "tabor" provides no quibble.

[ACT IV]

[SCENE I.—*Shrewsbury. The Rebel Camp.*]

[*Enter* HOTSPUR, WORCESTER, and DOUGLAS.]

- Hot.* Well said, my noble Scot! If speaking truth
 In this fine age were not thought flattery,
 Such attribution should the Douglas have
 As not a soldier of this season's stamp
 Should go so general current through the world. 5
 By God, I cannot flatter, I do defy
 The tongues of soothers, but a braver place
 In my heart's love hath no man than yourself:
 Nay, task me to my word, approve me, lord.
- Doug.* Thou art the king of honour: 10
 No man so potent breathes upon the ground
 But I will beard him.
- Hot.* Do so, and 'tis well.

Enter [a messenger] with letters.

What letters hast thou there?—I can but thank you.

ACT IV

Scene 1

ACT IV SCENE I.] *F* (*Actus Quartus. Scœna Prima.*); not in *Qq.* Location.] *Capell* (*subst.*). S.D.] *Qq* 2-5, *F* (*Enter* Harrie Hotspurre . . . *Dowglas.* / *F*); not in *Q* 1. 1. *Hot.*] *Qq* 2-5, *F*; *Per.* / *Q* 1 (*so to line 90*). 2. *thought*] *Qq* 1-4, 5 *corr.*, *F*; though *Q* 5 *uncorr.* 6. *God*] *Qq*; *heauen* *F*. I do] *Q* 1; I *Qq* 2-5, *F*. 12. S.D.] *Malone*; *Enter one with letters.* / *Qq* (*after beard him*); *Enter a Messenger.* / *F* (*after beard him*). 12-13.] *As Capell*; But . . . him. / Do . . . there? / I . . . you. *Qq* 1, 2, *F*; But . . . him. / Do . . . you. / *Qq* 3-5 (*first phrase verse, the rest prose*). 13. *hast thou*] *Qq*; *hast F*.

3. *attribution*] praise, recognition of qualities.

6. *defy*] distrust.

7. *soothers*] flatterers.

a . . . *place*] a more splendid place as being a brave man.

9. *task . . . approve me*] put my word, and me, to the proof.

13. *I . . . you*] *Wilson* (N.C.S.) points out the "characteristically delayed reply" also at *ii. iii. 91* and *ii. iv. 106*.

- Mess.* These letters come from your father.
Hot. Letters from him? Why comes he not himself? 15
Mess. He cannot come, my lord, he is grievous sick.
Hot. 'Zounds, how has he the leisure to be sick
 In such a justling time? Who leads his power?
 Under whose government come they along?
Mess. His letters bear his mind, not I, my lord. 20
Wor. I prithee tell me, doth he keep his bed?
Mess. He did, my lord, four days ere I set forth,
 And at the time of my departure thence
 He was much fear'd by his physicians.
Wor. I would the state of time had first been whole 25
 Ere he by sickness had been visited:
 His health was never better worth than now.
Hot. Sick now? Droop now? This sickness doth infect
 The very life-blood of our enterprise;
 'Tis catching hither, even to our camp. 30
 He writes me here that inward sickness [],
 And that his friends by deputation could not
 So soon be drawn, nor did he think it meet
 To lay so dangerous and dear a trust

15-16.] *As Qq*; Letters . . . him? / Why . . . himself? / He . . . Lord, / He . . . sick. / *F.* 17. 'Zounds, how] *Qq*; How? *F.* has] *Qq*1,2; haz *Qq*3-5,*F.* sick] *Qq*; sicke now, *F.* 20. letters] *Qq*1-4,5 *corr.*, *F.*; litters *Q*5 *uncorr.* bear] *Q*7; beares *QqF.* I, my lord] *Capell*; I my mind *Qq*1,2; I his mind *Qq*3-5,*F.* (*subst.*). 24. physicians] *Qq*1-3 (Phisitions [*subst.*]); Phisition *Qq*4,5; Physician *F.* 31. sickness [],] *This edn*; sicknesse, *QqF*; sickness—*Rowe.* 32-3. deputation could not / So] *As Capell*; deputation / Could not so *QqF.*

16. *sick*] In *Hol.* this sickness occurs early in the rebellion (cf. *App.* III, p. 171); Shakespeare conjoins it with Shrewsbury to precipitate the rebels' peril and throw Hotspur's impatient valour into relief against Northumberland's evasion.

19. *government*] command.

20. *bear* . . . *lord*] The line suffers in *Q*1 from the compositor's confusion, and *QqF*'s "beares" is probably part of this, though a plural subject and singular verb are not unknown: *Miss G. D. Willcock* cites *Oth.*, II. i. 83 (*F*)—"The Riches of the Ship is come on Shore", and *Tp.*, III. iii. 2—"My old bones akes" (*Sh. and Elizabethan*

English, *Sh. Survey* 7, 1954). *Q*1's further reading "not I my mind" is most improbably brusque (though *Sisson* supports it), and *Capell* rightly emended.

24. *fear'd*] sc. "for"; *R*3, I. i. 137, has "His physicians fear him mightily".

31.] *QqF* end the line at "sicknesse," and, since there is no evident reason why Hotspur should break off tantalizingly, a phrase (*Capell* suggested "holds him") may have been lost. But he may be giving Northumberland's gist as *Kent* does *Cordelia's*, *Lr.*, II. ii. 175-7.

32. *deputation*] means of a deputy.

On any soul remov'd but on his own. 35

Yet doth he give us bold advertisement
That with our small conjunction we should on,
To see how fortune is dispos'd to us;
For, as he writes, there is no quailing now,
Because the King is certainly possess'd 40
Of all our purposes. What say you to it?

Wor. Your father's sickness is a maim to us.

Hot. A perilous gash, a very limb lopp'd off—
And yet, in faith, it is not! His present want
Seems more than we shall find it. Were it good 45
To set the exact wealth of all our states
All at one cast? to set so rich a main
On the nice hazard of one doubtful hour?
It were not good, for therein should we read
The very bottom and the soul of hope, 50
The very list, the very utmost bound
Of all our fortunes.

Doug. Faith, and so we should, where now remains
A sweet reversion—we may boldly spend
Upon the hope of what is to come in. 55
A comfort of retirement lives in this.

Hot. A rendezvous, a home to fly unto,
If that the devil and mischance look big

45-6. it. Were it good / To] *Qq*; it. / Were it good, to *F*. 48. hour?] *Qq* 1, 2; heure, *Qq* 3-5, *F*. 53-5.] *As Collier* 3, *conj. Walker*; Faith . . . should, / Where . . . reuersion, / We . . . in, / *Qq*; Faith . . . should, / Where . . . reuersion. / We . . . hope / Of . . . in: / *F*. 55. is] *F*; tis *Qq* (*subst.*).

35. *remov'd but*] less nearly concerned than.

42. *maim*] "Maim" in law signified "where . . . any member is hurt, or taken away, whereby the partie so hurt, is made . . . the lesse able to defend himselfe" (Minsheu: "Mahim, or Maime").

47-8. *main* . . . *hazard*] *As Wilson* (N.C.S.) points out, an elaborate quibble. "Main" = (a) army; (b) stake at "hazard": "hazard" = (a) chance; (b) game at dice.

49-52. *therein . . . fortunes*] "if we did so we should be scanning the very bases of our hopes, the limits and ex-

tremities of our fortunes." The style is bold but needs no emendation: cf. *Intro.*, p. lxi.

50, 51. *soul* . . . *list*] Probably subconscious quibbles: "soul" as sole: and "list" as (a) schedule; (b) extreme edge (lit. the selvedge of cloth).

54. *reversion*] inheritance in prospect.

56. *comfort of retirement*] protection to fall back upon.

58. *look big*] look threateningly. A popular tag; cf. *Thomas Heywood, Wise-Woman of Hogsdon*, iv. iv (Shepherd, v. 337)—"Ile goe, although the Devill and mischance looke bigge".

Upon the maidenhead of our affairs.

Wor. But yet I would your father had been here: 60

The quality and hair of our attempt
Brooks no division; it will be thought,
By some that know not why he is away,
That wisdom, loyalty, and mere dislike
Of our proceedings kept the Earl from hence; 65

And think how such an apprehension
May turn the tide of fearful faction,
And breed a kind of question in our cause:
For well you know we of the off'ring side
Must keep aloof from strict arbitrement, 70

And stop all sight-holes, every loop from whence
The eye of reason may pry in upon us:
This absence of your father's draws a curtain
That shows the ignorant a kind of fear
Before not dreamt of.

Hot. You strain too far. 75

I rather of his absence make this use:
It lends a lustre and more great opinion,
A larger dare to our great enterprise,
Than if the Earl were here; for men must think
If we without his help can make a head 80

To push against a kingdom, with his help
We shall o'erturn it topsy-turvy down.

Yet all goes well, yet all our joints are whole.

61. hair] *Qq1-3* (haire); heaire *Q4*; heire *Q5,F.* 73. father's] *Qq1-4* (fathers); Father *Q5,F.* 78. our] *Qq1,2*; your *Qq3-5,F.* 81. a] *Qq1-4*; the *Q5,F.* 82. shall o'erturn] *Q1* (shal oreturue), *Q2* (shall or'eturue), *F* (shall o're-turue); shall or turne *Q3*; shall, or turne *Qq4,5*.

61. hair] sort, kind, nature. Cf. Dekker & Webster, *West-ward Hoe*, II. iii. 34 (Bowers, II. 346)—“Am not I (gentlemen) a Ferret of the right haire?”; and North's *Plutarch*, *Sertorius* (Tudor Trans., IV. 108-9)—“a young hynde, and of a straunge heare, for she was all milke white”. Cf. *OED*, “Hair. 6”.

64. mere] pure, downright.

66. apprehension] The sense of “conception” “tends to pass into the

modern sense ‘anticipation with dread’” (Onions).

67. fearful] timorous.

69. the off'ring side] the side taking the offensive.

70. strict arbitrement] critical and impartial adjudication.

71. loop] sc. “-hole”.

77. opinion] prestige.

80. make a head] Both “raise a force” and “make a hostile advance”; cf. I. iii. 278, note, and III. i. 60.

Doug. As heart can think: there is not such a word
Spoke of in Scotland as this term of fear.

85

Enter SIR RICHARD VERNON.

Hot. My cousin Vernon! Welcome, by my soul!

Ver. Pray God my news be worth a welcome, lord.
The Earl of Westmoreland seven thousand strong
Is marching hitherwards, with him Prince John.

Hot. No harm, what more?

Ver. And further, I have learn'd, 90
The King himself in person is set forth,
Or hitherwards intended speedily,
With strong and mighty preparation.

Hot. He shall be welcome too: where is his son,
The nimble-footed madcap Prince of Wales, 95
And his comrades that daft the world aside
And bid it pass?

Ver. All furnish'd, all in arms;
All plum'd like estridges that with the wind

84-5.] *As Qq* (*subst.*); *As* . . . *thinke*: / *There* . . . *Scotland*, / *At* . . . *feare*. / *F.* 85. *as*] *Qq1-4*; at *Q5,F.* term] *Qq1-4* (*tearme*); *deame Q5*; *Dreame F.* *S.D. Richard*] *Qq1-4* (*Ri.*); *Q5* (*Rih.*), *F.* 89. with him] *Q1*; with *Qq2-5,F.* 91. *is*] *Qq1,2*; hath *Qq3-5,F.* 94.] *As Qq*; *He* . . . *too*. / *Where* . . . *Sonne*, / *F.* 98. with] *QqF*; wing *Rowe*; vic *Cowl & Morgan*.

95. *nimble-footed*] "In strength and nimbleness of bodie from his youth few to him comparable" (*Hol.*, iii. 133). *Stow's Annales*, 1592, 547, repeats almost verbatim the following passage from *The First Engl. Life of Henry V* (ed. Kingsford, 17), and William Harrison's *Description of England* (*Hol.*, i. 380) gives its gist also—"He was passing swift in runninge, in so much that he with two other of his Lords by force of runninge, without any manner of hounds or grayhounds, or without bowe or other engine, would take a wilde bucke or doe at large in a parke".

96. *daft*] *toss(ed) aside*. This, like "bid" (l. 96), may be the present tense (*daff*; cf. *Oth.*, iv. ii. 176, "dofftst" [*Q*], "dafts" [*F*], for *daffest*), or past (*daff'd*). Its ambivalence makes the transition

from the present "is" (l. 94) to Vernon's past tenses.

97. *bid it pass*] "Let the world pass" ("wag", "wind", or "slide") was a popular tag; *Tilley*, W879.

97-110. *All . . . horsemanship*] This famous passage is exceptionally vivid in its imagery, its symbolism of royalty (eagles, gold, sun, heavenly messengers), rich display (plumes, golden coats, spring and summer splendour, gallant arms), and vital energy (beating wings, eagles, spirited warriors, youthful goats, young bulls, horses and their riders): cf. i. i. 60, 63, note.

98-9. *All plum'd . . . bath'd*] "All plumed like ostriches that bated [beat their wings] in the wind, like newly-bathed eagles". A much-disputed passage, argument arising over (a) estridges; (b) with; (c) bated (*Q* bait-

Bated, like eagles having lately bath'd,
 Glittering in golden coats like images, 100
 As full of spirit as the month of May,
 And gorgeous as the sun at midsummer;
 Wanton as youthful goats, wild as young bulls.
 I saw young Harry with his beaver on,
 His cushes on his thighs, gallantly arm'd, 105
 Rise from the ground like feather'd Mercury,
 And vaulted with such ease into his seat
 As if an angel dropp'd down from the clouds
 To turn and wind a fiery Pegasus,

99. Bated] *Qq1-4* (Baited), *Q5,F* (Bayted), *Heath, Var.* 1778; Baiting *Hanmer*; Bating *Capell*. eagles having] *Qq1-4*; Eagles, hauing *Q5,F*. 106. feather'd] *Rowe*; feathered *QqF*. 108. dropp'd] *Qq2-5,F* (dropt); drop *Q1*.

ed). (a) "estridge" can mean either goshawk or ostrich, and Douce (*Illust. of Sh.*, 1807, i. 435) puts up a strong case for the former, citing *Ant.*, iii. xi. 196 ("The dove will peck the estridge"), where the sense is certainly goshawk (cf. *3H6*, i. iv. 41, "So doves do peck the falcon's piercing talons"). Goshawks can spiritedly ruffle their feathers and have an attacking valour which, with "eagles" (l. 99), would well suit the knights (cf. "Valure Estridge-like" at the end of App. VII). Yet the preference here is for "ostrich", on the score of a strikingly relevant Nashe passage which probably suggested "eagles" (l. 99) and "Pegasus" (l. 109) also (cf. App. VII), and of "plum'd", a word which brings to mind not primarily the goshawk but the ostrich; cf. Dekker, *Old Fortunatus*, ii. ii. 233-4 (Bowers, i. 147)—"From beggerie / I plum'd thee like an Estridge". The "goshawk" ambiguity may, however, have carried Shakespeare's mind on to the "eagles". (b) "with" sometimes is emended (Rowe's "wing" is the best alternative), but change is unnecessary. (c) "bated" ("baited") could mean either "fluttered the wings" (a falconry term; Fr. *battre*), or "refreshed". The latter sense, however, refers rather to refreshment by food

and rest at an inn than to the stimulating shock of cold water (*OED*, "Bait, v.¹ 7"), and the idea is rather of eagles beating their wings after bathing. For source passages see App. VII.

100. coats . . . images] Probably gilded effigies (e.g. of warriors) rather than images of saints, which were abolished in 1538 (M. St Clare Byrne, 'Like Images', *TLS*, 1 June 1946, 259). "Coats" = both coats of mail, and heraldic coats of arms.

104. beaver] helmet; strictly, face-guard.

105. cushes] thigh-armour. This spelling (in *QqF*) of "cuisses" represents the pronunciation.

107-10. vaulted . . . horsemanship] The climax of the horsemanship references; cf. i. i. 60, 63, note. Vaulting fully-armed needed uncommon strength and skill; in *H5*, v. ii. 141-2, Henry speaks of himself as "vaulting into my saddle with my armour on my back". "In wrestling, leaping, and running no man well able to compare with him" (*Hol.*, iii. 133).

109. turn and wind] Madden (286) refers to Blundevill, *Four Chiefest Offices of Horsemanship*, 1565; the fourth stage of the courser's manage is "To turne, readilie, on both hands with single turne and double turne". Blundevill, he observes, devotes 29

- And witch the world with noble horsemanship. 110
Hot. No more, no more! Worse than the sun in March,
 This praise doth nourish agues. Let them come!
 They come like sacrifices in their trim,
 And to the fire-ey'd maid of smoky war
 All hot and bleeding will we offer them: 115
 The mailed Mars shall on his altar sit
 Up to the ears in blood. I am on fire
 To hear this rich reprisal is so nigh,
 And yet not ours! Come, let me taste my horse,
 Who is to bear me like a thunderbolt 120
 Against the bosom of the Prince of Wales.
 Harry to Harry shall, hot horse to horse,
 Meet and ne'er part till one drop down a corse.
 O that Glendower were come!
- Ver.* There is more news:
 I learn'd in Worcester as I rode along 125
 He cannot draw his power this fourteen days.
- Doug.* That's the worst tidings that I hear of yet.
Wor. Ay, by my faith, that bears a frosty sound.

111.] *As Qq*; No more, no more, / Worse . . . March: / *F.* 116. altar] *Qq4,5,F*; altars *Qq1-3*. 119. taste] *Qq1,2*; take *Qq3-5,F*. 122. Harry shall, hot] *Q1* (Harry shal hot), *Johnson*; Harry, shall hot *Q2*; Harry, shall not *Qq3-5,F (subst.)*. 123. corse.] *Q1* (coarse.), *Qq2-5* (coarse:), *T. Johnson, Rowe 3* (coarse.); Coarse? *F.* 126. cannot] *Q5 corr., F*; can *Qq1-4, Q5 uncorr.* 127. yet] *Q5,F*; it *Qq1-4*.

pages to the mysteries of single turns, whole turns, and double turns. "Wind" = wheel about.

111-12. *Worse . . . agues*] "The March sun breeds agues" (Overbury, *Characters, A Canting Rogue*). It was thought strong enough to agitate but not strong enough to dispel the body's evil humours; Donne, *Biathanatos*, preface (1648 ed., 22), says "It may have as much vigour . . . as the Sunne in March; it may stirre and dissolve humors, though not expell them". Ray, *Proverbs*, remarks that "an Ague is nothing else but a strong fermentation of the blood . . . easily excited at this time [spring] by the return of the Sun"; cf. Tilley, S975. "Nour-

ish agues" = give the shudders.

113. *sacrifices . . . trim*] beasts decked out for sacrifice.

114. *the fire-ey'd . . . war*] Bellona. The Senecan violence of this speech is another touch of Hotspur's valiant rant.

118. *reprisal*] prize, booty.

126. *He . . . days*] Having heightened the drama of Northumberland's defection (l. 16, note), Shakespeare here increases the heroic isolation of Hotspur by following Daniel rather than Hol.; the latter makes the Welsh to be present while the former (*C. W.*, iii. 99) says that the King's rapid advance prevented them from joining with Hotspur.

Hot. What may the King's whole battle reach unto?

Ver. To thirty thousand.

Hot. Forty let it be: 130

My father and Glendower being both away,

The powers of us may serve so great a day.

Come, let us take a muster speedily—

Doomsday is near; die all, die merrily.

Doug. Talk not of dying, I am out of fear 135

Of death or death's hand for this one half year. *Exeunt.*

[SCENE II.—*A public road near Coventry.*]

Enter FALSTAFF [*and*] BARDOLPH.

Fal. Bardolph, get thee before to Coventry; fill me a bottle of sack. Our soldiers shall march through; we'll to Sutton Co'fil' tonight.

Bard. Will you give me money, captain?

Fal. Lay out, lay out. 5

Bard. This bottle makes an angel.

134. merrily] *Q1* (merely), *Qq2-5, F.* 136. S.D.] *Qq*; *Exeunt Omnes.* / *F.*

Scene II

SCENE II.] *F* (*Scœna Secunda.*); not in *QqF.* Location.] *Theobald.* S.D. and *Bardolph*] *F*; *Bardoll* / *Q1*; and *Bardoll* / *Qq2-5.* 1. *Bardolph*] *F* (*Bardolph*); *Bardol* *Qq* (*subst.*). 3. *Sutton Co'fil'*] *Cambr.*; *Sutton cop-/hill* *Qq1,3,4*; *Sutton cophill* *Q2*; *Sutton-cop-/hill* *Q5*; *Sutton-cop-hill* *F.*

129. battle] forces (in battle array).

130. thirty . . . Forty] Wright points out that Wyntown's *Cronykil of Scotland* gives 30,000; but Shakespeare's figures are probably chosen merely to show a marked superiority over the 14,000 which Hol. gives for Hotspur's forces. Neither Hol. nor Daniel estimates the King's numbers; Hall says that above 40,000 were engaged on both sides. The *Battle of Otterburn* (stanza 35) relates how when "the Perssy and the Dowglas mette" the former was faced by "forty thowsande . . . and fowre" Scots (*Engl. and Scot. Popular Ballads*, ed. Child).

Scene II

3. Co'fil'] Sutton Goldfield in Warwickshire is 20 miles beyond Coventry, so Fal. is marching with unexpected vigour, though why he is making thither, miles off the Coventry-Shrewsbury road, remains a mystery.

5. Lay out] "Pay out of your own pocket" (Kittredge), rather than "take it out of expenses" Wilson (N.C.S.). Were it the latter, the drain on public funds would be vastly more than "an angel".

6. makes] brings the outlay up to. angel] coin with the archangel

Fal. And if it do, take it for thy labour—and if it make twenty, take them all, I'll answer the coinage. Bid my lieutenant Peto meet me at town's end.

Bard. I will, captain: farewell. *Exit.* 10

Fal. If I be not ashamed of my soldiers, I am a soused gurnet; I have misused the King's press damnably. I have got in exchange of a hundred and fifty soldiers three hundred and odd pounds. I press me none but good householders, yeomen's sons, inquire me out 15 contracted bachelors, such as had been asked twice on the banns, such a commodity of warm slaves as had as lief hear the devil as a drum, such as fear the

9. at] *Qq* 1-4; a *Q* 5; at the *F*. 11. be not] *Qq* 1,2,*F*; be *Qq* 3-5. 13. a hundred and fifty] *Qq* (150.), *F*. 14. three hundred] *Qq* (300.), *F*.

Michael stamped on it; generally reckoned as 6s. 8d.

8. *answer*] "be answerable for. Alluding to the illegality of private minting" (Wilson, N.C.S.).

9. *Peto*] Cf. III. iii. 196, note.

11-12. *soused gurnet*] pickled gurnet, a small fish esteemed as a delicacy, with large head and tapering body. The effectiveness of the phrase involves (a) its incongruity with *Fal.*; (b) its currency as a term of contempt; e.g. Dekker, 1 *Honest Whore*, II. i. 201 (Bowers, II. 49)—"Puncke, you sowcde gurnet?"; (c) *Fal.*'s promptness to think of food, especially of such as promotes thirst, like the anchovies at II. iv. 531.

12. *misused* . . . *press*] Examples abound of the misuse of the royal commission for impressment. Steevens quotes *The Voyage to Cadiz*, 1597 (Hakluyt Soc., I. 607)—"a certaine Lieutenant was degraded and cashiered, &c., for the taking of money by the way of corruption of certaine prest souldiers in the countrey, and for placing of others in their roomes, more unfit for service and of less sufficiency and abilitie". Elizabethan military texts are usually respectful about generals but sardonic about captains;

Barnabe Riche, himself a captain, says "wee neuer number his [the captain's] yeeres, we neither consider his knowledg, we little regard his worthines, we lesse esteeme his experience, we scarce examine his honestye" (*Path-way to Military practise*, 1587, sig. C2). "[*Fal.*'s] behaviour is so accurately opposed to that recommended for captains that it might serve as a model in reverse. . . His comic appeal as captain is due to the accuracy with which he violates all the carefully formulated requirements for this responsible office" (Jorgensen). G. B. Harrison describes some corruptions of the 1590s and points out that since England was engaged in a considerable war they were matters of sinister importance (*Sh. at Work*, 1933, 129-30, 313).

14-15. *press* . . . *householders*] Steevens quotes Barnabe Riche, *Souldier's Wishe to Briton's Welfare*, 1604, 62—"we should take up honest householders, men that are of wealth and abilitie to live at home, such as your captaines might chop and change, and make merchandise of". "Good" = substantial.

17. *warm*] "*Warm*, well lined or flush in the Pocket" (Bailey).

report of a caliver worse than a struck fowl or a hurt
wild duck. I pressed me none but such toasts-and- 20
butter, with hearts in their bellies no bigger than
pins' heads, and they have bought out their services;
and now my whole charge consists of ancients, cor-
porals, lieutenants, gentlemen of companies—slaves
as ragged as Lazarus in the painted cloth, where the 25
glutton's dogs licked his sores: and such as indeed
were never soldiers, but discarded unjust serving-
men, younger sons to younger brothers, revolted
tapsters, and ostlers trade-fallen, the cankers of a

19. fowl] *Qq1-3* (foule); foole *Qq4,5,F*; sorel *conj. Johnson*. 26. sores:]
Qq2-5,F (*subst.*); sores, *Q1*. 29. tapsters, and ostlers] *Qq2,3* (tapsters,
and Ostlers); tapsters, and Ostlers, *Q1*; tapsters & Ostlers *Q4*; Tapsters and
Ostlers *Q5*; Tapsters and Ostlers, *F*.

19. *caliver*] light musket. Wright
cites contemporary spellings of "calce-
uer" and "calieuers" to show the long
second syllable.

struck fowl] Since this seems merely
to anticipate "hurt wild duck",
emendations have been proposed, the
best being Johnson's "sorel" (= young
buck). "Strike" as a hunting term was
particularly used of deer; cf. *OED*,
"Strike, *v.* 33.b. To kill or wound
(deer) with an arrow or spear". Or
"fowl" may = woodcock (Schmidt).

20-1. *toasts-and-butter*] milksops,
pampered citizens. Fynes Moryson's
Itinerary, 1617, pt III, i. 53, says
"Londiners, and all within the sound
of Bow-Bell, are in reproch called
Cocknies, and eaters of buttered
tostes".

23. *ancients*] i.e. ensigns, standard-
bearers.

24. *gentlemen of companies*] These
were imprecisely ranked somewhere
between privates and officers. To
Pistol's question "Art thou officer, /
Or art thou base, common, and popu-
lar?" Henry judiciously replies "I am
a gentleman of a company" (*H5*, iv. i.
37-9). Sir J. Turner, *Pallas Armata*,
1683, 218, 220-1, says that they were
not officers but were more honourable

than sergeants—"I encounter'd once
with a Country man of my own. . .
I enquir'd then if he had attain'd to
any degree better than a Serjeants
place? he told me, yes; for . . . he was
the oldest Gentleman of a Company".

25-6. *Lazarus . . . sores*] For Fal. and
this parable, cf. III. iii. 29-31, note.
Cloth painted with pictures was a
cheap substitute for tapestry; when the
hostess complains (*2H4*, II. i. 157) that
she is "fain to pawn . . . the tapestry",
Fal. replies ". . . for thy walls . . . the
story of the Prodigal, or the German
hunting, in water-work, is worth a
thousand of these . . . fly-bitten
tapestries".

26. *sores*:] *Q1* has only a comma, but
Fal. divides his men into (a) old
soldiers who, though ragged, had seen
service; and (b) such as never were
soldiers, whose impressment repre-
sents the depths of corruption.

28. *revolled*] runaway.

29-30. *cankers . . . peace*] Steevens and
Wilson (N.C.S.) cite Nashe parallels,
Pierce Penilesse (McKerrow, i. 213, 211)
—"all the cankerwormes that breede
on the rust of peace", and "There is a
certain waste of the people for whome
there is no vse, but warre: and these
men must haue some employment still

calm world and a long peace, ten times more dis- 30
honourable-ragged than an old fazed ancient; and
such have I to fill up the rooms of them as have
bought out their services, that you would think that
I had a hundred and fifty tattered prodigals lately 35
come from swine-keeping, from eating draff and
husks. A mad fellow met me on the way, and told me
I had unloaded all the gibbets and pressed the dead
bodies. No eye hath seen such scarecrows. I'll not
march through Coventry with them, that's flat: nay, 40
and the villains march wide betwixt the legs as if they
had gyves on, for indeed I had the most of them out
of prison. There's not a shirt and a half in all my
company, and the half shirt is two napkins tacked to-
gether and thrown over the shoulders like a herald's
coat without sleeves; and the shirt to say the truth 45
stolen from my host at Saint Albans, or the red-nose
innkeeper of Daventry. But that's all one, they'll
find linen enough on every hedge.

30. a long] *Qq* 1-4; long *Q* 5, *F*.

fac'd *F*. 32. as] *Qq*; that *F*.

(tatter'd). 46. at] *Qq* 1-4; of *Q* 5, *F*.

31. fazed] *Qq* 1-4 (*fazd* or *fazde*); *faczde* *Q* 5;

34. tattered] *QqFf* 1, 2 (*tottered* [*subst.*]), *F* 3

(tatter'd).

to cut them off". Elizabethan refer-
ences to the supposed unhealthiness
of a long peace abound; cf. *Ham.*,
iv. 27-8—"the imposthume of
much wealth and peace, / That in-
ward breaks"; and Daniel, *C. W.*, i. 83
—"For now this Peace with *France*
had shut in here / The overgrowing
Humours Wars do spend".

31. *old fazed ancient*] a tattered old
flag: "faze", "feaze" = fray, unravel
(*OED*, "Feaze, *v.*"). *F*'s "old-fac'd"
may mean the same thing but is am-
biguous. *Fal.* presumably means that
his men are more ragged in a dis-
honourable way than an ensign is in an
honourable one.

34-6. *prodigals . . . husks*] "The most
frequently mentioned Parable . . . in
the plays" (Noble, 277). Shakespeare
recollects the Geneva Bible's "huskes"
(*Luke*, xv. 16) rather than the Bishops'
or Great Bible's "coddess".

35. *draff*] pig-swill.

41-2. *out of prison*] "The Privy
Council emptied the London pris-
ons in 1596 to furnish recruits for
the Cadiz expedition" (Wilson,
N.C.S.).

42. *not*] Rowe emended to "but"
and many edd. follow. But this free
hand with arithmetic is thoroughly
Falstaffian. For an exact parallel see
v. iii. 37-8.

46-7. *Saint Albans . . . Daventry*] Both
on the main road from London to
Coventry. *Q* 6's "Daintry" ("Dauin-
try" *Qq* 1-5, *F*) indicates the pronun-
ciation.

47-8. *they'll . . . hedge*] A frequent
recourse for snappers-up of uncon-
sidered trifles, like Autolycus ("My
traffic is sheets"—*Wint.*, iv. ii. 23).
John Awdley's *Fraternity of Vaca-
bondes*, 1575, mentions the "Prygman"
whose "propertye is to steale cloathes

Enter the PRINCE [and the] LORD OF WESTMORELAND.

Prince. How now, blown Jack? How now, quilt?

Fal. What, Hal! How now, mad wag? What a devil dost thou in Warwickshire? My good Lord of Westmoreland, I cry you mercy, I thought your honour had already been at Shrewsbury. 50

West. Faith, Sir John, 'tis more than time that I were there, and you too, but my powers are there already; the King I can tell you looks for us all, we must away all night. 55

Fal. Tut, never fear me, I am as vigilant as a cat to steal cream.

Prince. I think, to steal cream indeed, for thy theft hath already made thee butter; but tell me, Jack, whose fellows are these that come after? 60

Fal. Mine, Hal, mine.

Prince. I did never see such pitiful rascals.

Fal. Tut, tut, good enough to toss, food for powder, food for powder, they'll fill a pit as well as better; tush, man, mortal men, mortal men. 65

West. Ay, but, Sir John, methinks they are exceeding poor and bare, too beggarly.

Fal. Faith, for their poverty I know not where they had that; and for their bareness I am sure they never learned that of me. 70

48. S.D. *and the*] *Qq2-5, F*; *not in Q1.* 56. can tell] *Qq1-4, Q5 corr., F*; can *Q5 uncorr.* 57. all night] *Qq*; all to Night *F.* 58. fear me] *Qq1-4, F*; feare tell me *Q5.* 66. better] *Qq1, 3-5, F*; a better *Q2.*

of the hedge" (EETS, Extra ser., ix. 3); and Harman's *Caveat for Common Cursetors*, 1567, calls for vigilance so that "our linnen clothes shall and maye lye safelye one our hedges vntouched" (*ibid.*, 21).

49. *blown . . . quilt*] "blown" = (a) swollen; (b) short-winded. "Jack" is also a quibble, a "jack" being a soldier's quilted or wadded jacket.

50-3. *What . . . Shrewsbury*] *Fal.* gets his innuendos in first.

60-1. *I think . . . butter*] It must be cream indeed, for whatever you steal runs to fat.

65. *good . . . powder*] Remarking on "the terrible anonymity of *Fal.*'s 'food for powder'" (like "cannon-fodder" in the 1914-18 war), Jorgensen cites Thomas Digges, *Four Paradoxes*, 1604, 47, on the indifference of captains and men to each other—"The Captaine neither knowes his Souldiers, nor the Souldiers their Captaine before the Seruice, nor euer meane to meete againe when the warres are ended". *Fal.*'s nonchalance reflects the Elizabethan captains' readiness to lose their men so that they could retain the pay; cf. v. iii. 36, note.

Prince. No, I'll be sworn, unless you call three fingers in the ribs bare. But sirrah, make haste; Percy is already in the field. *Exit.* 75

Fal. What, is the King encamped?

West. He is, Sir John, I fear we shall stay too long. *[Exit.]*

Fal. Well,
To the latter end of a fray, and the beginning of a feast
Fits a dull fighter and a keen guest. *Ex[it].* 80

[SCENE III.—*Shrewsbury. The Rebel Camp.*]

Enter HOTSPUR, WORCESTER, DOUGLAS, VERNON.

Hot. We'll fight with him tonight.

Wor. It may not be.

Doug. You give him then advantage.

Ver. Not a whit.

Hot. Why say you so, looks he not for supply?

Ver. So do we.

Hot. His is certain, ours is doubtful.

Wor. Good cousin, be advis'd, stir not tonight. 5

Ver. Do not, my lord.

Doug. You do not counsel well.

You speak it out of fear and cold heart.

Ver. Do me no slander, Douglas; by my life,
And I dare well maintain it with my life,

If well-respected honour bid me on, 10

I hold as little counsel with weak fear

73. in] *Qq*1,2; on *Qq*3-5,*F.* 75. S.D.] *Qq*; not in *F.* 77. S.D.] *Capell*; not in *QqF.* 78-80.] *As verse, Pope*; prose, *QqF.* 80. S.D.] *Capell*; *Exeunt.* | *QqF.*

Scene III

SCENE III.] *F* (*Scæna Tertia.*); not in *Qq.* Location.] *Malone* (*subst.*). S.D. *Douglas*,] *Q*1 (*Doug*); *Douglas*, and | *Qq*2-5,*F.*

73. *fingers*] The finger is a measure of $\frac{3}{4}$ inch; *OED* ("Finger, sb.5") cites *Eden, Arte of Navig.*, 1561, i. xviii. 19—"Foure graines of barlye make a fynger; foure fyngers a hande; foure handes a foote".

79-80. *To . . . guest*] A proverbial sentiment; *Tilley*, C547.

Scene III

3. *supply*] reinforcements.

10. *well-respected*] well-considered—

As you, my lord, or any Scot that this day lives;
 Let it be seen tomorrow in the battle
 Which of us fears.

Doug.

Yea, or tonight.

Ver.

Content.

Hot. Tonight, say I.

15

Ver. Come, come, it may not be. I wonder much,
 Being men of such great leading as you are,
 That you foresee not what impediments
 Drag back our expedition: certain horse
 Of my cousin Vernon's are not yet come up,
 Your uncle Worcester's horse came but today,
 And now their pride and mettle is asleep,
 Their courage with hard labour tame and dull,
 That not a horse is half the half himself.

20

Hot. So are the horses of the enemy
 In general journey-bated and brought low.
 The better part of ours are full of rest.

25

Wor. The number of the King exceedeth ours:
 For God's sake, cousin, stay till all come in.

The trumpet sounds a parley.

Enter SIR WALTER BLUNT.

13. Let it] *Qq1,5,F*; Let *Qq2-4*. 13-14. Let... battle / Which... fears.] *As F*;
 Let... battle which... feares. / *Qq*. 14. *Doug.*] *Qq1,2,5,F*; not in *Qq3,4*.
 16-17.] *As T. Johnson, Pope*; Come... be. / I... are, / *QqF* (*subst.*). 21. horse]
Q5,F; horses *Qq1-4*. 24. the half] *Steevens*; the halfe of *QqF*; half of *Pope*.
 28. ours] *Q6,F*; our *Qq1-5*.

"i.e. as understood by wise campaigners, not mere fire-eaters" (*Wilson, N.C.S.*).

17. of such... leading] so experienced in generalship.

19. Drag... expedition] Prevent our moving fast.

19, 21. horse] Cf. II. i. 3, note.

24. That... himself] For metre *Pope* dropped "the" and *Steevens*, more effectively, "of" (see collation). "Half the half of himself", Dr Harold Brooks comments to me, sounds un-Shakespearean in rhythm, even granted the play's occasional roughness.

26. journey-bated] dejected, weakened, by travel.

28. ours] *Qq1-5*'s "our" may be right. *Jespersen, Mod. Engl. Grammar*, ii. 16, 27, says "The form without *s* was used as late as 1550"; but *OED* ("Our. † 2... = OURS") cites a later usage, in *Daniel, C. W.*, 1601, vi. lxi—"We rule who live: the dead are none of our" (rhyming with "pow'r").

29 *S.D.* Sir Walter Blunt] *Hol.* says "the abbat of Shrewesburie, and one of the clearks of the priuie seale were sent from the king vnto the Persies" (iii. 25), but Shakespeare heightens Blunt's role.

- Blunt.* I come with gracious offers from the King, 30
If you vouchsafe me hearing and respect.
- Hot.* Welcome, Sir Walter Blunt: and would to God
You were of our determination!
Some of us love you well, and even those some
Envy your great deservings and good name, 35
Because you are not of our quality,
But stand against us like an enemy.
- Blunt.* And God defend but still I should stand so,
So long as out of limit and true rule
You stand against anointed majesty. 40
But to my charge. The King hath sent to know
The nature of your griefs, and whereupon
You conjure from the breast of civil peace
Such bold hostility, teaching his duteous land
Audacious cruelty. If that the King 45
Have any way your good deserts forgot,
Which he confesseth to be manifold,
He bids you name your griefs, and with all speed
You shall have your desires with interest
And pardon absolute for yourself, and these 50
Herein misled by your suggestion.
- Hot.* The King is kind, and well we know the King
Knows at what time to promise, when to pay:
My father, and my uncle, and myself

32-3.] *As Qq*; Welcome . . . *Blunt.* / And . . . determination. / *F.* 38. God] *Qq*;
Heaven *F.* 41.] *As Qq*; But . . . Charge. / The . . . know / *F.* 52.] *As Qq*;
The . . . kinde: / And . . . King / *F.* 54. and my] *Qq1,2*; my *Qq3-5,F.*

35. *Envy*] Begrudge.

36. *quality*] company, party. It signified a profession (especially the actor's), and so a fellowship; cf. *Tp.*, i. ii. 193—"Ariel and all his quality".

38. *defend*] forbid.

39. *limit*] bounds of allegiance.

51. *suggestion*] instigation, temptation—a word of sinister implication; cf. *2H4*, iv. iv. 45—"venom of suggestion"; *Mac.*, i. iii. 134—"Why do I yield to that suggestion . . .?"; and *Lr.*, ii. i. 75—"Thy suggestion, plot, and damned practice".

54. *My father* . . .] "At his comming

vnto Doncaster, the earle of Northumberland, and his sonne sir Henrie Persie . . . with the erle of Westmerland, came vnto him, where he sware vnto those Lords, that he would demand no more, but the lands that were to him descended by inheritance from his father and in right of his wife" (*Hol.*, ii. 853). For the Percys' accusation of "manifest periurie" see App. III, p. 174. Actually Hall's *Chronicle* more clearly makes the Percys the first supporters on his landing. But it does not follow that Hall was a source, for Shakespeare undoubtedly derives from

Did give him that same royalty he wears, 55
 And when he was not six and twenty strong,
 Sick in the world's regard, wretched and low,
 A poor unminded outlaw sneaking home,
 My father gave him welcome to the shore:
 And when he heard him swear and vow to God 60
 He came but to be Duke of Lancaster,
 To sue his livery, and beg his peace
 With tears of innocency, and terms of zeal,
 My father, in kind heart and pity mov'd,
 Swore him assistance, and perform'd it too. 65
 Now when the lords and barons of the realm
 Perceiv'd Northumberland did lean to him,
 The more and less came in with cap and knee,
 Met him in boroughs, cities, villages,
 Attended him on bridges, stood in lanes, 70
 Laid gifts before him, proffer'd him their oaths,
 Gave him their heirs as pages, follow'd him

61. but to be] *Qq1-3,5 corr., F*; but to the *Qq4,5 uncorr.* 70. Attended] *Qq1-3, F*;
 Attend *Qq4,5*. 72. heirs as pages,] *F4* (Heires, as Pages,); heires, as Pages
QqFf1-3 (subst.). follow'd] *Capell*; followed *QqF*.

Hol. in some details (e.g. in naming Beaumont among the supporters—*R2*, II. ii. 54), and in any case the Percys, whether or not present at Ravenspurgh, are clearly the greatest of Bolingbroke's allies (cf. Northumberland's initiative in *R2*, II. i. 278 ff.).

56. *six and twenty*] A number not apparent in the sources. Hol. says that Bolingbroke "landed . . . at . . . Rauenspur . . . and with him not past three-score persons" (II. 853).

62. *sue his livery*] sue for the delivery of his lands which, by law, on the death of his father, John of Gaunt, reverted to the King.

beg his peace] i.e. from Richard II. Cf. *OED*, "Peace. sb. I.1.c. . . . peaceful recognition of the authority or claims, and acceptance of the protection, of a king or lord".

68. *with cap and knee*] An accepted phrase; cf. Sidney, *Lady of the May* (*Wks*, ed. Feuillerat, 1922, II. 334)—

"With cap and knee be it spoken, is it your pleasure neighbour *Rixus* to be a wild foole?"; and Dekker, *Sun's Darling* (Shepherd, iv. 299)—"*Follie*. I am sure the Times were never more beggerly and proud . . . knaves overbrave wise men, while wise men stand with cap and knee to fooles".

70. *lanes*] The sense "rows, files" (*OED*, "Lane. 2b. A passage between two lines of persons; a way to pass through a crowd") is apter than that of "country paths"; Bolingbroke's triumph is a matter rather for high-roads.

72. *Gave him . . . him*] *QqF* have the comma after "heirs", not "pages". But (a) the young heirs rather than the fathers would be the pages; (b) pages normally preceded their masters, as in *Three Lords and Three Ladies of London* (Hazlitt's *Dodsley*, vi. 472-3)—"*Pomp*. But, Fealty, canst thou declare to me / The cause why all their pages follow

Even at the heels in golden multitudes.
 He presently, as greatness knows itself,
 Steps me a little higher than his vow 75
 Made to my father while his blood was poor
 Upon the naked shore at Ravenspurgh;
 And now forsooth takes on him to reform
 Some certain edicts and some strait decrees
 That lie too heavy on the commonwealth; 80
 Cries out upon abuses, seems to weep
 Over his country's wrongs; and by this face,
 This seeming brow of justice, did he win
 The hearts of all that he did angle for;
 Proceeded further—cut me off the heads 85
 Of all the favourites that the absent King
 In deputation left behind him here,
 When he was personal in the Irish war.

Blunt. Tut, I came not to hear this.

Hot. Then to the point.

In short time after he depos'd the King, 90
 Soon after that depriv'd him of his life,
 And in the neck of that task'd the whole state;
 To make that worse, suffer'd his kinsman March
 (Who is, if every owner were well plac'd,
 Indeed his King) to be engag'd in Wales, 95
 There without ransom to lie forfeited;
 Disgrac'd me in my happy victories,
 Sought to entrap me by intelligence,

80. lie] *Qq1-4,5 uncorr.*; lay *Q5 corr., F.* 82. country's] *Rowe*; Countries *Q5 corr., F*; Countrey *Q1*; Countrie *Qq2,3*; Country *Qq4,5 uncorr.* 94. were well] *Qq1-4*; were *Q5, F.*

them, / When ours in show do ever go before? / *Fealty*. In war they follow, and the Spaniard is / Warring in mind".

73. *golden*] (a) resplendent; (b) auspicious. Cf. Pistol's "golden times" and "golden joys" (2*H4*, v. iii. 98, 101).

78-80. *reform . . . commonwealth*] "He undertooke to cause the paiement of taxes and tallages to be laid downe, & to bring the king to good gouernment" (Hol., ii. 853).

87. *In deputation*] As deputies; cf. iv. i. 32, note.

88. *personal*] personally engaged.

92. *in the neck of*] immediately after. *task'd*] Almost identical with "taxed", though technically a particular levy of a "fifteenth" authorized to the king by Magna Carta.

95. *engag'd*] held as hostage; cf. v. ii. 43.

98. *intelligence*] secret information. For the rebels' complaint of "slan-

Rated mine uncle from the Council-board,
 In rage dismiss'd my father from the court, 100
 Broke oath on oath, committed wrong on wrong,
 And in conclusion drove us to seek out
 This head of safety, and withal to pry
 Into his title, the which we find
 Too indirect for long continuance. 105

Blunt. Shall I return this answer to the King?

Hot. Not so, Sir Walter. We'll withdraw awhile.

Go to the King, and let there be impawn'd
 Some surety for a safe return again,
 And in the morning early shall mine uncle 110
 Bring him our purposes—and so, farewell.

Blunt. I would you would accept of grace and love.

Hot. And may be so we shall.

Blunt. Pray God you do. [Exeunt.]

[SCENE IV.—York. The Archbishop's Palace.]

Enter [the] ARCHBISHOP OF YORK [and] SIR MICHAEL.

Arch. Hie, good Sir Michael, bear this sealed brief
 With winged haste to the lord marshal,

99. mine] *Qq* 1-4; my *Q* 5, *F*. 104. title] *Qq* *F*; title too *Pope*. 107.] *As Qq*;
 Not . . . *Walter*. / Wee'le . . . a while: / *F*. 110. mine] *Qq* 1, 2; my *Qq* 3-5, *F*.
 111. purposes] *Qq* 1-3; porpose *Q* 4; purpose *Q* 5, *F*. 113. And] *Qq*; And't *F*.
 God] *Qq*; Heauen *F*. 113. S.D.] *F*; not in *Qq*.

Scene IV

SCENE IV.] *F* (*Scena Quarta.*); not in *Qq*. Location.] *Theobald* (*subst.*). S.D.
the] *F*; not in *Qq*. and] *Qq* 2-5, *F*; not in *Q* 1.

derous reports" see App. III, p. 172.

99. *Rated mine uncle*] Cf. I. iii. 14-20.

100. *In rage . . . court*] Cf. I. iii. 120-2.

103. *head of safety*] self-defensive army.

105. *indirect*] (a) not in the direct line; (b) morally crooked.

113. *And . . . shall*] This unexpectedly moderate reply corresponds to Hol.; cf. App. III, p. 174.

Scene IV

1. *Sir Michael*] Unknown to history. "Sir" was a courtesy title for priests (like Sir Hugh Evans in *Wiv.*), but, Evans (*Supp.*) suggests, Sir Michael might equally well be a knight, in view of his military interests. The name was very variously spelt, and *Q* 1's *Mighell*, Wilson (N.C.S.) notes, occurs twice in Nashe (McKerrow, iii. 88, ll. 17, 26). *brief*] letter.

2. *marshal*] He was Thomas Mow-

This to my cousin Scroop, and all the rest
 To whom they are directed. If you knew
 How much they do import you would make haste. 5

Sir M. My good lord,
 I guess their tenor.

Arch. Like enough you do.
 Tomorrow, good Sir Michael, is a day
 Wherein the fortune of ten thousand men
 Must bide the touch; for, sir, at Shrewsbury, 10
 As I am truly given to understand,
 The King with mighty and quick-raised power
 Meets with Lord Harry: and I fear, Sir Michael,
 What with the sickness of Northumberland,
 Whose power was in the first proportion, 15
 And what with Owen Glendower's absence thence,
 Who with them was a rated sinew too,
 And comes not in, o'er-rul'd by prophecies,
 I fear the power of Percy is too weak
 To wage an instant trial with the King. 20

Sir M. Why, my good lord, you need not fear,
 There is Douglas, and Lord Mortimer.

Arch. No, Mortimer is not there.

4-5.] *As Qq*; To . . . directed. / If . . . import, / You . . . haste. / *F.* 6-7.] *As Var.* 1773; My . . . tenor. / Like . . . do. / *QqF* (*subst.*). 16. what with] *Qq1,2,F*; what *Qq3-5*. 17. a rated sinew] *Qq1-3*; rated sinew *Q4*; rated firmly *Q5,F*. 18. o'er-rul'd] *QqF* (*ouerrulde or ouer-rul'd*), *T. Johnson 2, Pope*.

bray, Duke of Norfolk, an insurgent leader in 2*H4*. "Marshal" sometimes is trisyllabic (Fr. *maréchal*); cf. *Lr.*, iv. iii. 9—"The Marshal of France, Monsieur la Far".

3. *my cousin Scroop*] If this fleeting reference is to be elucidated, the identification is probably with (a) below. Various Scopes in the plays fall foul of the Bolingbroke line, viz. (a) Sir Stephen, who tells Richard II of Wiltshire's execution (*R2*, iii. ii. 142); (b) William, Earl of Wiltshire, younger brother of Sir Stephen, executed by Bolingbroke at Bristol; (c) the Archbishop, Richard, who resents "his brother's death at Bristow" (*1H4*, i. iii.

265)—really a distant cousin of Wiltshire (though Hol. calls him a brother, iii. 23); (d) Sir Henry, son of Sir Stephen above, the treacherous Scrope of *H5*, ii. ii.

10. *bide the touch*] be put to the test, as gold is tried by the touchstone.

15. *proportion*] magnitude, i.e. a larger proportion than any other.

17. *rated sinew*] valued source of strength.

18. *o'er-rul'd by prophecies*] Hol. says that the Welsh were at Shrewsbury, Daniel that they were absent. The "prophecies" are a Shakespearean invention in keeping with Glendower's character.

Sir M. But there is Mordake, Vernon, Lord Harry Percy,
And there is my Lord of Worcester, and a head 25
Of gallant warriors, noble gentlemen.

Arch. And so there is: but yet the King hath drawn
The special head of all the land together:
The Prince of Wales, Lord John of Lancaster,
The noble Westmoreland, and warlike Blunt, 30
And many mo corrivals and dear men
Of estimation and command in arms.

Sir M. Doubt not, my lord, they shall be well oppos'd.

Arch. I hope no less, yet needful 'tis to fear;
And to prevent the worst, Sir Michael, speed. 35
For if Lord Percy thrive not, ere the King
Dismiss his power he means to visit us,
For he hath heard of our confederacy,
And 'tis but wisdom to make strong against him:
Therefore make haste—I must go write again 40
To other friends; and so, farewell, Sir Michael. *Exeunt.*

25-6.] *As Qq*; And . . . Worcester, / And . . . Warriors, / Noble Gentlemen. / *F.*
33. they] *Qq1-3*; he *Qq4,5,F.* 36. not,] *Qq2,3,F*; not *Qq1,4,5.* 38. our]
Qq1-3,5,F; out *Q4.*

31. *mo*] more. "Mo" generally =
more in number, while "more" =
more in quantity; cf. North's *Plutarch*,
Fabius Maximus (Tudor Trans., II. 60)
—"the one chaunced to have moe
prisoners than the other . . . Hannibal
had . . . of Romaine prisoners, two
hundred and fortie moe, then Fabius
had".

corrivals] partners, associates; cf.

"Without corral" at I. iii. 205.
dear] noble, honourable; as in *Troil.*,
v. iii. 27-8—"the dear man / Holds
honour far more precious-dear than
life".

38. *our confederacy*] our combining
against him. The chief, and very real,
interest of this otherwise unremarkable
scene is in its foreshadowing of further
trouble after Shrewsbury.

[ACT V]

[SCENE I.—*Shrewsbury. The King's Camp.*]

Enter the KING, PRINCE OF WALES, LORD JOHN OF LANCASTER,
SIR WALTER BLUNT, FALSTAFF.

King. How bloodily the sun begins to peer
Above yon bulky hill! The day looks pale
At his distemp'rature.

Prince. The southern wind
Doth play the trumpet to his purposes,
And by his hollow whistling in the leaves
Foretells a tempest and a blust'ring day.

5

King. Then with the losers let it sympathise,
For nothing can seem foul to those that win.

The trumpet sounds.

Enter WORCESTER [*and* VERNON.]

ACT V

Scene 1

ACT V SCENE I.] *F* (*Actus Quintus. Scena Prima.*); not in *Qq*. Location.] *Capell* (*subst.*). S.D. Lancaster, Sir] *Hanmer*; Lancaster, Earle of Westmerland, Sir | *QqF*. *Blunt*,] *Q1*; *Blunt*, and | *Qq2-5,F*. 2. bulky] *Q1*; busky *Qq2-5,F*. 5. by his] *Qq1,2,F*; by the *Q3*; by *Qq4,5*. 8. S.D. and *Vernon*] *Theobald* (*and* Sir Richard *Vernon*), *Capell*; not in *QqF*.

2. bulky] All previous edd. have followed *Qq2-5,F*'s "busky". But *Q1* certainly (though faintly) reads "bulky", and though "busky" would connect poetically with the "whistling in the leaves" (l. 5) "bulky" has its own atmospheric quality. Elizabethan maps (e.g. Christopher Saxton's, of Shropshire, 1577) show a hump-like mound for "Wrekin hill" for which "bulky" would be a most suitable epithet, and if Shakespeare examined such a map the word might leap to his mind. Shaaber (*MLN*, 1939, lix. 276-8) argues that Shakespeare uses "bulk"

often enough (cf. l. 62, below), sometimes for "a thing of great size looming up before the speaker", and that as a neologism (*OED*'s earliest citation is in 1672) "bulky" would have "none of those prosaic connotations which it has for us". Nashe refers to a "gorbellied Volume" as "bigger bulked than a Dutch Hoy" (*Haue with You*; McKerrow, iii. 35); and for "bulk" as the swelling of a ship's hull Cotgrave gives "vaisseau d'un navire. *The bulke, bellie, or bodie of a ship*". The idea is of swelling magnitude.

3. *distemp'rature*] Cf. iii. i. 31, note.

How now, my Lord of Worcester! 'Tis not well
 That you and I should meet upon such terms 10
 As now we meet. You have deceiv'd our trust,
 And made us doff our easy robes of peace
 To crush our old limbs in ungentle steel:
 This is not well, my lord, this is not well.
 What say you to it? Will you again unknit 15
 This churlish knot of all-aborred war,
 And move in that obedient orb again
 Where you did give a fair and natural light,
 And be no more an exhal'd meteor,
 A prodigy of fear, and a portent 20
 Of broached mischief to the unborn times?

Wor. Hear me, my liege:

For mine own part I could be well content
 To entertain the lag end of my life
 With quiet hours. For I protest 25
 I have not sought the day of this dislike.

King. You have not sought it? How comes it, then?

Fal. Rebellion lay in his way, and he found it.

Prince. Peace, chewet, peace!

Wor. It pleas'd your Majesty to turn your looks 30
 Of favour from myself, and all our house,
 And yet I must remember you, my lord,
 We were the first and dearest of your friends;
 For you my staff of office did I break

9. How] *Var.* 1778; *King.* Now *QqF.* 25. I] *Qq;* I do *F.*

13. *our old limbs*] Henry was about 36, but the whole conception here is of an elderly and careworn ruler.

17. *obedient orb*] proper sphere of obedience. In the Ptolemaic cosmology the stars revolve in fixed orbs. The analogy between celestial and social order is an Elizabethan axiom.

19. *exhal'd*] (a) drawn up of vapours (cf. l. i. 11, note); (b) dragged from the orderly course proper to celestial bodies.

25. *I protest*] It is tempting to read *F*'s "I do protest", but the metre is

often irregular; cf. l. 27. If a word has dropped out, there is no certainty that *F*'s is the right correction.

29. *chewet*] A quibble; (a) chough, jackdaw (= chatterer); (b) minced-meat pie (*OED*, "A dish . . . of meat or fish, chopped fine").

33. *We . . . friends*] For the Percys' early support, cf. iv. iii. 54, note.

34-5. *For you . . . time*] "Sir Thomas Persie, earle of Worcester . . . brake his white staffe, which is the representing signe and token of his office, and without delaie went to duke Henrie" (Hol., ii. 855). Shakespeare follows this in

In Richard's time, and posted day and night 35
 To meet you on the way, and kiss your hand,
 When yet you were in place and in account
 Nothing so strong and fortunate as I.
 It was myself, my brother, and his son,
 That brought you home, and boldly did outdare 40
 The dangers of the time. You swore to us,
 And you did swear that oath at Doncaster,
 That you did nothing purpose 'gainst the state,
 Nor claim no further than your new-fall'n right,
 The seat of Gaunt, dukedom of Lancaster. 45
 To this we swore our aid: but in short space
 It rain'd down fortune show'ring on your head,
 And such a flood of greatness fell on you,
 What with our help, what with the absent King,
 What with the injuries of a wanton time, 50
 The seeming sufferances that you had borne,
 And the contrarious winds that held the King
 So long in his unlucky Irish wars
 That all in England did repute him dead:
 And from this swarm of fair advantages 55
 You took occasion to be quickly woo'd
 To gripe the general sway into your hand,
 Forgot your oath to us at Doncaster,
 And being fed by us, you us'd us so
 As that ungentle gull the cuckoo's bird 60
 Useth the sparrow—did oppress our nest,
 Grew by our feeding to so great a bulk
 That even our love durst not come near your sight
 For fear of swallowing; but with nimble wing

40. outdare] *Q1, F*; outdate *Qq2-5*. 41. dangers] *Qq1-4*; danger *Q5, F*.
 43. purpose] *Qq1-4*; of purpose *Q5, F*. 46. swore] *Qq1-4*; swear *Q5*; sware
F. 50. of a] *Qq1-4*; of *Q5, F*. 53. his] *Qq1-4*; the *Q5, F*. 56. woo'd] *F*;
 wooed *Qq*.

R2—"the Earl of Worcester / Hath broke his staff" (II. ii. 58-9), and "He hath forsook the court, / Broken his staff of office" (II. iii. 26-7).

41. *You swore to us*] Cf. IV. iii. 54 ff., note.

44. *new-fall'n*] i.e. newly fallen due to you.

60. *gull . . . bird*] nestling. *OED*, "gull. *sb.*^a Now dial. . . . An unfledged bird . . ." (quoting this passage), and also "*bird orig.* . . . a young bird . . . a nestling. The only sense in *OE*; found in literature down to 1600". Cf. *3H6*, II. i. 91—"that princely eagle's bird".

We were enforc'd for safety sake to fly 65
 Out of your sight, and raise this present head,
 Whereby we stand opposed by such means
 As you yourself have forg'd against yourself,
 By unkind usage, dangerous countenance,
 And violation of all faith and troth 70
 Sworn to us in your younger enterprise.

King. These things indeed you have articulate,
 Proclaim'd at market crosses, read in churches,
 To face the garment of rebellion
 With some fine colour that may please the eye 75
 Of fickle changelings and poor discontents,
 Which gape and rub the elbow at the news
 Of hurlyburly innovation;
 And never yet did insurrection want
 Such water-colours to impaint his cause, 80
 Nor moody beggars starving for a time
 Of pellmell havoc and confusion.

Prince. In both your armies there is many a soul
 Shall pay full dearly for this encounter
 If once they join in trial. Tell your nephew, 85
 The Prince of Wales doth join with all the world
 In praise of Henry Percy: by my hopes,
 This present enterprise set off his head,

71. in your] *Qq*; in *F*. 72. articulate] *Qq*; articulated *F*. 73. Proclaim'd]
Q1, F; Proclaimed *Qq* 2-5. 83. your] *Qq*; our *F*.

69. *dangerous countenance*] threatening demeanour.

74. *face*] trim with ornament.

75. *colour*] A quibble on the literal and metaphorical (= a specious excuse) senses. "Colour is when men make a way for themselves to have a construction made of their faults or wants, as proceeding from a better cause" (Bacon, *Adv. of Learning*, xxiii. 32; *Works*, ed. Spedding & Ellis, iii. 464).

77. *rub the elbow*] hug themselves (with pleasure), arms crossed and hands on elbows. Joy supposedly made the elbows itch; cf. Nashe, *Unfortunate Traveller* (McKerrow, ii. 321)—"My

hart hopt and danst, my elbowes itcht . . . I wist not . . . what I did for joy"; and *LLL.*, v. ii. 109-10—"One rubb'd his elbow thus, and fleer'd, and swore / A better speech was never spoke before".

78. *innovation*] disturbance of the accepted order, commotion. In *Sir Thomas More*, II. iv. 114-15, More calls on the rioters to "perceau howe horrible a shape / Your ynnouation beres".

80. *water-colours*] "colours" (cf. l. 75, note) hastily applied and not lasting.

81. *moody*] sullen, angry.

88. *set off his head*] not being counted against him.

I do not think a braver gentleman,
 More active-valiant or more valiant-young, 90
 More daring or more bold, is now alive
 To grace this latter age with noble deeds.
 For my part, I may speak it to my shame,
 I have a truant been to chivalry,
 And so I hear he doth account me too; 95
 Yet this before my father's majesty—
 I am content that he shall take the odds
 Of his great name and estimation,
 And will, to save the blood on either side,
 Try fortune with him in a single fight. 100

King. And, Prince of Wales, so dare we venture thee,
 Albeit, considerations infinite
 Do make against it: no, good Worcester, no,
 We love our people well, even those we love
 That are misled upon your cousin's part, 105
 And will they take the offer of our grace,
 Both he, and they, and you, yea, every man
 Shall be my friend again, and I'll be his:
 So tell your cousin, and bring me word
 What he will do. But if he will not yield, 110
 Rebuke and dread correction wait on us,
 And they shall do their office. So, be gone;
 We will not now be troubled with reply:
 We offer fair, take it advisedly.

Exit Worcester [with *Vernon*].

Prince. It will not be accepted, on my life; 115
 The Douglas and the Hotspur both together
 Are confident against the world in arms.

King. Hence, therefore, every leader to his charge;
 For on their answer will we set on them,

90. active-valiant] *Theobald*; actiue, valiant *Qq1,2,F*; actiue, more valiant *Qq3-5*. valiant-young] *Theobald*; valiant yong *QqF* (*subst.*). 100. in a] *Q1,F*; in *Qq2-5*. 114. S.D. with *Vernon*] *Theobald*; not in *QqF*.

90. active- . . . -young] In Sidney's *Astrophel and Stella*, sonnet lxxv, Edward IV is "young-wise, wise-valiant". Shakespeare may be echoing this.

100. single fight] There is no chronicle-precedent for this challenge.

102. *Albeit*] Yet on the other hand.

105. *cousin's*] The frequent extended use of the word; here = nephew's.

And God befriend us as our cause is just! 120

Exeunt [all but the] Prince [and] Falstaff.

Fal. Hal, if thou see me down in the battle and bestride me, so; 'tis a point of friendship.

Prince. Nothing but a Colossus can do thee that friendship. Say thy prayers, and farewell.

Fal. I would 'twere bed-time, Hal, and all well. 125

Prince. Why, thou owest God a death. [*Exit.*]

Fal. 'Tis not due yet, I would be loath to pay him before his day—what need I be so forward with him that calls not on me? Well, 'tis no matter, honour pricks me on. Yea, but how if honour prick me off when I come on, how then? Can honour set to a leg? No. Or an arm? No. Or take away the grief of a wound? No. Honour hath no skill in surgery then? No. What is honour? A word. What is in that word 130

120. S.D. *all but the] Cambr.; manent / Qq; Manet / F. and] F; not in Qq. 121-4.] As Pope (prose); Hal... battel / And... friendship. / Nothing... friendship, / Say... farewell. / QqF, subst. (verse). 125. 'twere] Q1; it were Qq2-5, F. 126. God] Qq; heauen F. 126. S.D.] *Hammer; not in QqF. 130. Yea, but] Qq; But F. 131. then? Can] Qq2,3, F; then can Qq1,4,5. 134-5. in... that honour?] Qq1,3; in that word? honor: what is that honour? Q2; that word honor? what is that honor? Q4; that word Honour? Q5, F.**

126. *thou owest... death]* Proverbial: Tilley, G237. For the "debt-death" quibble cf. i. iii. 183-4, note, and Feeble's "We owe God a death" (2H4, III. ii. 254).

127-8. *to pay... day]* Tilley, T290, illustrates the proverb, "He does not desire to die before his time".

129 ff. *Well...]* For a probable source, see Intro., p. xxxviii. The sentiment may echo Palingenius' *Zodiacus Vitae*, read in Elizabethan schools; "Fama quid est, si nil delectat fama sepultos? / Quid lapis, aut stipes, laudum praeconia curant? / Si non laetaris vivens, laetabere nunquam" (ed. 1574, 52), translated by Barnabe Googe as "Thou nothing art, for what is fame, / yf it doe nought delight? / The corps in graue, what doth y^e stone / or stocke reioice in prayes? / If here thou has not them, thou shalt / haue neuer happy dayes": cf. T. W.

Baldwin, Wm. *Sh.'s Small Latine & Lesse Greeke*, 1944, i. 678.

129, 130. *pricks, prick]* spur(s), quibbling on "pricks" as "marks down for death"; cf. *Cæs.*, IV. i. 1—"These many then shall die; their names are prick'd". G. B. Harrison ('Sh.'s Topical Significances', in *Sh. Criticism 1919-1935*, ed. Ridler) points out an echo of this in a letter of Tobie Matthew to Dudley Carleton on 20 Sept. 1598—"Sir Fras. Vere is coming towards the Low Countries, and Sir Alex. Ratcliffe and Sir Robt. Drury with him. Honour pricks them on, and the world thinks that honour will quickly prick them off again" (*Calender of State Papers, Domestic Series, Elizabeth, 1598-1601*, 97). For other *Fal.* jokes cf. Intro., p. xii.

131. *set to a leg]* set a broken leg, or, perhaps, re-join one lopped off.

132. *grief]* pain, as in i. iii. 50.

honour? What is that honour? Air. A trim reckon- 135
 ing! Who hath it? He that died a-Wednesday.
 Doth he feel it? No. Doth he hear it? No. 'Tis in-
 sensible, then? Yea, to the dead. But will it not live
 with the living? No. Why? Detraction will not suf-
 fer it. Therefore I'll none of it. Honour is a mere 140
 scutcheon—and so ends my catechism. *Exit.*

[SCENE II.—*Shrewsbury. The Rebel Camp.*]

Enter WORCESTER [*and*] SIR RICHARD VERNON.

Wor. O no, my nephew must not know, Sir Richard,
 The liberal and kind offer of the King.

Ver. 'Twere best he did.

Wor. Then are we all undone.

It is not possible, it cannot be,
 The King should keep his word in loving us; 5
 He will suspect us still, and find a time
 To punish this offence in other faults:
 Supposition all our lives shall be stuck full of eyes,

137. 'Tis] *Qq*; Is it *F*. 138. will it] *Qq2-5, F*; wil *Q1*.

Scene II

SCENE II.] *F* (*Scena Secunda.*); not in *Qq*. Location.] *Malone* (*subst.*). S.D.
and] *Qq2-5, F*; not in *Q1*. 2. and kind] *Q1*; kinde *Qq2-5, F*. 3. are we] *Qq*;
 we are *F*. undone] *Q5, F*; vnder one *Qq1-4*. 5. should] *Qq1-3*; would
Qq4, 5, F. 7. other] *Qq1-4*; others *Q5, F*.

141. *scutcheon*] funeral hatchment. Scutcheons were the lowest form of heraldic ensign allotted for funerals. They were of metal, silk, buckram, or paper, and were hung in churches.

Scene II

1-2. *O no . . . King*] For Worcester's misrepresentation see App. III, p. 174. To Hol.'s account Shakespeare adds a plausible reason (l. 3 ff.).

8. *Supposition*] Rowe and most edd. emend to "Suspicion". But nothing is gained; either word suits the sense,

and the metre is not improved since "supp'sition" is no longer than "suspicion". Allegorical figures of rumour and ill report were common; e.g. Spenser's *Envy* (*F.Q.*, i. iv. 31) is "ypainted full of eyes", and Dekker's *King's Entertainment*, 1604 (Bowers, ii. 276), introduces Fame as "A Woman in a Watchet Roabe, thickly set with open Eyes, and Tongues". The image may be traced to Virgil's *Fama*—"cui, quot sunt corpore plumae / tot vigiles oculi subter (mirabile dictu), / tot linguae, totidem ora sonant, tot

For treason is but trusted like the fox,
 Who, never so tame, so cherish'd and lock'd up, 10
 Will have a wild trick of his ancestors.
 Look how we can, or sad or merrily,
 Interpretation will misquote our looks,
 And we shall feed like oxen at a stall,
 The better cherish'd still the nearer death. 15
 My nephew's trespass may be well forgot,
 It hath the excuse of youth and heat of blood,
 And an adopted name of privilege—
 A hare-brain'd Hotspur, govern'd by a spleen:
 All his offences live upon my head 20
 And on his father's. We did train him on,
 And, his corruption being ta'en from us,
 We as the spring of all shall pay for all:
 Therefore, good cousin, let not Harry know
 In any case the offer of the King. 25
Ver. Deliver what you will; I'll say 'tis so.
 Here comes your cousin.

Enter HOTSPUR [*and* DOUGLAS].

Hot. My uncle is return'd;
 Deliver up my Lord of Westmoreland.
 Uncle, what news?
Wor. The King will bid you battle presently. 30
Doug. Defy him by the Lord of Westmoreland.

10. never so] *Qq*; ne're so *F*. 12. we] *Qq*1-3; he *Qq*4,5,*F*. merrily] *Q*1 (merely), *Qq*2,4 (merily), *Qq*3,5,*F*. 22. being] *Qq*1-3,*F*; beene *Q*4; benign *Q*5. 26-7.] *As F*; Deliuier . . . coosen. / My . . . returnd, / *Qq*. 27. your] *Qq*1-4,*F*; you *Q*5. 27. S.D. *Enter Hotspur* *F*; *Enter Percy* / *Q*1 (*opposite l.* 25); *Enter Hotspur* / *Qq*2-5 (*opposite l.* 25). and Douglas] *Rowe*; not in *QqF*. 29. news] *Qq*; newe—*F*.

subrigit aures" (*Aen.*, iv. 181-3).

11. *trick*] trait; cf. Beau. & Fl., *Maid in the Mill*, iii. i (*Works*, vii. 36)—
 "In you a wildness is a noble trick".

18. *an adopted . . . privilege*] a nickname which privileges him to be rash.

19. *govern'd . . . spleen*] Cf. ii. iii. 79, note.

20. *live*] = "are living and active"; nearly synonymous with "lie" (cf. i. ii.

185, collation), but with an extra degree of vitality.

22. *ta'en*] caught, as an infection.

28. *Deliver . . . Westmoreland*] This is the first mention of Westmoreland's being the "surety" of iv. iii. 109 but we need not, with Wilson (N.C.S.), suspect revision. The intention was in Shakespeare's mind; the detail of the name was overlooked.

Hot. Lord Douglas, go you and tell him so.

Doug. Marry, and shall, and very willingly.

Exit.

Wor. There is no seeming mercy in the King.

Hot. Did you beg any? God forbid!

35

Wor. I told him gently of our grievances,

Of his oath-breaking; which he mended thus,

By now forswearing that he is forsworn:

He calls us rebels, traitors, and will scourge

With haughty arms this hateful name in us.

40

[*Re-*]enter DOUGLAS.

Doug. Arm, gentlemen, to arms! for I have thrown

A brave defiance in King Henry's teeth,

And Westmoreland that was engag'd did bear it,

Which cannot choose but bring him quickly on.

Wor. The Prince of Wales stepp'd forth before the King, 45

And, nephew, challeng'd you to single fight.

Hot. O, would the quarrel lay upon our heads,

And that no man might draw short breath today

But I and Harry Monmouth! Tell me, tell me,

How show'd his tasking? Seem'd it in contempt? 50

Ver. No, by my soul, I never in my life

Did hear a challenge urg'd more modestly,

Unless a brother should a brother dare

To gentle exercise and proof of arms.

He gave you all the duties of a man,

55

Trimm'd up your praises with a princely tongue,

Spoke your deservings like a chronicle,

Making you ever better than his praise

By still dispraising praise valu'd with you,

33. S.D.] *QqF* (*Exit Dou.* [*subst.*]), *Capell.* 40. S.D. *Re-enter*] *QqF* (*Enter*),
Capell. 50. show'd] *Qq3-5,F*; shewed *Qq1,2.* tasking] *Q1*; talking
Qq2-5,F. 59. valu'd] *F* (*valew'd*); valued *Qq.*

32. *Douglas*] Sometimes trisyllab-
 ic.

34. *seeming*] semblance of.

38. *forswearing*] denying with a false
 oath.

43. *engag'd*] held as hostage.

50. *tasking*] challenging.

55. *all . . . man*] all that is due from

one man to another; cf. *Ham.*, i. ii. 88
 —“To give these mourning duties
 [= dues of mourning] to your fath-
 er”.

56. *Trimm'd up*] “To Trimme up a
 Thing, to make it seeme fairer”
 (*Minsheu*).

59. *dispraising . . . you*] disparaging

And, which became him like a prince indeed, 60
 He made a blushing cital of himself,
 And chid his truant youth with such a grace
 As if he master'd there a double spirit
 Of teaching and of learning instantly.
 There did he pause: but let me tell the world— 65
 If he outlive the envy of this day,
 England did never owe so sweet a hope
 So much misconstru'd in his wantonness.

Hot. Cousin, I think thou art enamoured
 On his follies: never did I hear 70
 Of any prince so wild a liberty.
 But be he as he will, yet once ere night
 I will embrace him with a soldier's arm,
 That he shall shrink under my courtesy.
 Arm, arm with speed! And fellows, soldiers, friends, 75
 Better consider what you have to do
 Than I that have not well the gift of tongue
 Can lift your blood up with persuasion.

Enter a Messenger.

Mess. My lord, here are letters for you.
Hot. I cannot read them now. 80
 O gentlemen, the time of life is short!

68. misconstru'd] *Capell*; misconstrued *QqF* (*subst.*). 70. On] *QqF*; Upon *Pope*. 71. a liberty] *Qq1-4* (a libertie); at libertie *Q5,F* (*subst.*); a libertine *Capell*. 75. fellows] *Qq1-4*; fellow's *Q5,F*. 77. Than] *Qq1,2* (Then); That *Qq3-5,F*.

praise since it could not come up to your merits. This is, as Johnson notes, an extravagant version of what Hal said (v. i. 86-92), but no duplicity on Vernon's part is intended. Shakespeare makes the most of his occasions and gives the high generous spirit of the Prince's tribute.

61. *made . . . himself*] Either (a) spoke modestly of himself, or (b) called himself blushing to account.

64. *instantly*] simultaneously.

66. *envy*] ill-will.

67. *owe*] own.

71. *liberty*] reckless freedom, as in the phrase "taking liberties with". "Never did I hear so wild a liberty reported of any prince" (Grant White). *Capell's* "libertine" is plausible (Shakespeare may have written libertie) but unnecessary.

76-8. *Better . . . persuasion*] Though the impetuous Hotspur telescopes two constructions his sense is clear: (a) You can better consider . . . than I can persuade you; (b) Consider . . . for I cannot lift your blood up with persuasion.

To spend that shortness basely were too long
 If life did ride upon a dial's point,
 Still ending at the arrival of an hour.
 And if we live, we live to tread on kings,
 If die, brave death when princes die with us!
 Now, for our consciences, the arms are fair
 When the intent of bearing them is just.

85

Enter another [Messenger].

Mess. My lord, prepare, the King comes on apace.

Hot. I thank him that he cuts me from my tale,

90

For I profess not talking: only this—

Let each man do his best; and here draw I

A sword whose temper I intend to stain

With the best blood that I can meet withal

In the adventure of this perilous day.

95

Now, Esperance! Percy! and set on,

Sound all the lofty instruments of war,

And by that music let us all embrace,

For, heaven to earth, some of us never shall

A second time do such a courtesy.

100

Here they embrace, the trumpets sound, [exeunt.]

87. are] *Qq1-4*; is *Q5,F.* 88. of] *Qq1-4*; for *Q5,F.* 88. S.D. *Messenger*] *F*; not in *Qq.* 91. talking:] *F*; talking *Q1*; talking, *Qq2-5.* 92-3.] *As Pope*; Let . . . sword, / Whose . . . staine / *QqF.* 92. draw I] *Qq*; I draw *F.* 93. whose] *Qq*; Whose worthy *F.* 100. S.D. *Here*] *Qq*; not in *F.* *exeunt.*] *Rowe*; not in *QqF.*

82-4. *To spend . . . hour*] If life were a mere hour long, it would be too long if spent basely.

96. *Esperance! Percy!*] Cf. II. iii. 72,

note, and App. III, p. 175. The final "e" in "Esperance" is sounded.

99. *heaven to earth*] the odds are as heaven is to earth.

[SCENE III.—*Shrewsbury. The Field of Battle.*]

The KING enters with his power. Alarum to the battle. Then enter DOUGLAS, and SIR WALTER BLUNT [*disguised as the King*].

Blunt. What is thy name that in the battle thus
Thou crossest me? What honour dost thou seek
Upon my head?

Doug. Know then my name is Douglas,
And I do haunt thee in the battle thus
Because some tell me that thou art a king. 5

Blunt. They tell thee true.

Doug. The Lord of Stafford dear today hath bought
Thy likeness, for instead of thee, King Harry,
This sword hath ended him: so shall it thee
Unless thou yield thee as my prisoner. 10

Blunt. I was not born a yielder, thou proud Scot,
And thou shalt find a king that will revenge
Lord Stafford's death. *They fight. Douglas kills Blunt.*

Then enter HOTSPUR.

Hot. O Douglas, hadst thou fought at Holmedon thus

Scene III

SCENE III.] *Capell; not in QqF. Location.] This edn; Plain near Shrewsbury. / Var. 1778. S.D. disguised as the King] Wilson (N.C.S.); not in QqF. 1-3.] As Hanmer; What . . . me, / What . . . head? / Know . . . Douglas, / QqF (subst.). 1. the] T. Johnson, Hanmer; not in QqF. 10. my] Qq1-4; a Q5,F. 11. a yielder, thou proud] Qq1-4 (Q1 a yeelder thou proud); to yeeld, thou proud Q5; to yeeld, thou haughty F. Scot] Qq1-4,F; Sot Q5. 13. Lord] Qq; Lords F. 13. S.D.] Qq (subst.); Fight, Blunt is slaine, then enters Hotspur. / F.*

S.D.] QqF envisage no break here other than that of the departure of Hotspur's army and the entry of the King's; this S.D. is continuous with that at the end of v. ii, and the action continues too. The break, first made by Capell, is retained for convenience of scene- and line-reference, but should be ignored from every other point of view. The locality is purely general.

1. *the*] QqF omit, but in l. 4 Douglas uses it in echoing Blunt's words.

7-8. *The Lord . . . likeness*] Hol. does not say that Stafford was one of the

decoys, but he does say in one paragraph that Blunt and Stafford were killed while defending the King's standard (iii. 26), and in the next that Douglas struck the King down and killed Blunt and three others "apparelled in the kings sute", so Stafford might well appear to be dressed like the King. There were in fact two Blunts (cf. 2H4, i. i. 16-17—"both the Blunts / Kill'd by the hand of Douglas"), but Hol. at this point is not clear, though Daniel is (C.W., iii. 112).

I never had triumph'd upon a Scot.

15

Doug. All's done, all's won: here breathless lies the King.

Hot. Where?

Doug. Here.

Hot. This, Douglas? No, I know this face full well,

A gallant knight he was, his name was Blunt,

20

Semblably furnish'd like the King himself.

Doug. A fool go with thy soul, whither it goes!

A borrow'd title hast thou bought too dear.

Why didst thou tell me that thou wert a king?

Hot. The King hath many marching in his coats;

25

Doug. Now, by my sword, I will kill all his coats;

I'll murder all his wardrobe, piece by piece,

Until I meet the King.

Hot.

Up and away!

Our soldiers stand full fairly for the day.

[*Exeunt.*]

Alarum. Enter FALSTAFF solus.

Fal. Though I could scape shot-free at London, I fear 30

the shot here, here's no scoring but upon the

pate. Soft! who are you? Sir Walter Blunt—there's

honour for you! Here's no vanity! I am as hot as

molten lead, and as heavy too: God keep lead out of

me, I need no more weight than mine own bowels. 35

15. triumph'd upon] *Qq* 1,2; triumpht ouer *Qq* 3-5; triumphed o're *F.* 16.

won: here] *Qq* 2,3; won here, *Q* 1; won, here *Qq* 4,5, *F.* 22. A fool go] *Capell*;

Ah foole, goe *Qq*; Ah foole: go *F.* 23. borrow'd] *Rowe*; borrowed *Qq* *F.*

29. S.D. *Exeunt.*] *F*; not in *Qq.* Enter] *Qq*; and enter | *F.* 34. God] *Qq*;

heauen *F.*

22. *A fool go with*] = "May the stigma 'A fool' stick to"; *Capell*'s emendation. The formula was quasi-proverbial; cf. Thomas Heywood, *Rape of Lucrece* (Shepherd, v. 229)—"Get thee to thy Tent and a coward goe with thee"; and Whetstone, *Promos and Cassandra*, 1578, II. iv. 15—"Goe and a knaue with thee".

25. *coats*] the "sleeveless surcoat with heraldic bearings" (Wright).

29. *stand . . . day*] are in a fair way for victory.

30. *shot-free*] A quibble: (a) un-

wounded; (b) without paying the "shot", or reckoning. In Dekker, *Satiro-Mastix*, v. ii. 329 (Bowers, i. 383), Sir Vaughan makes Horace (Ben Jonson) "swear . . . [never] at Table to fling Epigrams, Embleames, or Play-speeches about you (lyke Haylestones) to keepe you out of the terrible daunger of the Shot".

31. *scoring*] Another quibble: (a) notching; (b) charging the reckoning.

33. *no vanity*] Ironical; "if this isn't futility, what is?"

I have led my ragamuffins where they are peppered;
there's not three of my hundred and fifty left alive,
and they are for the town's end, to beg during life.
But who comes here?

Enter the PRINCE.

- Prince.* What, stands thou idle here? Lend me thy sword: 40
Many a nobleman lies stark and stiff
Under the hoofs of vaunting enemies,
whose deaths are yet unrevenged. I prithee lend me
thy sword.
- Fal.* O Hal, I prithee give me leave to breathe awhile— 45
Turk Gregory never did such deeds in arms as I have

36. ragamuffins] *Capell*; rag of Muffins *QqF*. 37. hundred and fifty] *QqF* (150.), *Dering MS*, *Rowe*. 38. they are] *Qq*; they *F*. 40. stands] *Q1*; standst *Qq2-5, F* (*subst.*). 41. nobleman] *F*; noble man *Qq*. lies] *Qq*; likes *F*. 43. are yet] *Qq*; are *F*. I prithee] *Qq*; Prethy *F*.

36. *I have led . . . peppered*] Shakespeare would surely have been surprised to find "led" interpreted, as it sometimes is, as proof of Fal.'s valour. Thomas Digges, *Four Paradoxes*, 1604, 51, describes captains "leading their men euen to the place of Butcherie, and then to take their leaue (vnder pretence to fetch supplies)", and Thomas Powell, *Tom of all Trades*, 1631 (ed. Furnivall, 170), says that "the land Captaine vseth but to offer his men to the face of the enemy, and than retreateth". Fal.'s motive is indicated in Sir John Smythe's *Certain Discourses Militarie*, 1590 (sig. 3)—"The new discipline of some of our men of warre in the Lowe Countries, hath been, to send, and employe their soldiers into manie daungerous . . . exploits and seruices . . . hauing sure regard to their owne safeties; as though they desired and hoped to haue more gaine and profite by the dead paies of their soldiers slaine".

37. *not*] *Capell* conjectured "but"; but cf. iv. ii. 42, note.

40. *stands*] Verbs ending in dentals often had this second-person-singular form; cf. Jespersen, *Mod. Engl. Gram-*

mar, vi. 2.4, 2.51: e.g. "chide thee who confounds . . ." (sonnet viii. 7), "thou . . . Reuisits thus . . ." (*Ham.*, F, I. iv. 53), "Thou refts me of my Lands" (*Cym.*, F, III. iii. 103); and cf. I. 51.

43-55.] These lines, a mixture of prosy verse and versy prose, are given as in *Q1*.

46. *Turk Gregory*] "TURK, any cruel hard-hearted Man" (Bailey). For Gregory two candidates are proposed: (a) Hildebrand, who, as Gregory VII, succeeded Pope Alexander in 1035, and whom Protestant writers cited as a by-word for violence; e.g. *Martin Marprelate, the Epistle*, 1588 (ed. Arber, 22) —"But looke to it brother Canterburie certainly without your repentance I feare me you shalbe Hildebrand in deed", with the marginal gloss "A fyrebrand in deede". Foxe tells how, infuriated with Pope Alexander, "he was stroken in suche a fury, that scharsly he could kepe his hāds of him, while mas was don[.] After the mas being finished, by force of souldiers and strength of men, he had him into a chamber, there all to bepomild Pope Alexander with his fistes" (*Actes & Monuments*, 1563, 14); (b) "Gregory

done this day; I have paid Percy, I have made him sure.

Prince. He is indeed, and living to kill thee:

I prithee lend me thy sword.

50

Fal. Nay, before God, Hal, if Percy be alive thou gets not my sword, but take my pistol if thou wilt.

Prince. Give it me: what, is it in the case?

Fal. Ay, Hal, 'tis hot, 'tis hot; there's that will sack a city.

The Prince draws it out, and finds it to be a bottle of sack.

Prince. What, is it a time to jest and dally now?

55

He throws the bottle at him. Exit.

Fal. Well, if Percy be alive, I'll pierce him. If he do come in my way, so: if he do not, if I come in his willingly, let him make a carbonado of me. I like not such grinning honour as Sir Walter hath. Give me life, which if I can save, so: if not, honour comes unlooked 60 for, and there's an end. [Exit.]

51. before God] *Qq*; not in *F.* gets] *Q1*; getst *Qq2-5, F.* 54. 'tis hot, 'tis hot] *Qq1-4*; tis hot *Q5, F.* 54. S.D.] *Qq* (*The . . . finds it a . . . sack.* / *Q5*); *The Prince draws out a Bottle of Sack.* / *F.* 55. S.D.] *Qq*; *Exit. Throwes it at him.* / *F.* 56. Well, if] *Qq1-4*; If *Q5, F.* 61. S.D.] *F*; not in *Qq*.

XIII (1572-85), inveterate foe of England, who blessed if he did not instigate the Massacre of St. Bartholomew, and promised plenary indulgence to anyone who would murder Elizabeth" (Wilson, N.C.S.). In 1579 "he was figuring with Nero and the Grand Turk as one of 'The Three Tyrants of the World' in coloured prints sold on the streets of London" (ibid.). The conjunction here with the Turk is striking.

47. *paid*] killed.

51. *gets*] Cf. l. 40, note.

53-4. *what . . . hot*] "It should have been primed for instant use, and not in

the holster. *Fal.* pretends he has put it up to cool after much firing" (Wilson, N.C.S.).

56. *pierce*] Pronounced "perse". Nashe makes the Devil address Pierce Penilesse as "Persie" (McKerrow, i. 219, 226). Capgrave, *Chron. of Engl. (Book of the Illustrious Henries*, ed. F. C. Hingeston, 1858, 119, fn), has "Herri Percy, aftir the propirte of his name, percid, or presed, in so fer that he was ded".

58. *make . . . me*] i.e. "slash me all over and grill me", a carbonado being "meat scored across and broiled" (Onions).

[SCENE IV.—*The Same.*]

Alarum. Excursions. Enter the KING, the PRINCE, LORD JOHN OF LANCASTER, EARL OF WESTMORELAND.

King. I prithee, Harry, withdraw thyself, thou bleed'st too much.

Lord John of Lancaster, go you with him.

Lan. Not I, my lord, unless I did bleed too.

Prince. I beseech your Majesty, make up,
Lest your retirement do amaze your friends. 5

King. I will do so. My Lord of Westmoreland,
Lead him to his tent.

West. Come, my lord, I'll lead you to your tent.

Prince. Lead me, my lord? I do not need your help,
And God forbid a shallow scratch should drive 10
The Prince of Wales from such a field as this,
Where stain'd nobility lies trodden on,
And rebels' arms triumph in massacres!

Lan. We breathe too long: come, cousin Westmoreland,
Our duty this way lies: for God's sake, come. 15
[*Exeunt Lancaster and Westmoreland.*]

Prince. By God, thou hast deceiv'd me, Lancaster,
I did not think thee lord of such a spirit:
Before, I lov'd thee as a brother, John,
But now I do respect thee as my soul.

King. I saw him hold Lord Percy at the point 20
With lustier maintenance than I did look for

Scene IV

SCENE IV.] *Capell; Scena Tertia.* / *F; not in Qq.* Location.] *This edn; Another part of the Field.* / *Var. 1778.* S.D. *Earl* / *Q1; and Earle* / *Qq2-5, F.* 1-2.] *As Q1;* I prithee, / Harry, . . . much. / Lord . . . him. / *Steevens; prose, Qq2-5, F.* 1. bleed'st] *Capell;* bleedest *QqF.* 5. Lest your] *Qq;* Least you *F.* 6-7.] *As Capell;* I . . . so: / My . . . Tent. / *F;* I . . . so. My . . . tent. / *Qq (one line).* 10. God] *Qq;* heauen *F.* 15. God's] *Qq;* heauens *F.* 15. S.D.] *Capell (subst.); not in QqF.* 16. God] *Qq;* heauen *F.*

1.] Almost all edd. since Steevens divide this line after "prithee", but this impairs its velocity.

4. *make up*] go to the front.

5. *amaze*] dismay; cf. Drayton, *Ballad of Agincourt*—"Though they

to one be ten / Be not amazed".

12. *stain'd*] Both literal ("bemired") and figurative ("disgraced"); cf. *Ant.*, III. iv. 26-7—"I'll raise the preparation of a war / Shall stain your brother".

Of such an ungrown warrior.

Prince.

O, this boy

Lends mettle to us all!

Exit.

[*Enter DOUGLAS.*]

Doug. Another king! They grow like Hydra's heads:

I am the Douglas, fatal to all those 25

That wear those colours on them. What art thou

That counterfeit'st the person of a king?

King. The King himself, who, Douglas, grieves at heart

So many of his shadows thou hast met,

And not the very King. I have two boys 30

Seek Percy and thyself about the field,

But seeing thou fall'st on me so luckily

I will assay thee, and defend thyself.

Doug. I fear thou art another counterfeit,

And yet, in faith, thou bearest thee like a king; 35

But mine I am sure thou art, whoe'er thou be,

And thus I win thee. *They fight, the King being in danger.*

[*Re-enter* PRINCE OF WALES.]

Prince. Hold up thy head, vile Scot, or thou art like

Never to hold it up again! The spirits

Of valiant Shirley, Stafford, Blunt are in my arms. 40

It is the Prince of Wales that threatens thee,

Who never promiseth but he means to pay.

They fight: Douglas flieth.

22-3.] *As Pope*; Of . . . warrior. / O . . . all. / *QqF.* 23. S.D. *Enter Douglas*] *F*; *not in Qq.* 33. thee, and] *Qq2-5*; thee and *Q1*; thee: so *F.* 35. bearest] *Qq1-5*; bear'st *F.* 37. S.D. *Re-enter*] *QqF* (*enter*), *Dyce.* *Prince of Wales*] *Qq*; *Prince* / *F.* 38. thy] *Qq*; *they F.*

24. *Hydra's heads*] The Hydra grew two heads for each one cut off. Shakespeare echoes Daniel; cf. i. i. 5-18, note.

33. *and*] "And" could connect an affirmation and a command; cf. iii. i. 185, and note.

38-40. *Hold up . . . arms*] Hol. describes the King's falling before Douglas, his rising again, and the

slaying of Hotspur in a general mêlée (App. III, pp. 175-6). Daniel credits the Prince with the King's rescue (*C.W.*, iii. 111) and with encountering Hotspur (*C.W.*, iii. 97). Shakespeare follows Daniel in this, and also in l. 40 echoes his praise of "Heroycall Courageous Blunt" (*C.W.*, iii. 111), "Magnanimous *Stafford*" and "valiant *Shirley*" (*C.W.*, iii. 113).

Cheerly, my lord, how fares your grace?
 Sir Nicholas Gawsey hath for succour sent,
 And so hath Clifton—I'll to Clifton straight.

45

King. Stay and breathe a while:

Thou hast redeem'd thy lost opinion,
 And show'd thou mak'st some tender of my life,
 In this fair rescue thou hast brought to me.

Prince. O God, they did me too much injury
 That ever said I hearken'd for your death.

50

If it were so, I might have let alone
 The insulting hand of Douglas over you,
 Which would have been as speedy in your end
 As all the poisonous potions in the world,
 And sav'd the treacherous labour of your son.

55

King. Make up to Clifton, I'll to Sir Nicholas Gawsey. *Exit.*

Enter HOTSPUR.

Hot. If I mistake not, thou art Harry Monmouth.

Prince. Thou speak'st as if I would deny my name.

Hot. My name is Harry Percy.

Prince. Why then I see

60

A very valiant rebel of the name.
 I am the Prince of Wales, and think not, Percy,
 To share with me in glory any more:
 Two stars keep not their motion in one sphere,
 Nor can one England brook a double reign
 Of Harry Percy and the Prince of Wales.

65

Hot. Nor shall it, Harry, for the hour is come

To end the one of us, and would to God

Thy name in arms were now as great as mine!

47. redeem'd] *Q5, F*; redeemed *Qq1-4*. 50. God] *Qq*; heauen *F*. 51.
 hearken'd] *Q1, F* (harkned [*subst.*]); harkened *Qq2-5*. for] *Qq1-3*; to
Qq4, 5, F. 57. Sir] *Qq* (*S.*), *F*. 57. S.D.] *Qq1-3* (*Exit Ki.*), *Q4* (*Exit K.*),
Q5, F. 60-1.] *As Rowe 3*; My . . . Percy. / Why . . . name; *QqF* (*subst.*).
 61. the] *Qq1, 2*; that *Qq3-5, F*. 67. Nor] *F*; Now *Qq*. 68. God] *Qq*;
 heauen *F*.

47. *opinion*] reputation.
 48. *mak'st some tender of*] hast some
 regard for.

53. *insulting*] exultantly triumphing.

64. *Two . . . sphere*] One star, one

sphere, was the Ptolemaic principle;
 cf. v. i. 17, note. Proverbial; Tilley,
 S992.

67. *Nor*] *F*. *Qq*'s "Now" is clearly
 wrong.

Prince. I'll make it greater ere I part from thee, 70
 And all the budding honours on thy crest
 I'll crop to make a garland for my head.
Hot. I can no longer brook thy vanities. *They fight.*

Enter FALSTAFF.

Fal. Well said, Hal! To it, Hal! Nay, you shall find no 75
 boy's play here, I can tell you.

[*Re-*]enter DOUGLAS; *he fighteth with Falstaff, [who] falls down as if he were dead. [Exit Douglas.] The Prince [mortally wounds Hotspur].*

Hot. O Harry, thou hast robb'd me of my youth!
 I better brook the loss of brittle life
 Than those proud titles thou hast won of me;
 They wound my thoughts worse than thy sword my
 flesh:
 But thoughts, the slaves of life, and life, time's fool, 80
 And time, that takes survey of all the world,
 Must have a stop. O, I could prophesy,
 But that the earthy and cold hand of death
 Lies on my tongue: no, Percy, thou art dust,
 And food for— *[Dies.]* 85

71. the] *Qq1-4, F*; thy *Q5*. 73. S.D.] *Qq*; *Fight.* / *F*. 75. S.D. *Re-enter*] *QqF*
 (*Enter*). *Dyce*. fighteth] *Qq1-4*; fights *Q5, F*. who] *F*; he | *Qq*. *Exit*
Douglas.] *Capell*; not in *QqF*. mortally . . . *Hotspur* This *edn*; killeth *Percy* | *QqF*
 (*subst.*); wounds *Hotspur* / *Hanmer*. 77. brook] *Qq1-4, F*; broke *Q5*. 79. thy]
Qq1-4; the *Q5, F*. 80. thoughts, the slaves] *Q1*; thought's the slaue *Qq2-5, F*.
 83. earthy] *Q1*; earth *Qq2-5, F*. and] *Qq*; and the *F*. 85. for—] *F*; for.
Qq1, 2; for *Qq3-5*. 85. S.D.] *Rowe*; not in *QqF*.

74. *Well said*] = "Well done". Often used even when nothing has been said; e.g. "*Tit*. Now, masters, draw. [*They shoot.*] O, well said, *Lucius*" (*Tit*, iv. iii. 63).

75. *boy's play*] Proverbial phrase: "It is no child's play" (*Tilley*, C324).

80-2. *But . . . stop*] *Q1*. *Qq2-5, F* (reading "thought's the slaue") produce successive moralizing clauses, instead of *Q1*'s successive subjects all governing "must have a stop". *Q1* is

accepted since (a) *Hotspur* has already mentioned "thoughts" in the plural (l. 79), and (b), dying, he recognizes the simultaneous stoppage at death of thoughts, life, and cognizance of time alike.

82. *prophesy*] Cf. *Tilley*, M514—"Dying Men speak true [*prophesy*]"; an allusion to the belief that a dying man can foretell the future like *Gaunt* in *R2*, II. i. 31 ff.—"Methinks I am a prophet new inspir'd, / And thus expiring do foretell of him . . ."

Prince. For worms, brave Percy. Fare thee well, great heart!
 Ill-weav'd ambition, how much art thou shrunk!
 When that this body did contain a spirit,
 A kingdom for it was too small a bound;
 But now two paces of the vilest earth 90
 Is room enough. This earth that bears thee dead
 Bears not alive so stout a gentleman.
 If thou wert sensible of courtesy
 I should not make so dear a show of zeal;
 But let my favours hide thy mangled face, 95
 And even in thy behalf I'll thank myself
 For doing these fair rites of tenderness.
 Adieu, and take thy praise with thee to heaven!
 Thy ignominy sleep with thee in the grave,
 But not remember'd in thy epitaph! 100
He spieth Falstaff on the ground.
 What, old acquaintance, could not all this flesh

86. Fare thee well] *Qq*; Farewell *F*. 91. thee dead] *Q7*; the dead *Qq1-6, F*.
 94. dear] *Q1*; great *Qq2-5, F*. 97. rites] *Qq2-5, F*; rights *Q1*. 99. ignominy]
Qq1-3; ignomy *Qq4, 5, F*. 100. S.D.] *Qq*; not in *F*.

87. *Ill-weav'd . . . shrunk*] Loosely and badly woven cloth shrinks. "Not meant of ambition in general but only of such as Hotspur's, which, the Prince thinks, was ill-conceived" (Kittredge).

88-91. *When that . . . enough*] Many "sources" have been proposed for this idea; e.g. Ovid, *Amores*, III. ix. 33, 40; Juvenal, *Satires*, x. 147-8; Lyly, *Letters writ by Euphues* (Bond, i. 314)—"*Philip* falling in the dust, and seeing the figure of his shape perfect in shewe: Good God sayd he, we desire y^e whole earth and see how little serveth"; similarly Lyly, *Campaspe*, v. iv. 49-53 (Bond, ii. 355), and *Midas*, III. i. 12-14 (Bond, iii. 130). But multiple parallels prove only that it is a commonplace. Shakespeare had treated it before (*R2*, III. iii. 153—"My large kingdom for a little grave"), and was to treat it again (*Cæs.*, III. i. 148 ff.—"O mighty Cæsar! dost thou lie so low? . . .").

92. *stout*] valiant.

95. *favours*] These could be scarves

or gloves, signs of a lady's favour. But the days when Hal "would unto the stews, / And from the common'st creature pluck a glove, / And wear it as a favour" (*R2*, v. iii. 16-18) are over, and the wooing of Katherine of France is far ahead. Here they are either "a torse of silk of his own colours, white and blue, which he unbound from his helm for the purpose" (G. W. Scott-Giles, *Sh.'s Heraldry*, 1950, 91), or the plumes of his helmet (H. Hartman, "Prince Hal's "Shewe of Zeale" ", *PMLA*, 1931, vol. 46, 720-3).

101-9. *What . . . lie*] "The tone, which may be compared with Hamlet's when confronted with Yorick's skull, is that of a prince speaking of his dead jester, not of friend taking leave of familiar friend: and what there is of affection is mainly retrospective. . . The epitaph on Hotspur contains not a word of triumph; its theme is the greatness of the slain man's spirit, the

Keep in a little life? Poor Jack, farewell!
 I could have better spar'd a better man:
 O, I should have a heavy miss of thee
 If I were much in love with vanity: 105
 Death hath not struck so fat a deer today,
 Though many dearer, in this bloody fray.
 Embowell'd will I see thee by and by,
 Till then in blood by noble Percy lie. *Exit.*

FALSTAFF *riseth up.*

Fal. Embowell'd? If thou embowel me today, I'll give 110
 you leave to powder me and eat me too tomorrow.
 'Sblood, 'twas time to counterfeit, or that hot ter-
 magant Scot had paid me, scot and lot too. Coun-
 terfeit? I lie, I am no counterfeit: to die is to be a
 counterfeit, for he is but the counterfeit of a man, 115
 who hath not the life of a man: but to counterfeit
 dying, when a man thereby liveth, is to be no
 counterfeit, but the true and perfect image of life
 indeed. The better part of valour is discretion, in

106. fat] *Q1, F; faire Qq2-5.* 109. S.D. *Exit.*] *Qq1-3, F; not in Qq4, 5.*
 112. 'Sblood] *Qq; not in F.* 114. I lie, I] *Qq1-4; I Q5, F.*

tragedy of his fall, and what may be done to reverence him in death. With such solemn thoughts does Shakespeare's hero turn to Fal. Is it surprising that he should be out of love with vanity at a moment like this? The point is of interest technically, since the moment balances and adumbrates a still more solemn moment at the end of Part II, in which he also encounters Fal. and has by then come to be even less in love with what he represents" (Wilson, *Fortunes*, 67-8).

104. heavy] A quibble.

107. dearer] Another quibble; for this sense of "dear" cf. iv. iv. 31, note.

108. Embowell'd] i.e. disembowelled for embalming, though with an equivoque on the "assay" or ceremony of disembowelling the deer (Madden, 65); cf. l. 161, note.

109. *in blood*] Another equivoque: as a hunting term it = "in full vigour"; cf. *LLL.*, iv. ii. 3-4—"The deer was, as you know, *sanguis*, in blood". In this sense it is literally, and comically, true of the sham corpse.

111. powder] pickle in salt.

113. paid . . . lot] Quibbles on "paid" (cf. v. iii. 47) and "scot", "scot and lot" being parish rates, and "to pay scot and lot" being to pay in full: cf. i. iii. 213, note, and Tilley, S159.

119. *The better . . . discretion*] Proverbial; Tilley, D354. Vincentio Saviolo (*his Practise*, 1595, sig. Bb) says that "The wisdom and discretion of a man, is as great a vertue as his magnanimitie and courage, which are so much the greater vertues, by how much they are accompanied with wisdom: for without them a man is not to be accounted valiant, but rather furious".

the which better part I have saved my life. 'Zounds, 120
 I am afraid of this gunpowder Percy, though he be
 dead; how if he should counterfeit too and rise? By
 my faith, I am afraid he would prove the better
 counterfeit; therefore I'll make him sure, yea, and
 I'll swear I killed him. Why may not he rise as well 125
 as I? Nothing confutes me but eyes, and nobody
 sees me: therefore, sirrah [*stabbing him*], with a new
 wound in your thigh, come you along with me.

He takes up Hotspur on his back.

[*Re-*]enter PRINCE [*and* LORD] JOHN OF LANCASTER.

Prince. Come, brother John, full bravely hast thou flesh'd
 Thy maiden sword.

Lan. But soft, whom have we here? 130
 Did you not tell me this fat man was dead?

Prince. I did, I saw him dead,
 Breathless and bleeding on the ground. Art thou alive?
 Or is it fantasy that plays upon our eyesight?
 I prithee speak, we will not trust our eyes 135
 Without our ears: thou art not what thou seem'st.

Fal. No, that's certain, I am not a double-man: but if I
 be not Jack Falstaff, then am I a Jack: there is
 Percy [*throwing the body down*]! If your father will do
 me any honour, so: if not, let him kill the next 140
 Percy himself. I look to be either earl or duke, I can
 assure you.

Prince. Why, Percy I kill'd myself, and saw thee dead.

120. 'Zounds] *Qq*; not in *F.* 122-3. By my faith] *Qq*; not in *F.* 127. S.D.]
Malone; not in *QqF.* 128. with me] *Qq*; me *F.* 128. S.D. *He takes up*] *Qq*;
Takes / *F.* *Re-enter*] *QqF* (*Enter*), *Capell.* and Lord John] *Hanmer*; John / *Q1*;
 and John / *Qq2-5, F.* 129-30. Come . . . sword] *As Qq*; *prose, F.* 130.
 whom] *Qq1-4*; who *Q5, F.* 139. S.D.] *Var. 1773*; not in *QqF.*

"Fal.'s cynical misinterpretation of a
 wise maxim is now generally accepted
 as its true meaning" (Wilson, N.C.S.).
 Both Fal. and Hotspur err at opposite
 extremes of true "discretion".

126. *Nothing . . . eyes*] Oddly put, but
 the sense is clear—"Only an eye-wit-
 ness could prove me a liar".

129-30. *full . . . sword*] Brooks &
 Heilman point out how this praise sets
 off the ignominy of Fal.'s bogus flesh-
 ing of his "maiden sword".

137. *double-man*] *OED*, "double.
sb.2c. The apparition of a living per-
 son: wraith, fetch"; with a quibble on
 the extra body he is carrying.

Fal. Didst thou? Lord, Lord, how this world is given to lying! I grant you I was down, and out of breath, 145
and so was he, but we rose both at an instant, and fought a long hour by Shrewsbury clock. If I may be believed, so: if not, let them that should reward valour bear the sin upon their own heads. I'll take it upon my death, I gave him this wound in the 150
thigh; if the man were alive, and would deny it, 'zounds, I would make him eat a piece of my sword.

Lan. This is the strangest tale that ever I heard.

Prince. This is the strangest fellow, brother John.

Come, bring your luggage nobly on your back. 155

[*Aside to Falstaff*] For my part, if a lie may do thee grace, I'll gild it with the happiest terms I have.

A retreat is sounded.

The trumpet sounds retreat, the day is ours.

Come, brother, let us to the highest of the field,

To see what friends are living, who are dead. 160

Exeunt [Prince of Wales and Lancaster].

Fal. I'll follow, as they say, for reward. He that rewards me, God reward him! If I do grow great, I'll grow less, for I'll purge, and leave sack, and live cleanly as a nobleman should do. *Exit* [, bearing off the body].

144. this] *Qq1-4*; the *Q5,F*. 149-50. take it upon] *Qq*; take't on *F*. 152. 'zounds] *Qq*; not in *F*. 153. ever] *Qq*; e're *F*. 156. S.D.] *Wilson (N.C.S.)*; not in *QqF*. 158. The] *F*; *Prin.* The *Qq*. trumpet sounds] *Qq1-3*; trumpets sound *Qq4,5,F*. ours] *Qq2-5,F*; our *Q1*. 159. let us] *Qq1-3*; lets *Qq4,5,F*. 160. S.D.] *Cambr.*; *Exeunt.* / *QqF*. 162. God] *Qq*; heauen *F*. great] *Qq*; great again *F*. 164. nobleman] *Qq4,5,F*; noble man *Qq1-3*. 164. S.D.] *Capell*; *Exit. QqF*.

149-50. *I'll . . . death*] An oath of peculiar solemnity. Perkin Warbeck on the day of his execution, writes Bacon, "did again openly read his confession, and take it upon his death to be true"; (*Hist. of Hy VII: Works*, ed. Spedding & Ellis, vi. 203).

156. S.D.] I follow *Wilson (N.C.S.)* in treating this as a matter between Hal and Fal. only.

a lie] i.e. "of yours".

158. *ours*] Cf. collation, and rv. iii. 28, note.

161. *I'll . . . reward*] "In hunting, the

hounds 'follow' and are given 'reward', i.e. portions assigned to them at the 'breaking up of the deer' (v. Turberville, *Booke of Hunting*, 1575, 130-5). Fal. claims to have brought the great quarry down; apparently his 'reward' is a 'pension' (2*H4*, i. ii. 280—"My pension shall seem the more reasonable") (*Wilson, N.C.S.*).

163. *purge*] repent; cf. *Iacke Drums Entertainment* (R. Simpson, *School of Sh.*, ii. 160)—"Old wretch, amend thy thoughts, purge, purge, repent!"

[SCENE V.—*The Same.*]

The trumpets sound. Enter the KING, PRINCE OF WALES, LORD JOHN OF LANCASTER, EARL OF WESTMORELAND, with WORCESTER and VERNON prisoners.

King. Thus ever did rebellion find rebuke.
 Ill-spirited Worcester, did not we send grace,
 Pardon, and terms of love to all of you?
 And wouldst thou turn our offers contrary?
 Misuse the tenor of thy kinsman's trust? 5
 Three knights upon our party slain today,
 A noble earl and many a creature else,
 Had been alive this hour,
 If like a Christian thou hadst truly borne
 Betwixt our armies true intelligence. 10

Wor. What I have done my safety urg'd me to;
 And I embrace this fortune patiently,
 Since not to be avoided it falls on me.

King. Bear Worcester to the death, and Vernon too:
 Other offenders we will pause upon. 15
[Exeunt Worcester and Vernon, guarded.]

How goes the field?

Prince. The noble Scot, Lord Douglas, when he saw
 The fortune of the day quite turn'd from him,
 The noble Percy slain, and all his men
 Upon the foot of fear, fled with the rest, 20
 And falling from a hill, he was so bruised
 That the pursuers took him. At my tent
 The Douglas is; and I beseech your Grace
 I may dispose of him.

King. With all my heart.

Scene v

SCENE V.] *Capell; Scœna Quarta. [F; not in Qq. Location.] This edn; Another Part. [Capell. 2. not we] Qq; we not F. 14. the] Qq; not in F. 15. S.D.] Theobald; Exit Worcester and Vernon. [F; not in Qq.*

1. *rebuke*] "violent check" (Wilson, N.C.S.).

6-7. *Three . . . earl*] This varies oddly from Hol., who, besides the Earl of Stafford, names ten knights, adding

that they were all dubbed on the morning of the battle.

20. *Upon . . . fear*] In panic flight. For the metaphor cf. *Mac.*, II. iii. 132—"Upon the foot of motion".

- Prince.* Then, brother John of Lancaster, to you 25
 This honourable bounty shall belong;
 Go to the Douglas and deliver him
 Up to his pleasure, ransomless and free:
 His valours shown upon our crests today
 Have taught us how to cherish such high deeds, 30
 Even in the bosom of our adversaries.
- Lan.* I thank your Grace for this high courtesy,
 Which I shall give away immediately.
- King.* Then this remains, that we divide our power:
 You, son John, and my cousin Westmoreland, 35
 Towards York shall bend you with your dearest speed
 To meet Northumberland and the prelate Scroop,
 Who, as we hear, are busily in arms:
 Myself and you, son Harry, will towards Wales,
 To fight with Glendower and the Earl of March. 40
 Rebellion in this land shall lose his sway,
 Meeting the check of such another day,
 And since this business so fair is done,
 Let us not leave till all our own be won. *Exeunt.*

25-6.] *As Pope*; Then . . . Lancaster, / To . . . belong, / *QqF*. 29-30. valours . . . Have] *Qq1-3*; valour . . . Hath *Qq4,5,F*. 32-3.] *Qq1-4*; not in *Q5,F*. 36. bend you] *Qq4,5,F*; bend, you *Qq1-3*. 41. sway] *Qq1-4*; way *Q5,F*.

34-44. *Then . . . won*] "If we are to consider this 'first part' as an entire play, King Harry's closing speech offends sadly against Aristotle, in a point wherein Aristotle's authority, if sound in itself, has a jurisdiction general, and not limited by the usages of the Greek stage. It is a conclusion in which nothing is concluded" (Hartley Coleridge, *Essays*, 1851, ii. 156, cited

by Hemingway, New Var., 337). The speech, together with iv. iv, undoubtedly involves a further phase in the action and so a Part II, however effectively Shrewsbury may conclude Part I. The relationship of the parts is most ably studied in Harold Jenkins, *Structural Problem in Sh.'s Henry the Fourth*, 1956.

43. *business*] Trisyllabic.

APPENDIX I

THE TITLE IN Qq2-5, F1

The Qq2-5 title-pages read as follows:

Q2. THE | HISTORY OF | HENRIE THE | FOVRTH; | With the battell at Shrewsburie, | *betweene the King and Lord Henry* | Percy, surnamed Henry Hot-|spur of the North. | *VVith the humorous conceits of Sir* | Iohn Falstallfe. | Newly corrected by *W. Shake-speare.* | [Device] | AT LONDON, | Printed by S.S. for *Andrew VVise*, dwelling | in Paules Churchyard, at the signe of | the Angell. 1599.

Q3. THE | HISTORY OF | Henrie the fourth, | VVith the battell at Shrewsburie, | *betweene the King, and Lord* | Henry Percy, surnamed Henry Hot-|spur of the North. | *With the humorous conceits of Sir* | Iohn Falstallfe. | Newly corrected by *W. Shake-speare.* | [Ornament] | LONDON | Printed by Valentine Simmes, for *Mathew Law*, and | are to be solde at his shop in Paules Churchyard, | at the signe of the Fox. | 1604.

Q4. THE | HISTORY OF | Henry the fourth, | VVith the battell at Shrewseburie, | *betweene the King, and Lord* | Henry Percy, surnamed Henry | *Hotspur of the North.* | *With the humorous conceites of Sir* | Iohn Falstallfe. | *Newly corrected by W. Shake-speare.* | [Ornament] | LONDON, | Printed for *Mathew Law*, and are to be sold at | his shop in Paules Church-yard, neere vnto S. | *Augustines* gate, at the signe of | the Foxe. 1608.

Q5. THE | HISTORY OF | Henrie the fourth, | With the Battell at Shrewseburie, *betweene* | the King, and Lord Henrie Percy, sur-| named *Henrie Hotspur* of the North. | VVith the humorous conceites of Sir | *Iohn Falstaffe.* | Newly corrected by *W. Shake-speare.* | [White's device] | LONDON, | Printed by *W.W.* for *Mathew Law*, and are to be sold | at his shop in Paules Church-yard, neere vnto S. | *Augustines* Gate, at the signe of the Foxe. | 1613.

Q6 was printed in 1622 by T. P. for Mathew Law; Q7 in 1632 by John Norton for William Sheares, and Q8 in 1639 by John Norton for Hugh Perry.

The title in the First Folio is, "The First Part of Henry the Fourth, | with the Life and Death of HENRY | Sirnamed HOT-SPVRRE".

APPENDIX II

THE DATE OF

THE MERRY WIVES OF WINDSOR

The Merry Wives has generally been thought to be of later date than *Henry V* (1599), and Sir E. K. Chambers's comment that in it Nym would hardly be called "corporal" unless he had already been seen on a battle-field is cogent. Yet the text is confused and revised, not only in the bad Q of 1602 but in the better F text, and post-*Henry V* traces, like post-*Hamlet* ones (cf. Chambers, *W. Sh.*, i. 429-30), may have crept in. What is more important is that *The Merry Wives* (perhaps based on a source-play of about 1592-3) seems to have been written for a conferment of Garter Knighthoods, and that the conferment of April-May 1597 seems the likely occasion. The case for this, in Dr Leslie Hotson's *Shakespeare versus Shallow* (1931), has gained much acceptance—an acceptance not extending, however, to Hotson's other suggestion, that Shakespeare's Robert Shallow, justice of the peace in Gloucestershire, is drawn from William Gardiner, justice of the peace in Southwark.

In 1865 W. B. Rye translated a German travel journal of 1592 kept by the secretary of Frederick, Count of Mömpelgart, heir to the Duke of Württemberg. Mömpelgart visited England in 1592, had trouble with post-horses, was promised Knighthood of the Garter by Elizabeth, and returned to Germany expecting his election to that Order. The Queen kept "our Cousin Mumpellgart" waiting until in 1597 she capitulated. His election then took place though without his being informed until too late—the insignia were not sent until James I's reign.

To these rather absurd events it has long been recognized that *The Merry Wives* alludes. In iv. iii Bardolph tells the Host of the Garter Inn that there are Germans desiring horses of him, and that their Duke will appear at Court on the morrow. In iv. v the "Germans" are said to have absconded with the horses, and in the 1602 Q Sir Hugh Evans mentions "three sorts of cosen garmombles, is cosen [i.e. have cheated] all the Host of Maidenhead and Readings". "Garmomble" is an actual word meaning "confusion" (literally "bruise") but "Cousin Mumpellgart" must surely be the target. The Folio makes the joke less private and less funny—"cosen garmombles" becomes "Cozen-Iermans". Finally, Dr Caius addresses the Host (iv. v. 88-91):

it is tell-a-me, dat you make grand preparation for a Duke *de Iamanie*: by my trot: der is no Duke that the Court is know, to come.

One has, then, a Garter-celebration play (as Anne's speech at v. v. 61-79 makes clear), with Mömpelgart jokes about horse-trickery and the Duke's arrival or non-arrival at Windsor. The likeliest occasion for such jests would be the ceremony of 1597, when the Duke was elected but not informed, so that reports of a hasty belated arrival would greatly amuse the assembled Knights. A second of the new Knights in that year was Lord Hunsdon, the new Lord Chamberlain, who appeared with extreme splendour at the Windsor installation in May.¹ His prospective election would, of course, be known some time before the election ceremony on 23 April, St George's Day. As patron of Shakespeare's company, he might be expected to entertain the assembly with a play, and if the play were new (or, as *The Merry Wives* seems, an old one re-worked) it would need to be rushed through, the more so if the Queen, who did not go to Windsor, were to see it at Greenwich Palace beforehand. This may be the basis of the tradition recorded by Dennis.

APPENDIX III

SOURCE MATERIAL

1. *Raphael Holinshed*: "*The Chronicles of England, Scotlande, and Irelande*" (2nd edition, 1587). The references are to the 6-volume reprint of 1807-8.

OWEN GLENDOWER

"This Owen Glendouer was sonne to an esquier of Wales, named Griffith Vichan; he dwelled in the parish of Conwaie, within the county of Merioneth, in North Wales. . .

"He was first set to studie the lawes of the realme, and became an vtter barrester, or an apprentise of the law (as they terme him) and serued king Richard at Flint castell, when he was taken by Henrie duke of Lancaster, though other haue written that he serued this king Henrie the fourth, before he came to attaine the crowne, in roome of an esquier." (iii. 17)

KING HENRY'S UNQUIET REIGN

After relating an abortive attempt on the King's life Holinshed continues thus:

"Howbeit he was not so soone deliuered from feare; for he might well haue his life in suspicion, & provide for the preseruacion of the

1. L. Hotson, *Sh. versus Shallow*, 117-19.

same; sith perils of death crept into his secret chamber, and laie lurking in the bed of downe where his bodie was to be reposed and to take rest. Oh what a suspected state therefore is that of a king holding his regiment with the hatred of his people, the hart grudgings of his courtiers, and the peremptorie practises of both together? Could he confidentlie compose or setle himselfe to sleepe for feare of strangling? Durst he boldly eat and drinke without dreade of poisoning? Might he aduenture to shew himselfe in great meetings or solemne assemblies without mistrust of mischeefe against his person intended? What pleasure or what felicitie could he take in his princelie pompe, which he knew by manifest and fearfull experience to be enuied and maligned to the verie death? The state of such a king is noted by the poet in Dionysius, as in a mirror, concerning whome it is said,

Districtus ensis cui super impia	<i>Hor. lib. ca. 3</i>
Ceruice pendet, non Siculae dapes	<i>Ode 1.</i>
Dulcem elaborabunt saporem	
Non auium cytharæq. cantus."	(iii. 18-19)

THE PERCYS' REBELLION

"Owen Glendouer, according to his accustomed manner, robbing and spoiling within the English borders, caused all the forces of the shire of Hereford to assemble together against them, vnder the conduct of Edmund Mortimer earle of March. But coming to trie the matter by battell, whether by treason or otherwise, so it fortun'd, that the English power was discomfited, the earle taken prisoner, and aboue a thousand of his people slaine in the place. The shamefull villanie vsed by the Welshwomen towards the dead carcasses, was such, as honest eares would be ashamed to heare, and continent toongs to speake thereof. The dead bodies might not be buried, without great summes of monie giuen for libertie to conueie them awaie.

"The king was not hastie to purchase the deliuerance of the earle March, bicause his tittle to the crowne was well inough known, and therefore suffered him to remaine in miserable prison, wishing both the said earle, and all other of his linage out of this life, with God and his saincts in heauen, so they had beene out of the waie, for then all had beene well inough as he thought. . . About mid of August, the king to chastise the presumptuous attempts of the Welshmen, went with a great power of men into Wales, to pursue the capteine of the Welsh rebell Owen Glendouer, but in effect he lost his labor; for Owen conueied himselfe out of the waie, into his known lurking places, and (as was thought) through art magike,

he caused such foule weather of winds, tempest, raine, snow, and haile to be raised, for the annoiance of the kings armie, that the like had not beene heard of; in such sort, that the king was constrained to return home, hauing caused his people yet to spoile and burne first a great part of the countrie. . . The Scots vnder the leding of Patrike Hepborne, of the Hales the yoonger, entring into England, were ouerthrowen at Nesbit, in the marches, as in the Scottish chronicle ye may find more at large. This battell was fought the two and twentieth of Iune, in this yeare of our Lord 1402.

“Archembald earle Dowglas sore displeased in his mind for this ouerthrow, procured a commission to inuade England, and that to his cost, as ye may likewise read in the Scottish histories. For at a place called Homildon, they were so fiercelie assailed by the Englishmen, vnder the leading of the lord Persie, surnamed Henrie Hotspur, and George earle of March, that with violence of the English shot they were quite vanquished and put to flight, on the Rood daie in haruest, with a great slaughter made by the Englishmen. We know that the Scottish writers note this battell to haue chanced in the yeare 1403. But we following Tho. Walsingham in this place, and other English writers, for the accompt of times, haue thought good to place it in this yeare 1402, as in the same writers we find it. There were slaine of men of estimation, sir Iohn Swinton, sir Adam Gordon, sir Iohn Leuiston, sir Alexander Ramsie of Dalehousie, and three and twentie knights, besides ten thousand of the commons: and of prisoners among other were these, Mordacke earle of Fife, son to the gouernour Archembald earle Dowglas, which in the fight lost one of his eies, Thomas erle of Murrey, Robert earle of Angus, and (as some writers haue) the earles of Atholl & Menteith, with fiue hundred other of meaner degrees.

“. . . Edmund Mortimer earle of March, prisoner with Owen Glendouer, whether for irkesomnesse of cruell captiuitie, or feare of death, or for what other cause, it is vncerteine, agreed to take part with Owen, against the king of England, and tooke to wife the daughter of the said Owen.

“Strange wonders happened (as men reported) at the natiuitie of this man, for the same night he was borne, all his fathers horssees in the stable were found to stand in bloud vp to the bellies. . .

“Henrie earle of Northumberland, with his brother Thomas earle of Worcester, and his sonne the lord Henrie Persie, surnamed Hotspur, which were to king Henrie in the beginning of his reigne, both faithfull freends, and earnest aiders, began now to enuie his wealth and felicitie; and especiallie they were greeued, bicause the king demanded of the earle and his sonne such Scottish prisoners as

were taken at Homeldon and Nesbit: for of all the captiues which were taken in the conflicts foughten in those two places, there was deliuered to the kings possession onelie Mordake earle of Fife, the duke of Albanies sonne, though the king did diuers and sundrie times require deliuerance of the residue, and that with great threatnings: wherewith the Persies being sore offended, for that they claimed them as their owne proper prisoners, and their peculiar preies, by the counsell of the lord Thomas Persie earle of Worcester, whose studie was euer (as some write) to procure malice, and set things in a broile, came to the king vnto Windsore (vpon a purpose to prooue him) and there required of him, that either by ransome or otherwise, he would cause to be deliuered out of prison Edmund Mortimer earle of March, their cousine germane, whome (as they reported) Owen Glendouer kept in filthie prison, shakled with irons, onelie for that he tooke his part, and was to him faithfull and true.

“The king began not a little to muse at this request, and not without cause: for in deed it touched him somewhat neere, sith this Edmund was sonne to Roger earle of March, sonne to the ladie Philip, daughter of Lionell duke of Clarence, the third sonne of king Edward the third; which Edmund at king Richards going into Ireland, was proclaimed heire apparant to the crowne and realme, whose aunt called Elianor, the lord Henrie Persie had married; and therefore king Henrie could not well heare, that anie man should be earnest about the aduancement of that linage. The king when he had studied on the matter, made answer, that the earle of March was not taken prisoner for his cause, nor in his seruice, but willinglie suffered himselfe to be taken, bicause he would not withstand the attempts of Owen Glendouer, and his complices, and therefore he would neither ransome him, nor releuee him.

“The Persies with this answer and fraudulent excuse were not a little fumed, insomuch that Henrie Hotspur said openlie: Behold, the heire of the relme is robbed of his right, and yet the robber with his owne will not redeeme him. So in this furie the Persies departed, minding nothing more than to depose king Henrie from the high type of his roialtie, and to place in his seat their cousine Edmund earle of March, whom they did not onlie deliuer out of captiuitie, but also (to the high displeasure of king Henrie) entered in league with the foresaid Owen Glendouer. Heerewith, they by their deputies in the house of the archdeacon of Bangor, diuided the realme amongst them, causing a tripartite indenture to be made and sealed with their seales, by the couenants whereof, all England from Seuerne and Trent, south and eastward, was assigned to the

earle of March: all Wales, & the lands beyond Seuerne westward, were appointed to Owen Glendouer: and all the remnant from Trent northward, to the lord Persie.

“This was doone (as some haue said) through a foolish credit giuen to a vaine prophesie, as though king Henrie was the mold-warpe, cursed of Gods owne mouth, and they three were the dragon, the lion, and the wolfe, which should diuide this realme betweene them. Such is the deuiation (saith Hall) and not diuination of those blind and fantastick dreames of the Welsh prophesiers. King Henrie not knowing of this new confederacie, and nothing lesse minding than that which after happened, gathered a great armie to go againe into Wales, whereof the earle of Northumberland and his sonne were aduertised by the earle of Worcester, and with all diligence raised all the power they could make, and sent to the Scots which before were taken prisoners at Homeldon, for aid of men, promising to the earle of Dowglas the towne of Berwike, and a part of Northumberland, and to other Scottish lords, great lordships and seigniories, if they obtained the upper hand. The Scots in hope of gaine, and desirous to be reuenged of their old griefes, came to the earle with a great companie well appointed.

“The Persies to make their part seeme good, deuised certeine articles, by the aduise of Richard Scroope, archbishop of Yorke, brother to the lord Scroope, whome king Henrie had caused to be beheaded at Bristow. These articles being shewed to diuerse noble-men, and other states of the realme, mooued them to fauour their purpose, in so much that manie of them did not onelie promise to the Persies aid and succour by words, but also by their writings and seales confirmed the same. Howbeit when the matter came to triall, the most part of the confederates abandoned them, and at the daie of the conflict left them alone. Thus after that the conspirators had discovered themselues, the lord Henrie Persie desirous to proceed in the enterprise, vpon trust to be assisted by Owen Glendouer, the earle of March, & other, assembled an armie of men of armes and archers foorth of Cheshire and Wales. Incontinentlie his vnkle Thomas Persie earle of Worcester, that had the gouernement of the prince of Wales, who as then laie at London in secret manner, conueied himselfe out of the princes house, and comming to Stafford (where he met his nephue) they increased their power by all waies and meanes they could deuise. The earle of Northumberland himselfe was not with them, but being sicke, had promised vpon his amendement to repair vnto them (as some write) with all conuenient speed.

“These noble men, to make their conspiracie to seeme excus-

able, besides the articles aboue mentioned, sent letters abroad, wherein was conteined, that their gathering of an armie tended to none other end, but onlie for the safegard of their owne persons, and to put some better gouernment in the commonwealth. For whereas taxes and tallages were dailie leuied, vnder pretense to be imploied in defense of the realme, the same were vainlie wasted, and vnprofitable consumed: and where through the slanderous reports of their enimies, the king had taken a greeuous displeasure with them, they durst not appeare personallie in the kings presence, vntill the prelat and barons of the realme had obtained of the king licence for them to come and purge themselves before him, by lawfull triall of their peeres, whose iudgement (as they pretended) they would in no wise refuse. Manie that saw and heard these letters, did commend their diligence, and highlie praised their assured fidelitie and trustinesse towards the commonwealth.

“But the king vnderstanding their cloaked drift, deuised (by what meanes he might) to quiet and appease the commons, and deface their contriued forgeries; and therefore he wrote an answer to their libels, that he maruelled much, sith the earle of Northumberland, and the lord Henrie Persie his sonne, had receiued the most part of the summes of monie granted to him by the cleargie and communalitie, for defense of the marches, as he could euidentlie prooue, what should mooue them to complaine and raise such manifest slanders. And whereas he vnderstood, that the earles of Northumberland and Worcester, and the lord Persie had by their letters signified to their freends abroad, that by reason of the slanderous reports of their enimies, they durst not appeare in his presence, without the mediation of the prelat and nobles of the realme, so as they required pledges, whereby they might safelie come afore him, to declare and alledge what they had to saie in prooffe of their innocencie, he protested by letters sent foorth vnder his seale, that they might safelie come and go, without all danger, or anie manner of indamagement to be offered to their persons.

“But this could not satisfie those men, but that resolved to go forwards with their enterprise, they marched towards Shrewesburie, vpon hope to be aided (as men thought) by Owen Glendouer, and his Welshmen, publishing abroad throughout the countries on each side, that king Richard was aliue, whome if they wished to see, they willed them to repaire in armour vnto the castell of Chester, where (without all doubt) he was at that present, and redie to come forward. This tale being raised, though it were most vntrue, yet it bred variable motions in mens minds, causing them to wauer, so as they knew not to which part they should

sticke; and verelie, diuers were well affected towards king Richard, speciallie such as had tasted of his princelie bountifulnes, of which there was no small number. And to speake a truth, no maruell it was, if manie enuied the prosperous state of king Henrie, sith it was euident inough to the world, that he had with wrong vsurped the crowne, and not onelie violentlie deposed king Richard, but also cruellie procured his death; for the which vndoubtedlie, both he and his posteritie tasted such troubles, as put them still in danger of their states, till their direct succeeding line was quite rooted out by the contrarie faction, as in Henrie the sixt and Edward the fourth it may appeare.

“But now to return where we left. King Henrie aduertised of the proceedings of the Persies, foorthwith gathered about him such power as he might make, and being earnestlie called vpon by the Scot, the earle of March, to make hast and giue battell to his enimies, before their power by delaieng of time should still too much increase, he passed forward with such speed, that he was in sight of his enimies, lieng in campe neere to Shrewesburie, before they were in doubt of anie such thing, for the Persies thought that he would have staid at Burton vpon Trent, till his counsell had come thither to him to giue their aduise what he were best to doo. But herein the enimie was deceived of his expectation, sith the king had great regard of expedition and making speed for the safetie of his owne person, wherevnto the earle of March incited him, considering that in delaie is danger, & losse in lingering, as the poet in the like case saith:

*Tolle moras, nocuit semper differre paratis,
Dum trepidant nullo firmatæ robore partes.*

“By reason of the kings sudden cōming in this sort, they staid from assaulting the towne of Shrewesburie, which enterprise they were readie at that instant to haue taken in hand, and foorthwith the lord Persie (as a capteine of high courage) began to exhort the capteines and souldiers to prepare themselves to battell, sith the matter was growen to that point, that by no meanes it could be auoided, so that (said he) this daie shall either bring vs all to aduancement & honor, or else if it shall chance vs to be ouercome, shall deliuer vs from the kings spitefull malice and cruell disdaine: for plaieng the men (as we ought to doo) better it is to die in battell for the commonwealths cause, than through cowardlike feare to prolong life, which after shall be taken from vs, by sentence of the enimie.

“Herevpon, the whole armie being in number about fourteene

thousand chosen men, promised to stand with him so long as life lasted. There were with the Persies as chiefeines of this armie, the earle of Dowglas a Scottish man, the baron of Kinderton, sir Hugh Browne, and sir Richard Vernon knights, with diuerse other stout and right valiant capteins. Now when the two armies were incamped, the one against the other, the earle of Worcester and the lord Persie with their complices sent the articles (whereof I spake before) by Thomas Caiton, and Thomas Saluain esquiers to king Henrie, vnder their hands and seales, which articles in effect charged him with manifest periurie, in that (contrarie to his oth receiued vpon the euangelists at Doncaster, when he first entred the realme after his exile) he had taken vpon him the crowne and roiall dignitie, imprisoned king Richard, caused him to resigne his title, and finallie to be murthered. Diuerse other matters they laid to his charge, as leuieng of taxes and tallages, contrarie to his promise, infringing of lawes & customes of the realme, and suffering the earle of March to remaine in prison, without traueilling to haue him deliuered. All which things they as procurors & protectors of the common-wealth, tooke vpon them to prooue against him, as they protested vnto the whole world.

“King Henrie after he had read their articles, with the defiance which they annexed to the same, answered the esquiers, that he was readie with dint of sword and fierce battell to prooue their quarrell false, and nothing else than a forged matter, not doubting, but that God would aid and assist him in his righteous cause, against the disloiall and false forsworne traitors. The next daie in the morning earlie, being the euen of Marie Magdalene, they set their battels in order on both sides, and now whilst the warriors looked when the token of battell should be giuen, the abbat of Shrewesburie, and one of the clearks of the priuie seale, were sent from the king vnto the Persies, to offer them pardon, if they would come to any reasonable agreement. By their persuasions, the lord Henrie Persie began to giue eare vnto the kings offers, & so sent with them his vncle the earle of Worcester, to declare vnto the king the causes of those troubles, and to require some effectuall reformation in the same.

“It was reported for a truth, that now when the king had condescended vnto all that was resonable at his hands to be required, and seemed to humble himselfe more than was meet for his estate, the earle of Worcester (vpon his returne to his nephue) made relation cleane contrarie to that the king had said, in such sort that he set his nephues hart more in displeasure towards the king, than euer it was before, driuing him by that meanes to fight whether he would

or not: then suddenlie blew the trumpets, the kings part crieng S. George vpon them, the aduersaries cried *Esperance Persie*, and so the two armies furiously ioined. The archers on both sides shot for the best game, laieng on such load with arrowes, that manie died, and were driuen downe that neuer rose againe.

“The Scots (as some write) which had the fore ward on the Persies side, intending to be reuenged of their old displeasures doone to them by the English nation, set so fiercelie on the kings fore ward, led by the earle of Stafford, that they made the same draw backe, and had almost broken their aduersaries arraie. The Welshmen also which before had laine lurking in the woods, mountaines, and marishes, hearing of this battell toward, came to the aid of the Persies, and refreshed the wearied people with new succours. The king perceiuing that his men were thus put to distresse, what with the violent impression of the Scots, and the tempestuous stormes of arrowes, that his aduersaries discharged freely against him and his people, it was no need to will him to stirre: for suddenlie with his fresh battell, he approched and relieued his men; so that the battell began more fierce than before. Here the lord Henrie Persie, and the earle Dowglas, a right stout and hardie capteine, not regarding the shot of the kings battell, nor the close order of the ranks, pressing forward together bent their whole forces towards the kings person, comming vpon him with speares and swords so fiercelie, that the earle of March the Scot, perceiuing their purpose, withdrew the king from that side of the field (as some write) for his great benefit and safegard (as it appeared) for they gaue such a violent onset vpon them that stood about the kings standard, that slaieng his standard-bearer sir Walter Blunt, and ouerthrowing the standard, they made slaughter of all those that stood about it, as the earle of Stafford, that daie made by the king constable of the realme, and diuerse other.

“The prince that daie holpe his father like a lustie yoong gentleman: for although he was hurt in the face with an arrow, so that diuerse noble men that were about him, would haue conueied him foorth of the field, yet he would not suffer them so to doo, least his departure from amongst his men might happilie haue striken some feare into their harts: and so without regard of his hurt, he continued with his men, & neuer ceased, either to fight where the battell was most hot, or to incourage his men where it seemed most need. This battell lasted three long houres, with indifferent fortune on both parts, till at length, the king crieng saint George victorie, brake the arraie of his enimies, and aduentured so farre, that (as some write) the earle Dowglas strake him downe, & at that instant

slue Sir Walter Blunt, and three other, apparelled in the kings sute and clothing, saieng: I maruell to see so many kings thus suddenlie arise one in the necke of an other. The king in deed was raised, & did that daie manie a noble feat of armes, for as it is written, he slue that daie with his owne hands six and thirtie persons of his enimies. The other on his part encouraged by his doings, fought valiantlie, and slue the lord Persie, called sir Henrie Hotspurre. To conclude, the kings enimies were vanquished, and put to flight, in which flight, the earle of Dowglas, for hast, falling from the crag of an hie mounteine, brake one of his cullions, and was taken, and for his valiantnesse, of the king frankelie and freelie deliuered.

“There was also taken the earle of Worcester, the procuror and setter foorth of all this mischeefe, sir Richard Vernon, and the baron of Kinderton, with diuerse other. There were slaine vpon the kings part, beside the earle of Stafford, to the number of ten knights, sir Hugh Shorlie, sir Iohn Clifton, sir Iohn Cokaine, sir Nicholas Gausell, sir Walter Blunt, sir Iohn Caluerleie, Sir Iohn Massie of Podington, sir Hugh Mortimer, and sir Robert Gausell, all the which receiued the same morning the order of knighthood: sir Thomas Wendesleie was wounded to death, and so passed out of this life shortlie after. There died in all vpon the kings side sixteene hundred, and foure thousand were greeuously wounded. On the contrarie side were slaine, besides the lord Persie, the most part of the knights and esquiers of the countie of Chester, to the number of two hundred, besides yeomen and footmen, in all there died of those that fought on the Persies side, about fiue thousand. This battell was fought on Marie Magdalene euen, being saturdaye. Vpon the mondaie folowing, the earle of Worcester, the baron of Kinderton, and sir Richard Vernon knights, were condemned and beheaded. The earles head was sent to London, there to be set on the bridge.

“The earle of Northumberland was now marching forward with great power, which he had got thither, either to aid his sonne and brother (as was thought) or at the least towards the king, to procure a peace: but the earle of Westmerland, and sir Robert Waterton knight, had got an armie on foot, and meant to meet him. The earle of Northumberland, taking neither of them to be his freend, turned suddenlie back, and withdrew himselfe into Warkeworth castell. The king hauing set a staie in things about Shrewesburie, went straight to Yorke, from whence he wrote to the earle of Northumberland, willing him to dismisse his companies that he had with him, and to come vnto him in peaceable wise. The earle vpon receipt of the kings letters came vnto him the morow after saint Laurence daie, hauing but a few of his seruants to attend him, and

so excused himselfe, that the king bicause the earle had Berwike in his possession, and further, had his castels of Alnewike, Warkewoorth, and other, fortified with Scots, dissembled the matter, gaue him faire words, and suffered him (as saith Hall) to depart home, although by other it should seeme, that he was committed for a time to safe custodie.

"The king returning foorth of Yorkeshire, determined to go into Northwales, to chastise the presumptuous dooings of the vnrule Welshmen, who (after his comming from Shrewesburie, and the marches there) had doone much harme to the English subiects." (iii. 20-7)

THE INTERVIEW BETWEEN PRINCE HENRY AND THE KING

"Whilest these things were a dooing in France, the lord Henrie prince of Wales, eldest sonne to king Henrie, got knowledge that certeine of his fathers seruants were busie to giue informations against him, whereby discord might arise betwixt him and his father: for they put into the kings head, not onelie what euill rule (according to the course of youth) the prince kept to the offense of manie: but also what great resort of people came to his house, so that the court was nothing furnished with such a traine as dailie followed the prince. These tales brought no small suspicion into the kings head, least his sonne would presume to vsurpe the crowne, he being yet aliue, through which suspicious gelousie, it was perceiued that he fauoured not his sonne, as in times past he had doone.

"The Prince sore offended with such persons, as by slanderous reports, sought not onelie to spot his good name abroad in the realme, but to sowe discord also betwixt him and his father, wrote his letters into euerie part of the realme, to reprocue all such slanderous deuises of those that sought his discredit. And to cleare himselfe the better, that the world might vnderstand what wrong he had to be slandered in such wise: about the feast of Peter and Paule, to wit, the nine and twentieth daie of Iune, he came to the court with such a number of noble men and other his freends that wished him well, as the like traine had beene sildome seene repairing to the court at any one time in those daies. He was apparelled in a gowne of blew satten, full of small oilet holes, at euerie hole the needle hanging by a silke thred with which it was sewed. About his arme he ware an hounds collar set full of SS of gold, and the tirts likewise being of the same metall.

"The court was then at Westminster, where he being entred into the hall, not one of his companie durst once aduance himselfe further than the fire in the same hall, notwithstanding they were

earnestlie requested by the lords to come higher: but they regarding what they had in commandement of the prince, would not presume to doo in any thing contrarie there vnto. He himselfe onelie accompanied with those of the kings house, was streight admitted to the presence of the king his father, who being at that time greuouslie diseased, yet caused himselfe in his chaire to be borne into his priuie chamber, where in the presence of three or foure persons, in whome he had most confidence, he commanded the prince to shew what he had to saie concerning the cause of his comming.

“The prince kneeling downe before his father said: Most redoubted and souereigne lord and father, I am at this time come to your presence as your liege man, and as your naturall sonne, in all things to be at your commandement. And where I vnderstand you haue in suspicion my demeanour against your grace, you know verie well, that if I knew any man within this realme, of whome you should stand in feare, my duetie were to punish that person, thereby to remooue that greefe from your heart. Then how much more ought I to suffer death, to ease your grace of that greefe which you haue of me, being your naturall sonne and liege man: and to that end I haue this daie made my selfe readie by confession and receiuing of the sacrament. And therefore I beseech you most redoubted lord and deare father, for the honour of God, to ease your heart of all such suspicion as you haue of me, and to dispatch me heere before your knees, with this same dagger, [and withall he deliuered vnto the king his dagger, in all humble reuerence; adding further, that his life was not so deare to him, that he wished to liue one daie with his displeasure] and therefore in thus ridding me out of life, and your selfe from all suspicion, here in presence of these lords, and before God at the daie of the generall iudgement, I faithfullie protest clearlie to forgiue you.

“The king mooued herewith, cast from him the dagger, and imbracing the prince kissed him, and with shedding teares confessed, that in deed he had him partlie in suspicion, though now (as he perceiued) not with iust cause, and therefore from thencefoorth no misreport should cause him to haue him in mistrust, and this he promised of his honour. So by his great wisdom was the wrongfull suspicion which his father had conceiued against him remooued, and he restored to his fauour. And further, where he could not but greuouslie complaine of them that had slandered him so greatlie, to the defacing not onelie of his honor, but also putting him in danger of his life, he humblie besought the king that they might answer their vniust accusation; and in case they were found to haue forged such matters vpon a malicious purpose, that then

they might suffer some punishment for their faults, though not to the full of that they had deserved. The king seeming to grant his resonable desire, yet told him that he must tarrie a parlement, that such offenders might be punished by iudgement of their peeres: and so for that time he was dismissed, with great loue and signes of fatherlie affection.

"Thus were the father and the sonne reconciled, betwixt whom the said pickthanks had sowne diuision, insomuch that the sonne vpon a vehement conceit of vnkindnesse sproong in the father, was in the waie to be worne out of fauour. Which was the more likelie to come to passe, by their informations that priuillie charged him with riot and other vnciuill demeanor vnseemelie for a prince. Indeed he was youthfullie giuen, growne to audacitie, and had chosen him companions agreeable to his age; with whome he spent the time in such recreations, exercises, and delights as he fansied. But yet (it should seeme by the report of some writers) that his behauour was not offensiue or at least tending to the damage of anie bodie; sith he had a care to auoid dooing of wrong, and to tedder his affections within the tract of vertue, whereby he opened vnto himselfe a redie passage of good liking among the prudent sort, and was beloued of such as could discerne his disposition, which was in no degree so excessiue, as that he deserved in such vehement maner to be suspected. In whose dispraise I find little, but to his praise verie much, parcell whereof I will deliuer by the waie as a metyard whereby the residue may be measured. The late poet that versified the warres of the valorous Englishmen, speaking of the issue of Henrie the fourth saith of this prince (among other things) as followeth:

—procero qui natu maximus hæres
Corpore, progressus cum pubertatis ad annos
Esset, res gessit multas iuueniliter audax,
Asciscens comites quos par sibi iunxerat ætas,
Nil tamen iniuste commisit, nil tamen vnquam
Extra virtutis normam, sapientibus æque
Ac aliis charus." (iii. 53-5)

2. *Samuel Daniel*: "*The First Fowre Bookes of the Ciuile Wars Between the Two Houses of Lancaster and Yorke*" (1595)

Book III

- 86 And yet new *Hydraes* lo, new heades appeare
T'afflict that peace reputed then so sure,
And gaue him much to do, and much to feare,

And long and daungerous tumults did procure,
 And those euen of his chiefest followers were
 Of whom he might presume him most secure,
 Who whether not so grac'd or so preferd
 As they expected, these new factions stird.

87 The *Percyes* were the men, men of great might,
 Strong in alliance, and in courage strong
 That thus conspire, vnder pretence to right
 The crooked courses they had suffered long:
 Whether their conscience vrgd them or despite,
 Or that they saw the part they tooke was wrong,
 Or that ambition hereto did them call,
 Or others enuide grace, or rather all.

88 What cause soeuer were, strong was their plot,
 Their parties great, meanes good, th'occasion fit:
 Their practice close, their faith suspected not,
 Their states far off and they of wary wit:
 Who with large promises draw in the Scot
 To ayde their cause, he likes, and yeeldes to it,
 Not for the loue of them or for their good,
 But glad hereby of meanes to shed our bloud.

89 Then ioyne they with the *Welsh*, who fitly traind
 And all in armes vnder a mightie head
Owen Great *Glendowr*, who long warr'd, and much attaind,
Glendor. Sharp conflicts made, and many vanquished:
 With whom was *Edmond Earle of March* retaind
 Being first his prisoner, now confedered,
 A man the king much fear'd, and well he might
 Least he should looke whether his Crown stood right.

90 For *Richard*, for the quiet of the state,
 Before he tooke those *Irish* warres in hand
 About succession doth deliberate,
Rich. 2nd And finding how the certaine right did stand,
 With full consent this man did ordinate
 The heyre apparent in the crowne and land:
 Then iudge if this the king might nerely touch,
 Although his might were smal, his right being much.

91 With these the *Percyes* them confederate
And as three heades they league in one intent,
And instituting a Triumvirate
Do part the land in triple gouernment:
Deuiding thus among themselues the state,
The *Percyes* should rule all the *North* from *Trent*
And *Glendowr Wales*: the *Earle of March* should bee
Lord of the South from *Trent*; and thus they gree.

92 Then those two helpes which still such actors find
Pretence of common good, the kings disgrace
Doth fit their course, and draw the vulgar mind
To further them and aide them in this case;
The king they accusd for cruell, and vnkind
That did the state, and crowne, and all deface;
A periurde man that held all faith in skorne,
Whose trusted othes had others made forsworne.

93 Besides the odious detestable act
Of that late murdered king they aggrauate,
Making it his that so had will'd the fact
That he the doers did remunerate:
And then such taxes daily doth exact
That were against the orders of the state,
And with all these or worse they him assaild
Who late of others with the like preuaile.

94 Thus doth contentious proud mortality
Afflict each other and itselke torment:
And thus o thou mind-tortring misery
Restles ambition, borne in discontent,
Turn'st and retossest with iniquity
The vnconstant courses frailty did inuent:
And fowlst faire order and defilst the earth
Fostring vp warre, father of bloud and dearth.

95 Great seemd the cause, and greatly to, did ad
The peoples loue thereto these crimes rehearst,
That manie gathered to the troupes they had
And many more do flocke from costs disperst:
But when the king had heard these newes so bad,

Th'vnlookt for dangerous toyle more nearly perst;
 For bēt t'wards *Wales* t'appease those tumults there,
 H'is for'st diuert his course, and them forbear.

96 Not to giue time vnto th'increasing rage
 And gathering fury, forth he hastes with speed,
 Lest more delay or giuing longer age
 To th'euill growne, it might the cure exceed:
 All his best men at armes, and leaders sage
 All he prepar'd he could, and all did need;
 For to a mighty worke thou goest ô king,
 To such a field that power to power shall bring.

97 There shall young *Hotespur* with a fury lead *The Son*
 Meete with thy forward sonne as fierce as he: *to the*
 There warlike *Worster* long experienced *Earle of*
 In forraine armes, shall come t'incounter thee: *Northū-*
 There *Dowglas* to thy *Stafford* shall make head:
 There *Vernon* for thy valiant *Blunt* shalbe:
 There shalt thou find a doubtfull bloody day,
 Though sicknesse keepe *Northumberland* away.

98 Who yet reseru'd, though after quit for this,
 Another tempest on thy head to raise,
 As if still wrong reuenging *Nemesis*
 Did meane t'afflict all thy continuall dayes:
 And yet this field he happely might misse
 For thy great good, and therefore well he staies:
 What might his force haue done being ioynd thereto
 When that already gaue so much to do?

99 The swift approach and vnexpected speed
 The king had made vpon this new-raisd force
 In th'vnconfirmed troupes much feare did breed,
 Vntimely hindring their intended course;
 The ioyning with the *Welsh* they had decreed
 Was hereby stopt, which made their part the worse,
Northumberland with forces from the *North*
 Expected to be there, was not set forth.

100 And yet vndaunted *Hotspur* seeing the king
 So nere approach'd, leauing the worke in hand

With forward speed his forces marshalling,
Sets forth his farther comming to withstand:
And with a cheerfull voice encouraging
By his great spirit his well imboldened band,
Bringes a strong host of firme resolved might,
And plac'd his troupes before the king in sight.

101 This day (saith he) ô faithfull valiaunt frendes,
What euer it doth giue, shall glorie giue:
This day with honor frees our state, or endes
Our misery with fame, that still shall liue,
And do but thinke how well this day he spendes
That spendes his bloud his countrey to relieue:
Our holie cause, our freedome, and our right,
Sufficient are to moue good mindes to fight.

102 Besides th'assured hope of victory
That wee may euen promise on our side
Against this weake-constrained companie
Whom force & feare, not will, and loue doth guide
Against a prince whose foule impiety
The heauens do hate, the earth cannot abide,
Our number being no lesse, our courage more,
What need we doubt if we but worke therefore.

103 This said, and thus resolu'd euen bent to charge
Vpon the king, who well their order viewd
And carefull noted all the forme at large
Of their proceeding, and their multitude:
And deeming better if he could discharge
The day with safetie, and some peace conclude,
Great proffers sendes of pardon, and of grace
If they would yeeld, and quietnes imbrace.

104 But this refusd, the king with wrath incensd
Rage against fury doth with speed prepare:
And ô saith he, though I could haue dispensd
With this daies bloud, which I haue sought to spare
That greater glory might haue recompensd
The forward worth of these that so much dare,
That we might honor had by th'ouerthrown
That th'wounds we make, might not haue bin our own.

- 105 Yet since that other mens iniquity
 Calles on the sword of wrath against my will,
 And that themselues exact this cruelty,
 And I constrained am this bloud to spill:
 Then on my maisters, on couragiously
 True-harted subiects against traitors ill,
 And spare them not who seeke to spoile vs all,
 Whose fowle confused end soone see you shall.
- 106 Straight moues with equall motion equall rage
 The like incensed armies vnto bloud,
 One to defend, another side to wage
 Foule ciuill war, both vowes their quarrell good:
 Ah too much heate to bloud doth nowe inrage
 Both who the deed prouokes and who withstood,
 That valor here is vice, here manhood sin,
 The forward'st hands doth ô least honor win.
- 107 But now begin these fury-mouing soundes
 The notes of wrath that musicke brought from hell,
 The ratling drums which trumpets voice cōfounds,
 The cryes, th'incouragements, the shouting shrell;
 That all about the beaten ayre reboundes,
 Thundring confused, murmurs horrible,
 To rob all sence except the sence to fight,
 Well hands may worke, the mind hath lost his sight.
- 108 O war! begot in pride and luxury,
 The child of wrath and of dissention,
 Horrible good; mischiefe necessarie,
 The fowle reformer of confusion,
 Vniust-iust scourge of our iniquitie,
 Cruell recurer of corruption:
 O that these sin-sicke states in need should stand
 To be let bloud with such a boystrous hand!
- 109 And ô how well thou hadst been spar'd this day
 Had not wrong counsail'd *Percy* bene peruers,
 Whose yong vndanger'd hand now rash makes way
 Vpon the sharpest fronts of the most fierce:
 Where now an equall fury thrusts to stay
 And rebeat-backe that force and his disperse,

Then these assaile, then those chace backe againe,
Till staid with new-made hils of bodies slaine.

- 110 There lo that new-appearing glorious starre
Wonder of Armes, the terror of the field
The Prince of Wales. Young *Henrie*, laboring where the stoutest are,
And euen the stoutest forces backe to yeild,
There is that hand boldned to bloud and warre
That must the sword in woundrous actions weild:
But better hadst thou learnd with others bloud
A lesse expence to vs, to thee more good.

- 111 Hadst thou not there lent present speedy ayd
To thy indaungerde father nerely tyrde,
Whom fierce incountring *Dowglas* ouerlaid,
That day had there his troublous life expirde:
Which was sir Walter Blunt. Heroycall Couragious *Blunt* araid
In habite like as was the king attirde
And deemd for him, excusd that fate with his,
For he had what his Lord did hardly misse.

- 112 For thought a king he would not now disgrace
The person then supposd, but princelike shewes
Another Blunt which was the kings Standard bearer. Glorious effects of worth that fit his place,
And fighting dyes, and dying ouerthrowes:
Another of that forward name and race
In that hotte worke his valiant life bestowes,
Who bare the standard of the king that day,
Whose colours ouerthrowne did much dismaie.

- 113 And deare it cost, and ô much bloud is shed
To purchase thee this loosing victory
O trauayld king: yet hast thou conquered
A doubtfull day, a mightie enemy:
Sir Hugh Shorly. But ô what woundes, what famous worth lyes dead!
That makes the winner looke with sorrowing eye,
Magnanimous *Stafford* lost that much had wrought,
And valiant *Shorly* who great glory gote.

- 114 Such wracke of others bloud thou didst behold
O furious *Hotspur*, ere thou lost thine owne!
Which now once lost that heate in thine waxt cold,

And soone became thy Armie ouerthrowne;
 And ô that this great spirit, this courage bold,
 Had in some good cause bene rightly showne!
 So had not we thus violently then
 Haue termd that rage, which valor should haue ben.

3. *Anon.*: "*The Famous Victories of Henry the fifth: Containing the Honourable Battell of Agin-court*" (1598)—passages utilized for the first part of *Henry IV.*¹

THE HIGHWAY ROBBERY.

[*Sc. I.*] *Enter the yoong Prince, Ned, and Tom.*

Henry the fifth.

Come away Ned and Tom.

Both. Here my Lord.

Henr. 5. Come away my Lads:

Tell me sirs, how much gold haue you got? [4]

Ned. Faith my Lord, I haue got fife hundred pound.

Hen. 5. But tell me Tom, how much hast thou got?

Tom. Faith my Lord, some foure hundred pound.

Hen. 5. Foure hundred pounds, brauely spoken Lads. [8]

But tell me sirs, thinke you not that it was a villainous
 part of me to rob my fathers Receiuers?

Ned. Why no my Lord, it was but a tricke of youth.

Hen. 5. Faith Ned, thou sayest true. [12]

But tell me sirs, whereabouts are we?

Tom. My Lord, we are now about a mile off London.

Hen. 5. But sirs, I maruell that Sir Iohn Old-Castle
 Comes not away: Sounds see where he comes. [16]

Enters Iockey.

How now Iockey, what newes with thee?

Iockey. Faith my Lord, such newes as passeth,
 For the Towne of Detfort is risen,
 With hue and crie after your man, [20]

Which parted from vs the last night,
 And has set vpon, and hath robd a poore Carrier.

Hen. 5. Sownes, the vilaine that was wont to spie
 Out our booties. [24]

1. The original (1598) is in black letter. Scene- and line-divisions here are from the Praetorius-Daniel facsimile, 1887.

Iock. I my Lord, euen the very same.

Hen. 5. Now base minded rascal to rob a poore carrier,
Wel it skills not, ile saue the base vilaines life:
I, I may: but tel me Iockey, wherabout be the
Receiuers? [28]

Ioc. Faith my Lord, they are hard by,
But the best is, we are a horse backe and they be a foote,
So we may escape them.

Hen. 5. Wel, I the vilaines come, let me alone with
them. [32]

But tel me Iockey, how much gots thou from the
knaues?

For I am sure I got something, for one of the
vilaines

So belamd me about the shoulders,
As I shal feele it this moneth. [36]

Iock. Faith my Lord, I haue got a hundred pound.

Hen. 5. A hundred pound, now brauely spoken Iockey:
But come sirs, laie al your money before me, [40]

Now by heauen here is a braue shewe:

But as I am true Gentleman, I will haue the halfe

Of this spent to night, but sirs take vp your bags,
Here comes the Receiuers, let me alone. [44]

Enters two Receiuers.

One. Alas good fellow, what shal we do?

I dare neuer go home to the Court, for I shall be hangd.

But looke, here is the yong Prince, what shal we doo?

Hen. 5. How now you vilaines, what are you? [48]

One Recei. Speake you to him.

Other. No I pray, speake you to him.

Hen. 5. Why how now you rascals, why speak you not?

One. Forsooth we be. Pray speake you to him. [52]

Hen. 5. Sowns, vilains speak, or ile cut off your heads.

Other. Forsooth he can tel the tale better then I.

One Forsooth we be your fathers Receiuers.

Hen. 5. Are you my fathers Receiuers? [56]

Then I hope ye haue brought me some money.

One. Money, Alas sir we be robd.

Hen. 5. Robd, how many were there of them?

One. Marry sir, there were foure of them: [60]

And one of them had sir Iohn Old-Castles bay Hobbie,

And your blacke Nag.

- Hen. 5.* Gogs wounds how like you this Iockey?
 Blood you vilaines: my father robd of his money
 abroad, [64]
 And we robd in our stables.
 But tell me, how many were of them?
- One recei.* If it please you, there were foure of them,
 And there was one about the bignesse of you: [68]
 But I am sure I so belambd him about the shoulders,
 That he wil feele it this month.
- Hen. 5.* Gogs wounds you lamd them faierly,
 So that they haue carried away your money. [72]
 But come sirs, what shall we do with the vilaines?
- Both recei.* I beseech your grace, be good to vs.
- Ned.* I pray you my Lord forgiue them this once.
 Well stand vp and get you gone, [76]
 And looke that you speake not a word of it,
 For if there be, sownes ile hang you and all your kin.
Exit Purseuant.
- Hen. 5.* Now sirs, how like you this?
 Was not this brauely done? [80]
 For now the vilaines dare not speake a word of it,
 I haue so feared them with words.
 Now whither shall we goe?
- All.* Why my Lord, you know our old hostes [84]
 At Feuersham.
- Hen. 5.* Our hostes at Feuersham, blood what shal we do there?
 We haue a thousand pound about vs,
 And we shall go to a pettie Ale-house. [88]
 No, no: you know the olde Tauerne in Eastcheape,
 There is good wine: besides, there is a pretie wench
 That can talke well, for I delight as much in their toongs,
 As any part about them. [92]
- All.* We are readie to waite vpon your grace.
- Hen. 5.* Gogs wounds wait, we will go altogether,
 We are all fellowes, I tell you sirs, and the King
 My father were dead, we would be all Kings, [96]
 Therefore come away.
- Ned.* Gogs wounds, brauely spoken Harry. [Exeunt.]

[*Sc. II.*] *Enter Iohn Cobler, Robin Pewterer, Lawrence Costermonger.*

* * *

Law. Neighbor, what newes heare you of y^e young Prince? [12]

Iohn. Marry neighbor, I heare say, he is a toward yong Prince,
For if he met any by the hie way,
He will not let to talke with him,
I dare not call him theefe, but sure he is one of these taking
fellowes. [16]

Law. Indeed neighbour I heare say he is as liuely
A young Prince as euer was.

Iohn. I, and I heare say, if he vse it long,
His father will cut him off from the Crowne: [20]
But neighbour say nothing of that.

* * *

Iohn. How now, who's there? [64]

Enter the Theefe.

Theefe. Here is a good fellow, I praye you which is the
Way to the old Tauerne in Eastcheape?

Der. Whoope hollo, now Gads Hill, knowest thou me? [68]
Theef. I know thee for an Asse.

Der. And I know thee for a taking fellow,
Vpon Gads hill in Kent:
A bots light vpon ye.

Theef. The whorson villaine would be knockt. [72]

Der. Maisters, vilaine, and ye be men stand to him,
And take his weapon from him, let him not passe you.

Iohn. My friend, what make you abroad now? [76]
It is too late to walke now.

Theef. It is not too late for true men to walke.

Law. We know thee not to be a true man.

PRINCE HENRY COMMITTED TO PRISON.

[*Sc. III.*] *Enter Henry the Fourth.*

* * *

Hen. 4. Ah Harry, Harry, now thrice accursed Harry,
That hath gotten a sonne, which with greefe [44]
Will end his fathers dayes.

Oh my sonne, a Prince thou art, I a Prince indeed,
And to deserue imprisonment.

PRINCE HENRY STRIKES THE LORD CHIEF JUSTICE.

[*Sc. IV.*] *Enter Lord chiefe Iustice, Clarke of the Office, Iayler, Iohn Cobler, Dericke, and the Theefe.*

* * *

Clarke. Is not thy name Cutbert Cutter?

Theefe. What the Diuell need you ask, and know it so well.

Clarke. Why then Cutbert Cutter, I indite thee by the [20] name of Cutbert Cutter, for robbing a poore carrier the 20 day of May last past, in the fourteen yeare of the raigne of our soueraigne Lord King Henry the fourth, for setting vpon a poore Carrier vpon Gads hill in Kent, and hauing [24] beaten and wounded the said Carrier, and taken his goods from him.

Der. Oh maisters stay there, nay lets neuer belie the man, for he hath not beaten and wounded me also, but hee [28] hath beaten and wounded my packe, and hath taken the great rase of Ginger, that bouncing Besse with the iolly buttocks should haue had, that greeues me most.

Judge. Well, what sayest thou, art thou guiltie, or not [32]
guiltie?

Theefe. Not guiltie, my Lord.

Judge. By whom wilt thou be tride?

Theefe. By my Lord the young Prince, or by my selfe [36]
whether you will.

Enter the young Prince, with Ned and Tom.

Hen. 5. Come away my lads, Gogs wounds ye villain, what make you heere? I must goe about my businesse my selfe, and you must stand loytering here. [40]

Theefe. Why my Lord, they haue bound me, and will not let me goe.

Hen. 5. Haue they bound thee villain, why how now my Lord? [44]

Judge. I am glad to see your grace in good health.

Hen. 5. Why my Lord, this is my man,
Tis maruell you knew him not long before this,
I tell you he is a man of his hands. [48]

Theefe. I Gogs wounds that I am, try me who dare.

Judge. Your Grace shal finde small credit by acknowledging him to be your man.

Hen. 5. Why my Lord, what hath he done? [52]

Iud. And it please your Maiestie, he hath robbed a poore Carrier.

Der. Heare you sir, marry it was one Dericke,
Goodman Hoblings man of Kent.

Hen. 5. What wast you batten-breech? [56]
Of my word my Lord, he did it but in iest.

Der. Heare you sir, is it your mans qualitie to rob folks in iest?
In faith, he shall be hangd in earnest.

Hen. 5. Well my Lord, what do you meane to do with my man? [60]

Iudge. And please your grace, the law must passe on him,
According to iustice, then he must be executed.

Der. Heare you sir, I pray you, is it your mans quality to rob [64]
folkes in iest? In faith he shall be hangd in iest.

Hen. 5. Well my Lord, what meane you to do with my man?

Iudge. And please your grace the law must passe on him, [68]
According to iustice, then he must be executed.

Hen. 5. Why then belike you meane to hang my man?

Iudge. I am sorrie that it falles out so.

Hen. 5. Why my Lord, I pray ye who am I? [72]

Iudge. And please your Grace, you are my Lord the yong
Prince, our King that shall be after the decease of our
soueraigne Lord, King Henry the fourth, whom God
graunt long to raigne. [76]

Hen. 5. You say true my Lord:
And you will hang my man.

Iudge. And like your grace, I must needs do iustice.

Hen. 5. Tell me my Lord, shall I haue my man? [80]

Iudge. I cannot my Lord.

Hen. 5. But will you not let him go?

Iud. I am sorie that his case is so ill.

Hen. 5. Tush, case me no casings, shal I haue my man? [84]

Iudge. I cannot, nor I may not my Lord.

Hen. 5. Nay, and I shal not say, & then I am answered?

Iudge. No.

Hen. 5. No: then I will haue him. [88]

He giueth him a boxe on the eare.

Ned. Gogs wounds my Lord, shall I cut off his head?

Hen. 5. No, I charge you draw not your swords,
But get you hence, prouide a noyse of Musitians,
Away, be gone. *Exeunt the Theefe.* [92]

Iudge. Well my Lord, I am content to take it at your hands.

Hen. 5. Nay and you be not, you shall haue more.

Iudge. Why I pray you my Lord, who am I? [96]

Hen. 5. You, who knowes not you?

Why man, you are Lord chiefe Iustice of England.

Iudge. Your Grace hath said truth, therefore in striking me in this place, you greatly abuse me, and not me onely, [100] but also your father: whose liuely person here in this place I doo represent. And therefore to teach you what prerogatiues meane, I commit you to the Fleete, vntill wee haue spoken with your father. [104]

Hen. 5. Why then belike you meane to send me to the Fleete?

Iudge. I indeede, and therefore carry him away.

Exeunt Hen. 5. with the Officers.

Iudge. Iayler, carry the prisoner to Newgate againe, vntil [108]
the next Sises.

Iay. At your commandement my Lord, it shalbe done.

THE TAVERN PLAY-ACTING.

[*Sc. V.*] *Enter Dericke and Iohn Cobler.*

Der. Sownds maisters, heres adoo,
When Princes must go to prison:
Why Iohn, didst euer see the like?

Iohn. O Dericke, trust me, I neuer saw the like. [4]

Der. Why Iohn thou maist see what princes be in choller,
A Iudge a boxe on the eare, Ile tel thee Iohn, O Iohn,
I would not haue done it for twentie shillings.

Iohn. No nor I, there had bene no way but one with vs, [8]
We should haue bene hangde.

Der. Faith Iohn, Ile tel thee what, thou shalt be my Lord chiefe
Iustice, and thou shalt sit in the chaire,
And ile be the yong Prince, and hit thee a box on the
eare, [12]
And then thou shalt say, to teach you what prerogatiues
Meane, I commit you to the Fleete.

Iohn. Come on, Ile be your Iudge,
But thou shalt not hit me hard. [16]

Der. No, no.

Iohn. What hath he done?

Der. Marry he hath robd Dericke.

Iohn. Why then I cannot let him go. [20]

Der. I must needs haue my man.

Iohn. You shall not haue him.

Der. Shall I not haue my man, say no and you dare:
How say you, shall I not haue my man? [24]

Iohn. No marry shall you not.

Der. Shall I not Iohn?

Iohn. No Dericke.

Der. Why then take you that till more come,
Sownes, shall I not haue him? [28]

Iohn. Well I am content to take this at your hand,
But I pray you, who am I?

Der. Who art thou, Sownds, doost not know thy self? [32]

Iohn. No.

Der. Now away simple fellow,
Why man, thou art Iohn the Cobler.

Iohn. No, I am my Lord chiefe Iustice of England. [36]

Der. Oh Iohn, Masse thou saist true, thou art indeed.

Iohn. Why then to teach you what prerogatiues mean I commit
you to the Fleete.

Der. Wel I wil go, but yfaith you gray beard knaue, Ile [40]
course you. *Exit. And straight enters again.*

Oh Iohn, Come, come out of thy chair, why what a clown
weart thou, to let me hit thee a box on the eare, and now thou
seest they will not take me to the Fleete, I thinke that [44]
thou art one of these Worenday Clownes.

PROSPECTS OF MISRULE.

[*Sc. VI.*] *Enter the yoong Prince, with Ned and Tom.*

Hen. 5. Come away sirs, Gogs wounds Ned,
Didst thou not see what a boxe on the eare
I tooke my Lord chiefe Iustice?

Tom. By gogs blood it did me good to see it, [4]
It made his teeth iarre in his head.

Enter sir Iohn Old-Castle.

Hen. 5. How now sir Iohn Old-Castle,
What newes with you?

Ioh. Old. I am glad to see your grace at libertie, [8]
I was come I, to visit you in prison.

Hen. 5. To visit me, didst thou not know that I am a Princes son,
why tis inough for me to looke into a prison, though I come not
in my selfe, but heres such adoo now a [12] days, heres prison-
ing, heres hanging, whipping, and the diuel and all: but I tel
you sirs, when I am King, we will haue no such things, but my
lads, if the old king my father were dead, we would be all
kings. [16]

Ioh. Old. Hee is a good olde man, God take him to his mercy the
sooner.

Hen. 5. But Ned, so soone as I am King, the first thing I wil do, shal be to put my Lord chiefe Iustice out of office. [20] And thou shalt be my Lord chiefe Iustice of England.

Ned. Shall I be Lord chiefe Iustice?

By gogs wounds, ile be the brauest Lord chiefe Iustice
That euer was in England. [24]

Hen. 5. Then Ned, Ile turne all these prisons into fence Schooles, and I will endue thee with them, with landes to maintaine them withall: then I wil haue a bout with my Lord chiefe Iustice, thou shalt hang none but picke purses [28] and horse stealers, and such base minded villaines, but that fellow that will stand by the high way side couragiously with his sword and buckler and take a purse, that fellow giue him commendations, beside that, send him to me and [32] I wil giue him an anuall pension out of my Exchequer, to maintaine him all the dayes of his life.

Ioh. Nobly spoken Harry, we shall neuer haue a mery world til the old king be dead. [36]

THE KING AND PRINCE RECONCILED.

* * *

[*Sc. VI.*] *Enters the Prince with a dagger in his hand.*

Hen. 4. Come my sonne, come on a God's name, [108]

I know wherefore thy comming is,

Oh my sonne, my sonne, what cause hath euer bene,
That thou shouldst forsake me, and follow this vilde and
Reprobate company, which abuseth youth so mani-
festly: [112]

Oh my sonne, thou knowest that these thy doings
Wil end thy fathers dayes.

He weepes.

I so, so, my sonne, thou fearest not to approach the presence of
thy sick father, in that disguised sort, I tel thee my sonne, [116]
that there is neuer a needle in thy cloke, but it is a prick to my
heart, & neuer an ilat-hole, but it is a hole to my soule: and
wherefore thou bringest that dagger in thy hande I know not,
but by coniecture.

He weepes. [120]

Hen. 5. My cōscience accuseth me, most soueraign Lord, and
welbeloued father, to answere first to the last point, That is,
whereas you coniecture that this hand and this dagger shall be
armde against your life: no, know my be[124]loued father,
far be the thoughts of your sonne, sonne said I, an vnworthie

sonne for so good a father: but farre be the thoughts of any such pretended mischiefe: and I most humbly render it to your Maiesties hand, and liue my Lord and [128] soueraigne for euer: and with your dagger arme show like vengeance vpon the bodie of that your sonne, I was about say and dare not, ah woe is me therefore, that your wilde slaue, tis not the Crowne that I come for, sweete father, [132] because I am vnworthie, and those vilde & reprobate company I abandon, & vtterly abolish their company for euer. . . . Pardō me, sweet father, pardon me: good my Lord of Exeter speak for me: pardon me, pardō good father, not a word: ah he wil not speak one word: A Harry, now thrice vnhap[140]pie Harry. But what shal I do? I wil go take me into some solitarie place, and there lament my sinfull life, and when I haue done, I wil laie me downe and die. *Exit.*

Hen. 4. Call him againe, call my sonne againe. [144]

Hen. 5. And doth my father call me again? now Harry,
Happie be the time that thy father calleth thee againe.

Hen. 4. Stand vp my son, and do not think thy father,
But at the request of thee my sonne I wil pardon thee, [148]
And God blesse thee, and make thee his seruant.

Hen. 5. Thanks good my Lord, & no doubt but this day,
Euen this day, I am borne new againe.

Hen. 4. Come my son and Lords, take me by the hands. [152]
Exeunt omnes.

APPENDIX IV

DOUBTFUL SOURCES

The claims sometimes made that the following works were possible direct sources for *1 Henry IV* seem ill-founded; they are therefore discussed here rather than in the Introduction.

1. *Edward Hall: "Chronicle of the Vnion of the Two Noble and Illustre Famelies of Lancastre and Yorke"* (1542, 1548, 1550). The page references are to the 1809 reprint.

Hall's direct contribution to the *Henry IV*s seems to amount to nothing: I, like Hemingway, "have found no passage in *1 Henry IV* which is taken directly from Hall" (Hemingway, *New Var.*, 364). Indirectly, since Holinshed incorporated much from Hall, and Hall's reading of history meant much to the Elizabethans, the con-

tribution was great. His theme of the "Union" of Lancaster and York set the pattern for interpreting the reigns from Richard II to Henry VII; the title-page of Stow's *Annales* (1592), for instance, shows Edward III's family tree divided, the Lancastrians branching up the left side of the page, the Yorkists up the right, uniting across the top in the marriage of Henry of Richmond and Elizabeth of York, and bearing joint fruit in Henry VIII and his successors. This is the spirit of Daniel's *Civile Wars*, too, and of Shakespeare's double tetralogy which begins, as Hall had begun, with the Mowbray-Bolingbroke quarrel leading to Richard II's fall.

Hall doubtless suggested the starting-point for this whole sequence of plays. At first glance it might seem also that he suggested starting-points for both parts of *Henry IV*; the first paragraphs of his sections "The Thirde Yere" and "The Sixt Yere" outline the material for each part. Dover Wilson believes that Shakespeare noticed the reference (not in Holinshed) to "that mawmet Merlin" in "The Thirde Yere". Yet Phaer's story of Glendower in *A Myrroure for Magistrates* could give him the Merlin reference (cf. Intro., p. xxxvii), and had he read nine lines more in Hall he would have found what the writer of 1 *Henry VI* had known (whether Shakespeare or another), namely, that the Earl of March, who was heir to the throne, was "euver kept in the courte vnder suche a keeper that he could nether doo or attempte any thyng againste the kyng" (Hall, 28). In "The Sixt Yere" the account of the Archbishop's rising differs widely from Shakespeare's, which closely follows Holinshed and could find its cue in Holinshed's glosses, "A new cōspiracie against King Henrie by the earle of Northumberland & others" . . . "The archbishop of yorke one of the chief conspirators" (Hol. iii. 36). Hall omits the Welsh villainies (cf. I. i. 43-6), and the fact that Holmedon was fought on Holy Rood Day (I. i. 52); he is not misleading as to Mordake's parentage (I. i. 71-2, note); he associates no portents or magic with "Owen Glendor" (III. i. 11 ff.); he separates Glendower's victory over Mortimer by a considerable space from Hotspur's over Douglas (I. i. 38, 67); he makes no reference to Henry's distrust of Hal or, consequently, to any reconciliation; he does not show the King offering terms through Worcester on the eve of Shrewsbury (v. i. 106 ff.) or, consequently, that Machiavellian concealing them (v. ii. 1); he attributes to a vague "they" at Stafford the battle-oration which Holinshed, Daniel, and Shakespeare give to Hotspur at Shrewsbury (v. ii. 81 ff.); and he strikingly makes Lord Stafford the only nobleman who "kept his promise & ioined with the Percies to his destructiō" (Hall, 29), whereas in Holinshed, Daniel, and Shakespeare (v. iii.

7) he loses his life for the King. Of Henry's other supporters at Shrewsbury, whereas Holinshed gives Shakespeare the names of Blunt, "Shorlie" (Shirley), "Gausell" (Gawsey), and Clifton, Hall names only the first. Finally, Hall makes the death of Glendower—"in maner desperate of all comfort by reason of the king's late victory" (Hall, 31)—follow quickly on Shrewsbury, as a result of an expedition led by the Prince. Shaaber surmises that in thus placing Glendower's death earlier than Holinshed (who puts it in Henry's tenth year; Hol., iii. 48) Hall may have made Shakespeare mention it less than half-way through Part 2 (2*H*₄, III. i. 103). Yet surely the conclusion is the opposite; had Shakespeare attended to Hall here he would have made Glendower's fall an accompaniment of Shrewsbury. The conclusion is inevitable; Shakespeare could hardly have differentiated himself more from Hall if he had deliberately tried.

2. *Holinshed: "The Historie of Scotland"*¹

The English-Scottish wars, with the valour of Hotspur and the Earls of Douglas, occur again in the *Historie of Scotland*. The only details that might suggest Shakespeare's indebtedness are the reference (not paralleled in the *Chronicles of England*) to "Mordake" as the *eldest son* (cf. I. i. 71-2 and note), and the allusion to Douglas's capture at Holmedon on which the Scottish history is clearer than the English (cf. III. ii. 114 and note). The former point may well, however, derive from Stow (cf. Intro., p. xxxii). Otherwise Shakespeare keeps decidedly to the English version, not least in the error over "Mordake"'s parentage (cf. I. i. 71-2 and note) and at Shrewsbury, where the Scottish history says plainly "The king got the victorie, and slue the lord Persie" (v. 406). Once in the Scottish version (never in the English, but repeatedly in the play—e.g. I. iii. 257, II. iii. 26, IV. i. 3, v. i. 116, v. iv. 25, v. v. 23, 27) Douglas is called, in characteristic Scottish manner, "the Dowglasse" (v. 405); but this may derive from ballad-usage (cf. p. xxxviii). All in all, the signs of indebtedness are not strong enough to be convincing.

3. *Sir John Hayward: "The Life and Raigne of King Henry IV"* (1599)²

Since Hayward averred that his *Henry IV* was started in 1598 and contemplated (though he consulted no-one) a dozen years before that, it has been suggested that Shakespeare may have seen it in MS (Hemingway, New Var., 372-3), or alternatively that Hay-

1. The references are to the 1807-8 reprint.

2. The references are to the 1642 reprint.

ward borrowed from Shakespeare. Unless Hayward erred in his dates, the former possibility is ruled out; even if he did so err, the similarities are shared with Holinshed and no indebtedness on Shakespeare's part need be assumed. These similarities are:

(a) that Hayward (7) describes Henry's bearing as "courteous and familiar respectively towards all men, whereby he procured great reputation and regard, especially with those of the meaner sort" (cf. *R2*, v. ii. 7 ff., *1H4*, iii. ii. 50 ff.). But Holinshed mentions his "cheerful and right courteous countenance regarding the people" (ii. 867), his popularity on landing (ii. 855, 858), and his being "gentle" in later years (iii. 58).

(b) that Shakespeare is confused about the oath Bolingbroke swore on landing from exile; in *1 Henry IV*, iv. iii. 59-77, we learn that Northumberland heard the oath sworn "upon the naked shore" at Ravenspurgh, whereas in v. i. 41-2 the oath is sworn at Doncaster. Since Hayward says (69-70) that "presently after his arrival" Henry swore the oath to "Lord Henrie Percie . . . and many other personages of honour", it has been suggested that Shakespeare was combining Hayward's version with Holinshed's (cf. Hemingway, *New Var.*, 373, citing Cowl, *Sources*). But Shakespeare's ambiguity can all derive from Holinshed, who says (i) that the Lincolnshire lords greeted Henry at Ravenspurgh, the Percys only at Doncaster, where he swore the oath (ii. 853, iii. 25); but also (ii) that he swore the oath "at his entring into the lande, vpon his returne from exile" (iii. 58; cf. iv. iii. 54 ff., v. i. 33, notes); and, moreover, (iii) that the Percys were "in the beginning of his reigne both faithfull friends, and earnest aiders" (iii. 22).

4. *Another Hotspur Play?*

As possible evidence for an earlier (Shakespearean?) version of the Hotspur story, Professor Morgan¹ adduces some lines in John Day's hand on the back of a letter from Samuel Rowley to Henslowe, to which Greg queringly assigns the date 4 June 1601.² They seem to be spoken by Prince Hal to Prince John on the field of Shrewsbury:

brother, they were too nebers of our state
yet both infected wth a strong disease
& mortal sicknes proud ambytion
w^{ch} being ranck & villanously neare
had they not been prevented might have proved
fatall & dangerouse then synce [proud] *scornfull* death

1. A. E. Morgan, *Some Problems of Sh.'s "Henry the Fourth"*, 1924, 41-2.

2. *Henslowe Papers*, ed. W. W. Greg, 1907, 57-8.

hath like a skillfull artist cured that feare
 w^{ch} might have proved so hurtefull to o^r selves
 lets [bear them hence] *vs Commit* in sad and mournfull sound
 there worthes to fame there bodyes to the ground
 for the [brave] *dead* percy bore a gallant mynd
 Jngland has my prayers left behind.

Morgan thinks them "not incompatible with Shakespeare's earlier manner"—i.e. that of his supposed first *1 Henry IV*. But since in the original the italicized words have replaced those in brackets one wonders why, if the lines were Shakespeare's, Day should have copied not only the corrections but the original words too. Day was surely himself drafting the lines, for some purpose unknown; they are unShakespearean in their flat expository manner, and the reference to "too neighbours" must be to a Shrewsbury different from Shakespeare's, where only Hotspur is seen slain on the field.

In 1592 Greene, Nashe, and Harvey were bandying about some phrases which have been thought to echo an early *Henry IV*—"hypocriticall hot-spurres", "lad of the Castle", and "buckram giants" (cf. J. M. Purcell and H. W. Crundell, *NQ*, June-July 1935). But these seem merely casual blooms in the floral display of Elizabethan pamphlet exuberance, quite unrelated to Shakespeare.

APPENDIX V

II. iv. 382—"KING CAMBYSES' VEIN"

(contributed by J. C. Maxwell)

In his note on *1 Henry IV*, II. iv. 382, Professor Dover Wilson writes: "I suspect that quotations from Preston figured in the old *Henry IV*, and that Shakespeare rewrote them to burlesque the more up-to-date style of Kyd or Greene. By 1596-8 Preston and fourteeners were *vieux jeu*". This explanation has the disadvantage of supposing that Shakespeare went out of his way to leave traces of the "old play" in a passage which must have been thoroughly rewritten. I think the truth is simpler. Whatever the previous stage history of *Henry IV*, here we have Shakespeare about 1597 referring to "King Cambyses' vein" as a well-known style. It is true that the lines actually spoken are, as Dover Wilson says, more in the style of Kyd or Greene, but Shakespeare's methods become clearer in the light of his other reminiscences of *Cambises*. M. P. Tilley long ago pointed out (*MLN*, xxiv, 1909, 244-7) that there is an affinity be-

tween all the passages in which Shakespeare uses the word "perpend" and the opening lines of *Cambises* where it also occurs (l. 5). In none of these passages is there any attempt to recall the fourteener: on the contrary almost all the Shakespeare characters who use the word are as well able to bombast out a blank verse as the best, and one of them does so even in a prose setting—"therefore perpend, my princess, and give ear" (*Twelfth Night*, v. i. 310-11). The whole process is perfectly natural. *Cambises* was a stock joke, and evidently remained so till the turn of the century, and the substance of certain passages, and a few words, were vaguely remembered, as Dover Wilson's own notes indicate. But Shakespeare could achieve a double purpose by using this well-worn butt, while at the same time he parodied the style not of *Cambises* but of its more recent analogues. It was a much more telling hit at Kyd and Greene than an acknowledged parody would have been—the impression created is that they are really as absurd as everyone admits *Cambises* to be. There may have been an old *Henry IV*, and it may have contained quotations from *Cambises*, but there is nothing in this passage of Shakespeare that needs any such hypothesis to explain it.

APPENDIX VI

III. ii. 39 ff.—

"HAD I SO LAVISH OF MY PRESENCE BEEN . . ."

Dr Harold Brooks adduces parallel ideas in Hoccleve which, though not directly connected with Shakespeare, suggest a traditional warning against kingly familiarity:

Bet is the peples eres thriste and yerne
 Hir Kyng or princes wordes for to here,
 Than that his tongue goo so faste and yerne
 That mennes eres dul of his mateere;
 For dullynge hem, dulleth the herte in fere
 Of hem that yeven to him audience;
 In mochil speche wantith nat offence.

(*Works*, III: EETS, Extra ser., lxxii, 1897,
 st. 347, ll. 2423 ff.)

A gloss refers to the pseudo-Aristotelian *Secreta Secretorum*—"Melius est quod aures hominum sint sitibundi ad Regis eloquia, quam suis affatibus sacientur, quia saturatis auribus anima etiam saturatur". This is translated in *Three Prose Versions of the Secreta*

Secretorium (EETS, Extra ser., lxxiv, 1898, 12-13): "It is a precious and an honourable thing to a Kyng for to kepe sylence and speke but litille but if it be nede, for it were better that the eeris of the peple were brennyng in desire to here the speche of her Kyng then the pepille wofulle and wery in the listenyng of hir Kyng, and the hert is envenymyd of his presence and his sight. And also a King oweth not to shewe him ouer oftene to his peple, ne ouer oft haunte the company of his sugetis, and specially of chorlis and ruralle folke, for bi ouyr moche homelynes he shalle be the lasse honourid". The clash between this tradition and the behaviour of Richard II and Hal is highly dramatic.

APPENDIX VII

iv. i. 98-9 "ALL PLUM'D LIKE ESTRIDGES . . ."

Shakespeare probably telescoped the first two and perhaps all three possible sources below:

(i) Nashe, *Unfortunate Traveller* (McKerrow, ii. 272; suggested by G. R. Coffman, *MLN*, 1927, 318).

The trappings of his horse were pounced and bolstered out with rough plumed siluer plush, in full proportion and shape of an Estrich. On the breast of the horse were the fore-parts of this greedie bird aduanced. . . His wings, which he neuer vseth but running, beeing spread full saile, made his lustie stead as proud vnder him as he had bin some other *Pegasus*, & so quiuerly and tenderly were these his broade winges bounde to either side of him, that as he paced vp and downe the tilt-yard in his maiesty ere the knights were entered, they seemed wantonly to fan in his face and make a flickering sound, such as Eagles doe, swiftly pursuing their praie in the ayre.

The continuation tells how a knight, moved by his mistress's eyes, perswaded himself he should outstrip all other in running to the goale of glorie.

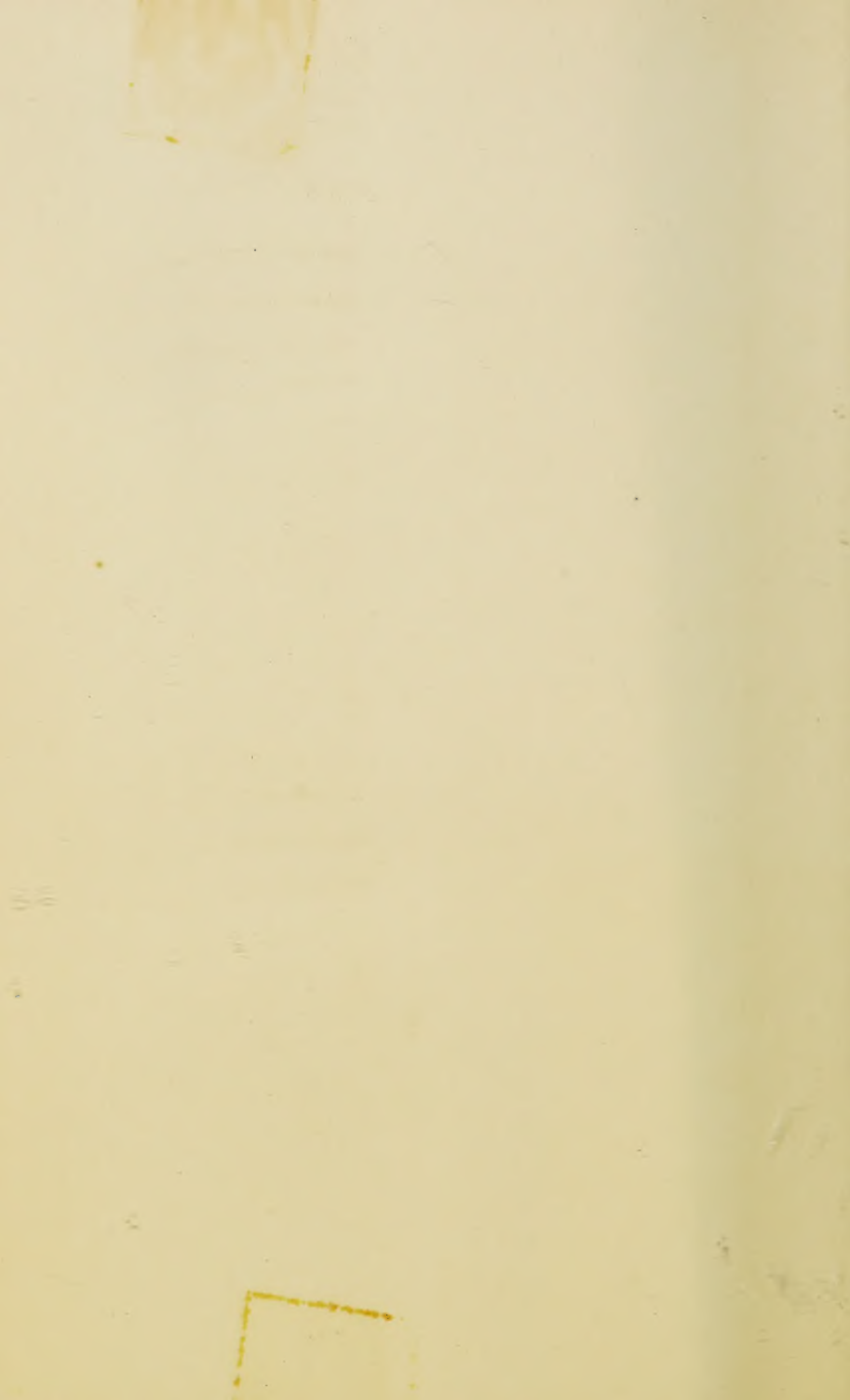
(ii) Spenser, *Faerie Queene*, i. xi. 33-4. The Red Cross Knight, rising from the Well of Life,

upstarte brave

Out of the well, wherein he drenched lay:
As Eagle, fresh out of the ocean wave,
Where he had left his plumes all hoary gray,

And deckt himself with feathers youthly gay,
Like Eyas hauke up mounts unto the skies,
His newly-budded pineons to assay,
And marvailles at himself still as he flies:
So new this new-borne knight to battell new did rise.

(iii) George Chapman, *De Guiana Carmen Epicum* (prefixed to Lawrence Keymis, *Relation of the Second Voyage [of Raleigh] to Guiana*, 1596; suggested by Kathleen Lea and Ethel Seaton, *RES*, 1945, xxi. 319). Its last paragraph describes Raleigh, blessed by the Queen, going forth to his fleet attended by nobles, and the phrases "his bating Colores", "a wind as forward as their spirits", and "Valure Estridge-like" occur within eleven lines.



Already published



ALL'S WELL THAT ENDS WELL

Edited by G. K. HUNTER

ANTONY AND CLEOPATRA

Edited by M. R. RIDLEY

CYMBELINE

Edited by J. M. NOSWORTHY

JULIUS CÆSAR

Edited by T. S. DORSCH

KING HENRY V

Edited by JOHN H. WALTER

KING HENRY VI Part 2

Edited by ANDREW S. CAIRNCROSS

KING HENRY VIII

Edited by R. A. FOAKES

KING JOHN

Edited by E. A. J. HONIGMANN

KING LEAR

Edited by KENNETH MUIR

KING RICHARD II

Edited by PETER URE

LOVE'S LABOUR'S LOST

Edited by R. W. DAVID

MACBETH

Edited by KENNETH MUIR

THE MERCHANT OF VENICE

Edited by JOHN R. BROWN

OTHELLO

Edited by M. R. RIDLEY

THE POEMS

Edited by F. T. PRINCE

THE TEMPEST

Edited by FRANK KERMODE

TIMON OF ATHENS

Edited by H. J. OLIVER

TITUS ANDRONICUS

Edited by J. C. MAXWELL

B.L.T.C.

THE ARDEN SHAKESPEARE

General Editors: DR H. F. BROOKS
and PROFESSOR HAROLD JENKINS

The well-known ARDEN EDITION of Shakespeare's Plays, founded over half a century ago, quickly established itself as a standard series of texts. But most of the volumes gradually became unobtainable, and all are now being revised and re-edited in the light of modern criticism and research.

For the reader and student who wants something more substantial than the school-texts or the one-volume "complete Shakespeares" the new Arden Shakespeare will prove the best possible edition of separate plays. The volumes already published, and their prices, are shown on the back flap of this jacket. Forthcoming titles are as follows:

AS YOU LIKE IT

Edited by Frank Kermode

CORIOLANUS

Edited by J. P. Brockbank

HAMLET

Edited by H. Jenkins

HENRY IV (Part 2)

Edited by A. R. Humphreys

HENRY VI (Parts 1 & 3)

Edited by A. S. Cairncross

MEASURE FOR MEASURE

Edited by J. Lever

THE MERRY WIVES OF WINDSOR

*Edited by William A.
Armstrong*

A MIDSUMMER NIGHT'S DREAM

Edited by A. Brown

MUCH ADO ABOUT NOTHING

Edited by A. Brown

RICHARD III

Edited by H. F. Brooks

ROMEO AND JULIET

Edited by John Crow

THE TAMING OF THE SHREW

Edited by J. R. Brown

THE SONNETS

Edited by Winifred Nowottny

TROILUS AND CRESSIDA

*Edited by Roy Walker and J.
Palmer*

TWELFTH NIGHT

Edited by J. M. Lothian

TWO GENTLEMEN OF VERONA

Edited by C. Leech

A WINTER'S TALE

Edited by J. H. P. Pafford